

eterio SAS MD ESOS 4.0 (Eterio SAN Operating System) User's Manual

Applicable Models:

eterio SAN MD4224S, MD3216S, MD2212S, MD2226S eterio SAN MD4224M, MD3216M, MD2212M, MD2226M eterio SAN MD4224L, MD3216L, MD2212L, MD2226L

> Epsylon Sp. z o.o. Sp.K. https://eterio.eu

© Copyright 2019, eterio. All rights reserved. Version 1.0.3, 02/2019



Copyright

© Copyright 2018, Epsylon. All rights reserved. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted without written permission from Epsylon Sp. z o.o. Sp.K..

December 2018

This edition applies to eterio ESOS (eterio SAN Operating System) 4.0. Epsylon believes the information in this publication is accurate as of its publication date. The information is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

Eterio, the eterio logo, eterio SAN MD are trademarks or registered trademarks of Epsylon Sp. z o.o. Sp.K.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, and Hyper-V are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and/or other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Mac and OS X are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

VMware, ESXi, and vSphere are registered trademarks or trademarks of VMware, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Citrix and Xen are registered trademarks or trademarks of Citrix Systems, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Other trademarks and trade names used in this document to refer to either the entities claiming the marks and names, or their products are the property of their respective owners.



This eterio ESOS 4.0 user's manual is applicable to the following eterio SAN MD models:

Table 1: eterio SAN Storage System 4U 19" Rack Mount Models

Model Name	Controller Type	Form Factor, Bay Count, and Rack Unit
MD4224S	Dual Controller	LFF 24-disk 4U Chassis
MD4224M	Dual Controller	LFF 24-disk 4U Chassis
MD4224L	Dual Controller	LFF 24-disk 4U Chassis

Table 2: eterio SAN Storage System 3U 19" Rack Mount Models

Model Name	Controller Type	Form Factor, Bay Count, and Rack Unit
MD3216S	Dual Controller	LFF 16-disk 3U Chassis
MD3216M	Dual Controller	LFF 16-disk 3U Chassis
MD3216L	Dual Controller	LFF 16-disk 3U Chassis

Table 3: eterio SAN Storage System 2U 19" Rack Mount Models

Model Name	Controller Type	Form Factor, Bay Count, and Rack Unit
MD2212S	Dual Controller	LFF 12-disk 2U Chassis
MD2212M	Dual Controller	LFF 12-disk 2U Chassis
MD2212L	Dual Controller	LFF 12-disk 2U Chassis
MD2226S	Dual Controller	SFF 26-disk 2U Chassis
MD2226M	Dual Controller	SFF 26-disk 2U Chassis
MD2226L	Dual Controller	SFF 26-disk 2U Chassis



Information contained in this manual has been reviewed for accuracy. But it could include typographical errors or technical inaccuracies. Changes are made to the document periodically. These changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. Eterio may make improvements or changes in the products. All features, functionality, and product specifications are subject to change without prior notice or obligation. All statements, information, and recommendations in this document do not constitute a warranty of any kind, express or implied.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products.

All these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.



Table of Contents

N	otice	s		3			
Та	ble	of Cont	ents	5			
Fi	gure	S		12			
Та	bles	s					
Pr	efac	e		20			
	Abou	ut This M	anual	20			
	Tech	nical Sup	port	20			
Information, Tip and Caution							
	Conv	entions.	·	21			
1.			erview				
	1.1		iction to ESOS				
		1.1.2.	ESOS System Architecture	22			
		1.1.3	ESOS Storage Pool Architecture	24			
		1.1.3	ESOS 4.0 Functionality List	25			
	1.2	Termin	ology	27			
2.	Pr	epare f	or Installation	29			
	2.1	Prepar	e for Configuration Planning	29			
		2.1.1.	Configuration Planning for Initial Setup	35			
		2.1.2.	Management IP Configuration Planning	36			
		2.1.3.	Notification Configuration Planning	36			
		2.1.4	iSCSI Configuration Planning	37			
		2.1.5.	Fibre Channel Configuration Planning	38			
		2.1.6.	Storage Configuration Planning	39			
		2.1.7.	Backup Configuration Planning	40			
	2.2.	System	Parameters	41			
	2.3.	Configu	uration Example	44			
3.	Ge	etting S	tarted	51			
	3.1.	Power	on the Storage System	51			
	3.2.	Discove	er the SAN Storage System	51			
		3.2.1.	QFinder Utility	52			
	3.3.		Setup				
4.	ES	SOS Us	er Interface	57			
	4.1.	Accessi	ing the Management Web GUI	57			
	4.2.	ESOS 4	.0 Desktop Panel	58			
	4.3.	Functio	nction Menus				



		4.3.1.	Dashboard Menu	60
		4.3.2.	System Settings Menu	60
		4.3.3.	Host Configuration Menu	61
		4.3.4.	Storage Management Menu	62
		4.3.5.	Data Backup Menu	63
		4.3.6.	Virtualization Menu	63
		4.3.7.	Monitoring Menu	64
	4.4.	Accessir	ng the Management USB LCM	64
5.	Da	ashboar	d	68
	5.1.	Dashbo	ard	68
	5.2.	Hardwa	re Monitoring	76
6.	Sy	/stem Se	ettings	78
	6.1.	General	System Settings	
	6.2.	Manage	ement Port Settings	80
	6.3.	Power S	Settings	83
		6.3.1.	Boot Management Settings	83
		6.3.2.	Cache to Flash Status	85
		6.3.3.	UPS Settings and Status	86
	6.4.	Notifica	tion Settings	
		6.4.1.	Email Settings	
		6.4.2.	Alert Settings	90
		6.4.3.	SNMP Settings	
	6.5.	Mainter	nance	93
		6.5.1.	System Information	93
		6.5.2.	Firmware Update	95
		6.5.3.	Firmware Synchronization	
		6.5.4.	System Identification	
		6.5.5.	Reset to Factory Defaults	99
		6.5.6.	Configuration Backup	101
		6.5.7.	Reboot and Shutdown	102
	6.6.	Disk End	cryption	103
7.	Н	ost Conf	iguration	104
	7.1.	Host Pro	otocol Technology	104
		7.1.1.	iSCSI Technology	104
		7.1.2.	Fibre Channel Technology	105
	7.2.	Host Co	nnectivity Overview	106
	7.3.	Configu	re iSCSI Connectivity	108
		7.3.1.	Configure iSCSI Ports	108
		7.3.2.	Configure iSCSI Settings	112



		7.3.3.	Configure iSCSI Targets	112
		7.3.4.	Configure iSCSI CHAP Accounts	
		7.3.5.	Active Sessions	
	7.4.		re Fibre Channel Connectivity	
	7.4.	7.4.1.	Configure Fibre Channel Link Speed	
		7.4.2.	Configure Fibre Channel Topology	
		7.4.3.	Configure Fibre Channel Targets	
		7.4.4.	Clear Fibre Channel Counters	
8.	C+		anagement	
0.	8.1.	-	chnology	
	0.1.	8.1.1.	Traditional RAID Overview	
		8.1.2.	RAID EE Overview	
		8.1.3.	Theory of RAID EE Operation	
	8.2.		orage Architecture	
	0.2.	8.2.1.	Pool Technology	
		8.2.2.	Migrate vs. Add Disk Group	
		8.2.3.	Volume Technology	
		8.2.4.	LUN Technology	
		8.2.5.	Hot Spares	
	8.3.		g with Disk Drives	
	0.01	8.3.1.	List Disks	
		8.3.2.	Operations on Disks	
		8.3.3.	S.M.A.R.T	
	8.4.	Configu	re Thick Provisioning Pools	
		8.4.1.	Create a Thick Provisioning Pool	
		8.4.2.	List Thick Provisioning Pools	
		8.4.3.	Operations on Thick Provisioning Pools	
		8.4.4.	Migrate a Disk Group in a Thick Provisioning Pool	. 159
		8.4.5.	Add a Disk Group in a Thick Provisioning Pool	. 162
	8.5.	Configu	ring Volumes	. 164
		8.5.1.	Create a Volume	. 165
		8.5.2.	List Volumes	. 168
		8.5.3.	Operations on Volumes	. 169
		8.5.4.	Extend Volume Capacity	. 173
		8.5.5.	Fast RAID Rebuild	. 174
	8.6.	Configu	re LUN Mappings	. 175
		8.6.1.	Map a LUN of iSCSI Connectivity	. 176
		8.6.2.	Map a LUN of Fibre Channel Connectivity	. 177
		8.6.3.	List LUN Mappings	. 178



		8.6.4.	Operations on LUN Mappings	. 179
	8.7.	Connec	t by Host Initiator	. 179
	8.8.	Disk Ro	aming	. 179
9.	Th	nin Prov	isioning	180
	9.1.	Overvie	w	. 180
		9.1.1.	Thick Provisioning vs. Thin Provisioning	. 181
	9.2.	Theory	of Operation	. 182
		9.2.1.	Thin Provisioning Architecture	. 182
		9.2.2.	Space Reclamation	. 183
		9.2.3.	Thin Provisioning Policies	. 184
	9.3.	Configu	re Thin Provisioning Pools	. 185
		9.3.1.	Create a Thin Provisioning Pool	. 185
		9.3.2.	List Thin Provisioning Pools	. 188
		9.3.3.	Operations on Thin Provisioning Pools	. 190
		9.3.4.	Add a Disk Group in a Thin Provisioning Pool	. 193
	9.4.	Configu	re Volumes	. 195
		9.4.1.	Create a Volume in a Thin Provisioning Pool	. 195
		9.4.2.	List Volumes and Operations on Volumes	. 198
	9.5.	Configu	re LUN Mappings and Connect by Host Initiator	. 199
10). SS	SD Cach	e	200
	10.1	. Overvie	2W	. 200
	10.2	. Theory	of Operation	202
		10.2.1.	System Memory and SSD Cache Capacity	. 202
		10.2.2.	SSD Cache Pool Architecture	. 203
		10.2.3.	RAID Level of SSD Cache Pool	. 205
		10.2.4.	Read/Write Cache Cases	. 207
		10.2.5.	Populating the Cache	. 211
		10.2.6.	SSD Cache Tuning	. 212
	10.3	. Configu	re SSD Cache	. 213
		10.3.1.	Enable SSD Cache License	. 213
		10.3.2.	Create an SSD Cache Pool	. 214
		10.3.3.	List SSD Cache Pools	. 216
		10.3.4.	Operations on SSD Cache Pools	. 219
	10.4	. Monito	r SSD Cache Statistics	. 220
	10.5	. SSD Cad	he Notices	. 222
11	. Aı	uto Tieri	ng	223
	11.1	. Overvie	w	223
		11.1.1.	Tier Categories	224
		11.1.2.	Flexible RAID and Disk Configurations	226



11.2 Theory	of Operation	226
11.2. Theory 11.2.1.	Auto Tiering Architecture	
11.2.1.	Intelligent Auto Tiering Mechanism	
11.2.2.	Tiering Policies	
-	are Auto Tiering Pools	
11.3. comig	Enable Auto Tiering License	
11.3.2.	Create an Auto Tiering Pool	
11.3.3.	List Auto Tiering Pools	
11.3.4.	Operations on Auto Tiering Pools	
11.3.5.	Add a Tier (Disk Group) in an Auto Tiering Pool	
11.3.6.	Hot Spares in an Auto Tiering Pool	
	ure Volumes	
11.4.1.	Create a Volume in an Auto Tiering Pool	
11.4.2.	List Volumes and Operations on Volumes	
11.5. Configu	ure LUN Mappings and Connect by Host Initiator	
	er to Auto Tiering Pool	
11.6.1.	Transfer from Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering	
11.6.2.	Transfer from Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering	
11.7. SSD Ca	che vs. Auto Tiering	256
12. Data Bacl	- kup	258
12.1. Manag	ing Snapshots	
12.1.1.	Theory of Operation	
12.1.2.	Configure Snapshot	
12.1.3.	Configure Rollback Snapshot	
12.1.4.	Configure Schedule Snapshots	
12.1.5.	Snapshot Notices	
12.2. Manag	ing Local Clones	
12.2.1.	Theory of Operation	
12.2.2.	Configure Local Clone	
12.2.3.	Configure Schedule Local Clone Tasks	
12.2.4.	Local Cloning Options	
12.2.5.	Local Clone Notices	
12.3. Manag	ing Remote Replications	
12.3.1.	Remote Replication Topologies	
12.3.2.	Theory of Operation	
12.3.3.	Configure Remote Replication	280
12.3.4.	Configure Traffic Shaping	285
12.3.5.	Configure Schedule Remote Replication Tasks	286
12.3.6.	Replication Options	



12.3.7.	Configure MPIO in Remote Replication Task	288
12.3.8.	Configure MC/S in Remote Replication Task Path	293
12.3.9.	Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication	295
13. Monitorin	g	300
13.1. Log Cer	nter	300
13.1.1.	Operations on Event Logs	301
13.2. Monito	pring Enclosures	302
13.2.1.	Hardware Monitoring	302
13.2.2.	Configuring SES	304
13.3. Perform	nance Monitoring	306
13.3.1.	Disk Performance Monitoring	306
13.3.2.	Volume Performance Monitoring	307
13.3.3.	iSCSI Port Performance Monitoring	307
13.3.4.	Fibre Channel Port Monitoring	308
14. SED and	ISE Support	309
13.1. Overvi	ew	309
13.2. Theory	of Operation	311
13.2.1.	SED Operation Process	311
13.2.2.	ISE Technology	313
13.3. Configu	ure Authentication Key	314
13.3.1.	Operations on Authentication Key	314
13.4. Configu	ure SEDs	319
13.4.1.	List SEDs	319
13.4.2.	Operations on SEDs	321
13.5. Configu	ure SED Pools	324
13.5.1.	Create an SED Pool	324
13.5.2.	List SED Pools	327
13.5.3.	Operations on SED Pools	330
13.6. Configu	ure ISE Drives	331
13.6.1.	List ISE Drives	331
13.6.2.	Operations on ISE Drives	333
15. Troublest	nooting	335
15.1. Fault Is	olation Methodology	335
15.1.1.	Basic Steps	335
15.1.2.	Stopping I/O	335
15.1.3.	Diagnostic Steps	336
15.2. Rebuild	336	
15.3. Volume	e Restoration	338
15.3.1.	Configure Volume Restoration	339



16. Su	6. Support and Other Resources		
16.1.	Getting Technical Support	340	
16.2.	Online Customer Support	342	
16.3.	Accessing Product Updates	346	
16.4.	Documentation Feedback	346	
Append	Appendix		
Glossa	ary and Acronym List	347	
End-U	ser License Agreement (EULA)	349	



Figures

Figure 1: ESOS System Architecture	22
Figure 2: ESOS System Architecture with Single Controller Configuration	
Figure 3: ESOS Storage Pool Architecture	
Figure 4: ESOS 4.0 Desktop Panel	
Figure 5: Dual-controller Topology	
Figure 6: QFinder Utility	52
Figure 7: Login Page of Web GUI	53
Figure 8: Initial Configuration Step 1	54
Figure 9: Initial Configuration Step 2	55
Figure 10: Initial Configuration Step 3	
Figure 11: Login Page of Web GUI	57
Figure 12: ESOS 4.0 Desktop Panel	58
Figure 13: Portable USB LCM	
Figure 14: USB LCM Screen	
Figure 15: Dashboard Function Submenu	
Figure 16: Dashboard	
Figure 17: System Information Block in the Dashboard	
Figure 18: System Information Window	
Figure 19: System View Block in the Dashboard	71
Figure 20: Pool Information Popup Window	72
Figure 21: Performance Block in the Dashboard	74
Figure 22: Event Logs in the Dashboard	
Figure 23: Hardware Monitoring Function Submenu	
Figure 24: Hardware Monitoring	
Figure 25: Head Unit Popup Window	
Figure 26: General Function Submenu	
Figure 27: General Settings	
Figure 28: Management Port Function Submenu	
Figure 29: Management Port settings	
Figure 30: Power Settings Function Submenu	
Figure 31: Boot Management Settings	
Figure 32: Cache to Flash	
Figure 33: UPS Status and Settings	
Figure 34: Notifications Function Submenu	
Figure 35: Email Settings	
Figure 36: Alert Settings	
Figure 37: SNMP Settings	
Figure 38: Maintenance Function Submenu	
Figure 39: System Information	
Figure 40: Firmware Update	
Figure 41: Enable Licenses	
Figure 42: Both Firmware Versions are Synchronized	
Figure 43: Turn on the UID (Unique Identifier) LED	
Figure 44: Reset to Defaults	
Figure 45: Configuration Backup	
Figure 47: Reboot Options	
Figure 48: Disk Encryption Function Submenu	
Figure 49: Overview Function Submenu	
J	



Figure 50: Controller 1: Host Port Overview	
Figure 51: Controller 2: Host Port Overview	
Figure 52: iSCSI Ports Function Submenu	
Figure 53: List iSCSI Ports	
Figure 54: iSCSI IP Address Settings	109
Figure 55: Set Link Aggregation	110
Figure 56: Set VLAN ID	
Figure 57: Set Jumbo Frame	111
Figure 58: Ping Host	
Figure 59: Entity Name and iSNS Settings	
Figure 60: iSCSI Targets	
Figure 61: Authentication Method	
Figure 62: Change Target Name	115
Figure 63: Change Network Portal	116
Figure 64: Change Alias	116
Figure 65: Create a CHAP User	117
Figure 66: List CHAP Users	
Figure 67: Modify a CHAP User	
Figure 68: Active Sessions.	
Figure 69: Fibre Channel Ports Function Submenu	
Figure 70: List Fibre Channel Ports	
Figure 71: Change Link Speed	
Figure 72: Change Topology	
Figure 73: Target Configuration	122
Figure 74: Data Block Distributed of RAID 5EE	131
Figure 75: Disk 2 is Failed.	
Figure 76: Empty Blocks are Rebuilt from the Failed Disk Drive	
Figure 77: Data is copied back	
Figure 78: Data Block Distributed of RAID 60EE	132
Figure 79: Storage Architecture of Thick Provisioning Pool	13/
Figure 80: Volume in Storage Architecture	
Figure 81: LUM Mappings in Storage Architecture	
Figure 82: Hot Spares	
Figure 83: Disks Function Submenu	
Figure 84: List Disks	
Figure 85: Disk Health Check	
Figure 86: Set Dedicated Spare	
Figure 87: Update Disk Firmware	
Figure 88: More Information of Disk Drive	
Figure 89: S.M.A.R.T. Attributes of Disk Drive	
Figure 90: S.M.A.R.T. Attributes of SSD	
0	
Figure 91: Disk Settings	
Figure 92: Pools Function Submenu	
Figure 93: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 1	
Figure 94: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 2	
Figure 95: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 3	
Figure 96: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 4	
Figure 97: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 5	
Figure 98: A Thick Provisioning Pool is Created	
Figure 99: List Thick Provisioning Pools	
Figure 100: Change Disk Properties	
Figure 101: Transfer Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering	
Figure 102: Migrate a Disk Group in a Thick Provisioning Pool	159



Figure 103: RAID Migration	
Figure 104: Migrate RAID Level Step 1	160
Figure 105: Add a Disk Group in a Thick Provisioning Pool	162
Figure 106: Add a Disk Group to a Thick Provisioning Pool	163
Figure 107: A Disk Group is Added	164
Figure 108: Pools Function Submenu	164
Figure 109: Create a Volume in Thick Provisioning Pool Step 1	
Figure 110: Create a Volume in Thick Provisioning Pool Step 2	
Figure 111: Create a Volume in Thick Provisioning Pool Step 3	
Figure 112: A Volume in Thick Provisioning Pool is Created and Initializing	
Figure 113: List Volumes	
Figure 114: Local Cloning Options	
Figure 115: Map a LUN of iSCSI Connectivity	
Figure 116: Unmap LUNs	
Figure 117: Set Snapshot Space	
Figure 118: Create Local Clone	
Figure 119: Change Volume Properties	
Figure 120: Verify Parity	
Figure 121: Extend Volume Capacity	
Figure 122: Enable Fast RAID Rebuild When Creating a Volume	
Figure 123: Pools Function Submenu	
Figure 124: Map a LUN of iSCSI Connectivity	
Figure 125: Map a LUN of FC Connectivity	
Figure 126: List LUN Mappings	
Figure 127: Traditional Thick Provisioning	
Figure 128: Thin Provisioning	
Figure 129: Benefits of Thin Provisioning	
Figure 130: Storage Architecture of Thin Provisioning Pool	
Figure 131: Pools Function Submenu	
Figure 132: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 1	186
Figure 133: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 2	186
Figure 134: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 3	
Figure 135: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 4	187
Figure 136: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 5	188
Figure 137: A Thin Provisioning Pool is Created	
Figure 138: List Thin Provisioning Pools	
Figure 139: Change Thin Provisioning Policy	
Figure 140: Transfer Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering	
Figure 141: Move Disk Group	193
Figure 142: Add a Disk Group in a Thin Provisioning Pool	193
Figure 143: Add a Disk Group to a Thin Provisioning Pool	
Figure 144: A Disk Group is Added	
Figure 145: Create a Volume in Thin Provisioning Pool Step 1	
Figure 146: Create a Volume in Thin Provisioning Pool Step 2	
Figure 147: Create a Volume in Thin Provisioning Pool Step 3	
Figure 148: A Volume in Thin Provisioning Pool is Created	
Figure 149: Change Volume Properties	
Figure 150: SSD Read and Write Cache	
Figure 151: Storage Architecture of SSD Cache Pool	
Figure 152: The Relationship between SSD Cache Pool and Storage Pool	
Figure 153: SSD Read Cache with NRAID+	
Figure 154: SSD Read-write Cache with NRAID 1+	
Figure 155: Read Data with Cache Miss	



Figure 156: Read Data with Cache Hit	
Figure 157: Write Data in SSD Read Cache	
Figure 158: Write Data in SSD Read-write Cache	
Figure 159: SSD Cache Function Submenu	
Figure 160: Enable SSD Cache License	
Figure 161: Create an SSD Cache Pool Step 1	214
Figure 162: Create an SSD Cache Pool Step 2	215
Figure 163: Create an SSD Cache Pool Step 3	215
Figure 164: An SSD Cache Pool is Created	
Figure 165: Another SSD Cache Pool is Created	216
Figure 166: List SSD Cache Pools	217
Figure 167: Add / Remove SSDs from the SSD Cache Pool	219
Figure 168: Add SSDs into the SSD Cache Pool	
Figure 169: SSD Cache Function Submenu	
Figure 170: SSD Cache Statistics 1	
Figure 171: SSD Cache Statistics 2	
Figure 172: Auto Tiering Pool	
Figure 173: 3 Levels of Tiered Storage	
Figure 174: Flexible RAID and Disk Configurations	
Figure 175: Storage Architecture of Auto Tiering Pool	
Figure 176: Auto Tiering Relocation	
Figure 177: Pools Function Submenu	
Figure 178: Enable Auto Tiering License	
Figure 179: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Step 1	
Figure 180: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Step 2	
Figure 181: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Step 3	
Figure 182: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Step 4	
Figure 183: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Wizard Step 5	
Figure 183: Create an Auto Tiering Pool wizard Step 5	
Figure 185: List Auto Tiering Pools Figure 186: Auto Tiering Pools and Status	239
Figure 187: Relocation Schedule	
Figure 188: Relocate Now	
Figure 189: Add a Disk Group in an Auto Tiering Pool	
Figure 190: Add Disk Group	
Figure 191: Hot Spares in Auto Tiering Pool	
Figure 192: Create a Volume of Auto Tiering Pool Step 1	
Figure 193: Create a Volume of Auto Tiering Pool Step 2	
Figure 194: Create a Volume of Auto Tiering Pool Step 3	
Figure 195: A Volume in Auto Tiering Pool is Created	
Figure 196: Change Volume Properties	
Figure 197: Block Map of Thick Provisioning Pool Transferring to Auto Tiering	
Figure 198: Block Map of Thin Provisioning Pool Transferring to Auto Tiering	
Figure 199: Transfer Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 1	
Figure 200: Transfer Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 2	
Figure 201: Transfer Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 3	
Figure 202: Transfer Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 1	
Figure 203: Transfer Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 2	
Figure 204: Transfer Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 3	
Figure 205: SSD Cache vs. Auto Tiering	
Figure 206: Copy-on-Write Technology	259
Figure 207: Volume Shadow Copy Services Workflow	
Figure 208: Snapshot Function Submenu	260



Figure 210: Take Snapshot. 262 Figure 211: List Snapshots 1 262 Figure 212: List Snapshots 2 263 Figure 213: Set Writable Snapshot Capacity to Expose Snapshot. 266 Figure 214: Schedule Snapshots 2 263 Figure 215: Host data I/O Route 266 Figure 216: Local Clone Diagram 269 Figure 217: Local Clone Steps 270 Figure 218: Nollback Local Clone 271 Figure 219: Create Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 221: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes 272 Figure 224: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 274 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication 278 Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Sampshot Function Subses 279 Figure 232: Create Target Volume in	Figure 209: S	Set Snapshot Space	261																																																																																																
Figure 212: List Snapshots 2 263 Figure 213: Set Writable Snapshot Capacity to Expose Snapshot 264 Figure 214: Schedule Snapshots 266 Figure 215: Host data I/O Route 267 Figure 216: Local Clone Diagram 269 Figure 217: Local Clone Steps 270 Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 271 Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 272 Figure 220: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 221: Schedule Local Clone 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 272 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options 274 Figure 225: Chect-Uncal Clone 277 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Sangshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 232: Remote Replication Task Step 1 284 Figure 233: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 234: Local Clone In Ste B 281 Figure 235: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2	Figure 210: T	Take Snapshot	262																																																																																																
Figure 213: Set Writable Snapshot Capacity to Expose Snapshot 264 Figure 214: Schedule Snapshots 266 Figure 215: Host data I/O Route 267 Figure 216: Local Clone Diagram 269 Figure 217: Local Clone Steps 270 Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 271 Figure 221: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 272 Figure 224: List Source and Target Volumes 272 Figure 225: Clocal Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 273 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 228: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 233: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 233: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 233: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 234: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1	Figure 211: L	ist Snapshots 1	262																																																																																																
Figure 214: Schedule Snapshots 266 Figure 215: Host data I/O Route 267 Figure 216: Local Clone Diagram 269 Figure 217: Local Clone Steps 270 Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 271 Figure 219: Create Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 221: Create Local Clone 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 273 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 223: Chacel Clone Inspfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 224: Local Clone Nemote Replication 276 Figure 223: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 223: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 232: Remote Replication Steps 279 Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 234: List Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 236: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4 <td< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td></td<>																																																																																																			
Figure 214: Schedule Snapshots 266 Figure 215: Host data I/O Route 267 Figure 216: Local Clone Diagram 269 Figure 217: Local Clone Steps 270 Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 271 Figure 219: Create Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 221: Create Local Clone 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 273 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 223: Chacel Clone Inspfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 224: Local Clone Nemote Replication 276 Figure 223: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 223: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 232: Remote Replication Steps 279 Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 234: List Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 236: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4 <td< td=""><td>Figure 213: S</td><td>Set Writable Snapshot Capacity to Expose Snapshot</td><td>264</td></td<>	Figure 213: S	Set Writable Snapshot Capacity to Expose Snapshot	264																																																																																																
Figure 216: Local Clone Diagram. 269 Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 270 Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 271 Figure 219: Create Target Volumes 272 Figure 221: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone. 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes. 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 273 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options. 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 220: One-to-Many Remote Replication 276 Figure 220: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Sanpshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 232: Remote Replication Task 280 Figure 233: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 234: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 235: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 236: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 243: Schedule Local Cone stis Greated 284 Fig																																																																																																			
Figure 216: Local Clone Diagram. 269 Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 270 Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 271 Figure 219: Create Target Volumes 272 Figure 221: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone. 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes. 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 273 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options. 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 220: One-to-Many Remote Replication 276 Figure 220: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Sanpshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 232: Remote Replication Task 280 Figure 233: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 234: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 235: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 236: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 243: Schedule Local Cone stis Greated 284 Fig	Figure 215: H	Host data I/O Route	267																																																																																																
Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 271 Figure 219: Create Target Volume 271 Figure 220: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 221: Create Local Clone 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 273 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Samphot Function Submenu 279 Figure 233: Sansphot Function Submenu 279 Figure 234: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 236: Create Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration 286 Figure 243: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 244: Sche																																																																																																			
Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone 271 Figure 219: Create Target Volume 271 Figure 220: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone 272 Figure 221: Create Local Clone 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 273 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Samphot Function Submenu 279 Figure 233: Sansphot Function Submenu 279 Figure 234: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 236: Create Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration 286 Figure 243: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 244: Sche	•	•																																																																																																	
Figure 219: Create Target Volume. 271 Figure 221: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone. 272 Figure 221: List Source and Target Volumes. 272 Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes. 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone. 273 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options. 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 276 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication 276 Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 236: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 4 283 Figure 242: Ster Target Volume in Site Step 4 283 Figure 243: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4 283 Figure 244: Schedule Replication Task Step 4 284 <td>Figure 218: R</td> <td>Rollback Local Clone</td> <td>271</td>	Figure 218: R	Rollback Local Clone	271																																																																																																
Figure 220: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone																																																																																																			
Figure 221: Create Local Clone 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 273 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication 276 Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 232: Remote Replication Steps 279 Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 4 283 Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration 284 Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping 286 Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping 286 Figure 244: Schedule Repolication Tas	Figure 220: L	ist Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone	272																																																																																																
Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes 272 Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 273 Figure 224: Local Cloning Options 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication 276 Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 220: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2 282 Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4 283 Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration 285 Figure 242: Schaping Setting Configuration 286 Figure 243: Set Taraffic Shaping 286 Figure 244: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram 289 <																																																																																																			
Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone 273 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Stample of Creating a Remote Replication 278 Figure 233: Stample of Creating a Remote Replication Task 280 Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 236: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2 282 Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration 283 Figure 242: Schaping Setting Configuration 284 Figure 243: Set Taffic Shaping 286 Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication Task Step 4 283 Figure 245: Replication MPIO Diagram 289 Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication Step 1 290 Figure 245: Replication Neroe Replication Step	Figure 222: L	ist Source and Target Volumes	272																																																																																																
Figure 224: Local Cloning Options 274 Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication 276 Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication 276 Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 232: Scheat Carget Volume in Site B 280 Figure 233: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 233: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 233: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 233: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 4 283 Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration 286 Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping 286 Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication Task Step 4 283 Figure 245: Replication Options 287 Figure 246: Remote Replication Task Step 4 284 Figure 247: Remote Replication Task Step 4 284 Figure 248: Adultipath in Remote Replication Task Step 4 286	Figure 223: S	Schedule Local Clone	273																																																																																																
Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram 275 Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication 276 Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication 277 Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication 277 Figure 231: Snapshot Function Steps 279 Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu 279 Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 237: Create Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B 281 Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1 282 Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3 283 Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4 283 Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration 285 Figure 243: Set Tarffic Shaping 286 Figure 244: Remote Replication Task is Created 284 Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration 285 Figure 244: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram 289<	v																																																																																																		
Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication276Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication277Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication277Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication277Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication277Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication277Figure 231: Stapshot Function Steps279Figure 232: Remote Replication Steps279Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu279Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram287Figure 245: Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 246: Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 247: Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 246: List Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 247: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 255: Delete Path Connection294 <td>v</td> <td>0</td> <td></td>	v	0																																																																																																	
Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication276Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication277Figure 220: One-to-Many Remote Replication277Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication277Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication278Figure 231: Remote Replication Steps279Figure 232: Remote Replication Submenu279Figure 233: Example of Creating a Remote Replication Task280Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3283Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration286Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication Task Step 4287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication Task Step 4288Figure 247: Remote Replication Task Step 4289Figure 246: Remote Replication Task Step 4289Figure 247: Remote Replication Task Step 4289Figure 248: Replication Options287Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication Task289Figure 245: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote R																																																																																																			
Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication277Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication277Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication277Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication278Figure 231: Snapshot Function Submenu279Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu279Figure 233: Stample of Creating a Remote Replication Task280Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2282Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 248: Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1294Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 255: Delete Path Connection294Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram295Figure 256: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Rebui	•	•																																																																																																	
Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication277Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication277Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication278Figure 232: Remote Replication Steps279Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu279Figure 233: Example of Creating a Remote Replication Task280Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2282Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration286Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication MPIO Diagram287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task294Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection295Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection29	•	•																																																																																																	
Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication277Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication278Figure 231: Remote Replication Steps279Figure 232: Remote Replication Submenu279Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu279Figure 233: Example of Creating a Remote Replication Task280Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3283Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connections in Remote Replication Task294Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 255: Delete Path Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram295Figure 256: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297<																																																																																																			
Figure 230: Many-to Many Remote Replication278Figure 232: Remote Replication Steps.279Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu279Figure 233: Example of Creating a Remote Replication Task280Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2282Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Subce Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task.292Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task.292Figure 255: Delete Path Connection294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection294Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Ta	•	· · ·																																																																																																	
Figure 232: Remote Replication Steps279Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu279Figure 233: Example of Creating a Remote Replication Task280Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2282Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 245: Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 246: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 246: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task294Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1298Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1298Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298<																																																																																																			
Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu279Figure 233: Example of Creating a Remote Replication Task280Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2282Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3283Figure 230: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 255: Delete Path Connection294Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 255: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1298Figure 256: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 256: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 256: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298 <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>																																																																																																			
Figure 233: Example of Creating a Remote Replication Task280Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B281Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2282Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication MPIO Diagram287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 251: Add Path Connection294Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 256: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 257: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 2	•	• •																																																																																																	
Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B.281Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B.281Figure 236: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1.282Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2.282Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3.283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4.283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created.284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration.285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping.286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options.287Figure 246: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task294Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 256: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 257: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1298Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 250: Rebuild Clon																																																																																																			
Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B																																																																																																			
Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1	•	•																																																																																																	
Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2.282Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3.283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4.283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 255: Delete Path Connection294Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298 <tr <td=""><td>Figure 237: C</td><td>Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1</td><td>282</td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3.283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4.283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping.286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4.283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping</td><td>•</td><td>•</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td>•</td><td>•</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task.292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td>0</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td>•</td><td>·</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3 298</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>•</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>Figure 261: R</td><td>Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 4</td><td>299</td></tr>	Figure 237: C	Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1	282	Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3.283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4.283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping.286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4.283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping	•	•		Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298	•	•		Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task.292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298	0			Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298	•	·		Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298				Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3 298				•					Figure 261: R	Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 4	299
Figure 237: C	Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1	282																																																																																																	
Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3.283Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4.283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping.286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4.283Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created284Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 250: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration285Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping286Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 254: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping	•	•																																																																																																	
Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication287Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 245: Replication Options287Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram289Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram289Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1290Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298	•	•																																																																																																	
Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2291Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3292Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task.292Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 253: Add Path Connection294Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path294Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 255: Delete Path Connection295Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298	0																																																																																																		
Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram296Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298	•	·																																																																																																	
Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone.297Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1297Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2298Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3298																																																																																																			
Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3 298																																																																																																			
•																																																																																																			
	Figure 261: R	Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 4	299																																																																																																



	Remote Replication Task is Created	
Figure 263:	Log Center Function Submenu	300
	Event Logs	
Figure 265:	Download Event Logs	301
	Enclosure Function Submenu	
Figure 267:	Hardware Monitoring	303
Figure 268:	Enable SES	305
Figure 269:	SES Status	305
Figure 270:	Performance Function Submenu	306
Figure 271:	Performance Function Submenu	306
Figure 272:	Select Volumes to Monitor	307
Figure 273:	Volume Performance Monitoring	307
	iSCSI Performance Monitoring	
•	SED Operation Process	
	ISE Technology	
	Disk Encryption Function Submenu	
	Authentication Key is Disabled	
	Enable Authentication Key	
	Authentication Key is Enabled	
0	Export Authentication Key	
	Change Authentication Key	
	Disable Authentication Key	
	Disk Encryption Function Submenu	
	List SEDs	
	Initiate SEDs	
	Initiate SED Results	
•	List SEDs	
Q	Erase SEDs	
	Erase SED by PSID	
	Pools Function Submenu	
Figure 293:	Create an SED Pool Step 1	325
	Create an SED Pool Step 2	
	Create an SED Pool Step 3	
	Create an SED Pool Step 4	
	Create an SED Pool Step 5	
	An SED Pool is Created	
	List SED Pools	
Q	Disks Function Submenu	
Figure 301:	List SEDs and ISE Drives	331
Figure 302:	Instant Erase ISE drives	333
Figure 303:	Instant Erase Results	334
Figure 304:	Volume Restoration	338
Figure 305:	Download Service Package in the ESOS UI	341
Figure 306:	Appearance of a Console Cable	342
	Connect the Console Cable	
0	The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by HyperTerminal_1	
Q	The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by HyperTerminal_2	
	The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by HyperTerminal_ 3	
	The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by PuTTY_1	
	The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by PuTTY_2	
	The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by PuTTY_3	
-		



Tables

Table 1: eterio SAN Storage System 4U 19" Rack Mount Models	3
Table 2: eterio SAN Storage System 3U 19" Rack Mount Models	
Table 3: eterio SAN Storage System 2U 19" Rack Mount Models	
Table 4:Typographic conventions used in this manual	
Table 5: Configuration Worksheet	
Table 6: System Parameters	
Table 7: Configuration Worksheet Example	
Table 8: ESOS 4.0 Function Menus	
Table 9: USB LCM Function List	
Table 10: USB LCM Menu Hierarchy	
Table 11: System Information Block Descriptions	
Table 12: Storage View Block Descriptions	
Table 13: Volume Column Descriptions	
Table 14: Disk Group Column Descriptions	
Table 15: Disk Column Descriptions	
Table 16: Power Module Column Descriptions	
Table 17: Flash Module Column Descriptions	
Table 18: UPS Column Descriptions	
Table 19: Status in System Information Column Descriptions	
Table 20: iSCSI Parameters	
Table 21: Fibre Channel Parameters	
Table 22: Active Sessions Column Descriptions	
Table 23: RAID Level Summary – 1	
Table 24: RAID Level Summary – 2	
Table 25: RAID EE Level Summary	133
Table 26: Thick Provisioning Pool Parameters	
Table 27: Volumes Parameters	136
Table 28: LUN Parameters	
Table 29: Enclosure and Disk Parameters	
Table 30: Disk Column Descriptions	
Table 31: Pool Column Descriptions	154
Table 32: Disk Group Column Descriptions	155
Table 33: Disk Column Descriptions	156
Table 34: Volume Column Descriptions	
Table 35: LUN Mapping Column Descriptions	
Table 36: Thin Provisioning Pool Parameters	183
Table 37: Thin Provisioning Policies and Default Values	184
Table 38: Pool Column Descriptions	189
Table 39: Disk Column Descriptions	
Table 40: Thin Provisioning Policy Column Descriptions	191
Table 41: The Relationship between System Memory and SSD Cache Capacity	202
Table 42: SSD Cache Parameters	
Table 43: I/O Type Table for SSD Read Cache	212
Table 44: I/O Type Table for SSD Read-write Cache	
Table 45: SSD Cache Pool Column Descriptions	
Table 46: SSDs Column Descriptions	218
Table 47: Enabled Volume Column Descriptions	
Table 48: SSD Cache Statistics Descriptions	
Table 49: Auto Tiering Pool Parameters	228



Table 50: Summary of Tiering Policies	232
Table 51: Pool Column Descriptions	
Table 52: Disk Group Column Descriptions	
Table 53: Disk Column Descriptions	241
Table 54: Pool Tiering Status Column Descriptions	
Table 55: SSD Cache vs. Auto Tiering	
Table 56: Snapshot Parameters	
Table 57: Snapshot Column Descriptions	
Table 58: Local Clone Parameters	270
Table 59: Remote Replication Parameters	280
Table 60: Disk Column Descriptions	320
Table 61: Pool Column Descriptions	328
Table 62: Disk Group Column Descriptions	
Table 63: Disk Column Descriptions	
Table 64: Disk Column Descriptions	
Table 65: RAID Rebuild	337
Table 66: Volume Restoration Column Descriptions	338
Table 67: Common Terminology	
Table 68: FC / iSCSI Terminology	348
Table 69: Dual Controller Terminology	348



Preface

About This Manual

This manual provides technical guidance for designing and implementing eterio SAN MD-Series, and it is intended for use by system administrators, SAN designers, storage consultants, or anyone who has purchased these products and is familiar with servers and computer networks, network administration, storage system installation and configuration, storage area network management, and relevant protocols.

Technical Support

Do you have any questions or need help trouble-shooting a problem? Please contact eterio Support, we will reply to you as soon as possible.

Via the Web: <u>https://eterio.eu/serwis</u> Via Telephone: +48 18 4436509 Via Email: <u>support@eterio.eu</u>

Information, Tip and Caution

This manual uses the following symbols to draw attention to important safety and operational information.



INFORMATION:

INFORMATION provides useful knowledge, definition, or terminology for reference



TIP:

TIP provides helpful suggestions for performing tasks more effectively.



CAUTION:

CAUTION indicates that failure to take a specified action could result in damage to the system.



Conventions

The following table describes the typographic conventions used in this manual.

Table 4:Typographic conventions used in this manual

Conventions	Description
Bold	Indicates text on a window, other than the window title, including menus, menu options, buttons, fields, and labels. Example: Click the OK button.
<italic></italic>	Indicates a variable, which is a placeholder for actual text provided by the user or system. Example: copy <i><source-file> <target-file></target-file></source-file></i> .
[] square	Indicates optional values.
brackets	Example: [a b] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing.
{ } braces	Indicates required or expected values. Example: { a b } indicates that you must choose either a or b.
vertical bar	Indicates that you have a choice between two or more options or arguments.
/ Slash	Indicates all options or arguments.
underline	Indicates the default value. Example: [a b]



1. ESOS Overview

ESOS (eterio SAN Operating System) is eterio's proprietary SAN operating system and allows you to manage, monitor, and analyze the configuration and performance of your eterio SAN MD-Series storage system. This chapter provides an overview of the ESOS functionality and includes a brief explanation of storage terminology for you to be more familiar with the storage technologies used by the eterio SAN system.

1.1 Introduction to ESOS

ESOS is equipped with a refreshingly simple to use web-based GUI and easily is deployable into any infrastructure. Based on the Linux kernel, the 64-bit in-house developed ESOS delivers comprehensive storage functionality and is suitable for primary or secondary storage for SMB to entry-level enterprise businesses. The following sections will introduce the ESOS system and storage pool architecture with enterprise-grade storage features.

1.1.2. ESOS System Architecture

ESOS supports Dual Active (Active/Active) controller system architecture with high availability. Figure 1 shows the ESOS system architecture with dual controller.

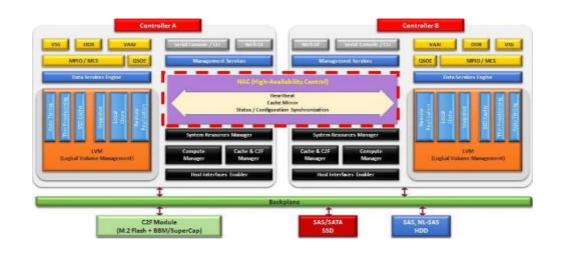


Figure 1: ESOS System Architecture



Figure 2 shows the ESOS system architecture with a single controller configuration. The data path is back and forth between the host interfaces and disk drives via the backplane. The LVM (Logical Volume Management) is the core to handle this data flow between them. It provides a method of allocating space on mass-storage devices that is more flexible than conventional partitioning schemes. A volume manager can concatenate, stripe together or otherwise combine partitions into larger virtual ones that administrators can re-size or move, potentially without interrupting system use. Of course, it may rely on the system resources manager to arrange the processor time slot and scheduled tasks.

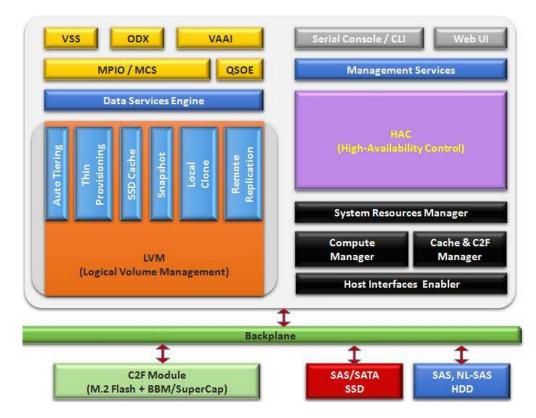


Figure 2: ESOS System Architecture with Single Controller Configuration

Base on LVM technology, it develops the features of auto tiering, thin provisioning, SSD cache and data backup functions of snapshot, local clone, and remote replication. Upon LVM, QSOE (Quality Storage Optimization Engine) which we are proud to develop, increases IOPS performance and overall system throughput. ESOS also supports several critical data services such as MPIO (Multi-Path I/O), MC/S (Multiple Connections per Session), Microsoft VSS (Volume Shadow Copy Service), Microsoft ODX (Offloaded Data Transfer), and VMware VAAI (VMware vSphere Storage APIs for Array Integration). In the periphery, there are management service daemon to provide user interface operations, C2F (Cache to Flash) mechanism includes BBM (Battery Backup Module) / SCM (SuperCap Module) and M.2 flash module to protect cache data from power shortage. These key enterprise storage features are all together in a single box.



Under the operation of dual controllers, HAC (High Availability Control) module has a heartbeat mechanism to detect whether the other controller is alive. Cache mirror synchronizes the memory data of both controllers including the status and storage configuration. When one controller fails, the other controller can seamlessly take over all the tasks of the failed controller thanks to this cache sync. In addition, zero system downtime for the dual controller system takes place during firmware upgrading period.

1.1.3 ESOS Storage Pool Architecture

eterio storage pool supports a variety of 3.5"/2.5" SAS/NL-SAS HDD and 2.5" SAS/SATA SSD flash drives. Figure 3 shows the storage pool architecture. Several disk drives are combined to form a "disk group" with RAID protection. Then several disk groups can be combined to form a storage pool. A volume (virtual disk) is then created out of the storage pool and served to application servers over either iSCSI or Fibre Channel connections.

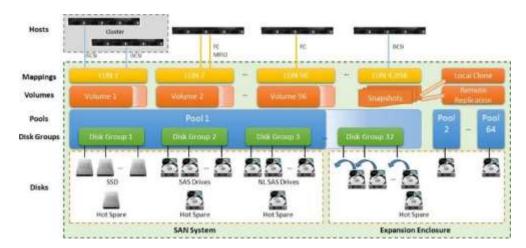


Figure 3: ESOS Storage Pool Architecture

If the local disk drives are not enough, additional expansion enclosures including disk drives can be added to increase storage capacity. There are host spares for standby if any disk drives in pools fail. Base on snapshot technology, the data backup features such as local clone and remote replications are also provided.



1.1.3 ESOS 4.0 Functionality List

rio mas	-					
Rund	(Submer Edwinstow			Testemane		
east Vallang		Apr.	Monator .	1		
ial set tracs		System Name	eterio SAN	Bedars Thomas	phone :	
esi Tarihigi Alaman Par		Model Name	MD4224S	- 12		
- Satistic		Backplane ID	QW316	_		
CERTIFIC .	THE R. LEWIS CO., LANSING, MICH.	System Serial Number	MD18112100001700605			
laiain,		Firmware Version	4.0.0 (build 201811241900)	_		
COMB CITY/CV	1042945	System Controller Status	Dual Controller, Active-Active			
COMPLETE AND A		System Health	Good			
ina di secondo di se Secondo di secondo di se	The sale line			Greentown.		
Calife	Data Fort manual	ALFR Braccost Luis	Corner - Family Replications	-Tett :	1m	Canad
NO.	1		- 1	Andrewskippe	Mol Num INT STATES	CTVT adventings from TEX 100, 202, 702 on each U
(Bolly	Non-1111-0		1.1	1 Adversaria	No. 16 doi: 1017-10-10.02	12771 at the logs have \$1.101,202210 on sets \$2.
eter Physical and	 The happen of the local sectors. 	circle information		Induced State	More, Million 2017 14-06 482	2000 atom logs have \$2 558 22 12 up and 18
ALCONTRON	Fuel have 10x00	7 teal Pear	mings liked	stanated	Set Shaw 2011 00 Bits?	(CTF) admin login from 192 (M. 947 4E very web M.
Wildow Morenal Otem	1	111 10 00	noge time	triangent.	15, 13, an. 2017 32, 40, 57	PUTT administration that the local set of
		and the same the same time				
	4 54	11.0.16				
contents -		102.00.108		<u>.</u>		

ESOS 4.0 provides the following functionality for administrator management.

Figure 4: ESOS 4.0 Desktop Panel

System Management:

- Change system name, date and time.
- Change admin's password, user's password, and configure login options.
- Configure management IP address, DNS, and service ports.
- Support boot management including auto shutdown, wake-on-LAN, and wake-on-SAS.
- Support network UPS via SNMP.
- Monitor cache to flash memory protection status. BBM (Battery Backup Module), SCM (Super Capacitor Module), and flash module are optional add-ons.
- Configure alert notifications through email, syslog server, or SNMP traps.
- Obtain system information and download service package.
- Update firmware of head unit or enclosure unit(s).
- Change operation mode of single or dual controller.
- Blink UID (Unique Identifier) LEDs for locating the storage arrays.
- System reset to default, configuration backup, and volume restoration for maintenance usage.
- System reboot or shutdown

Host Connectivity

- Obtain host connectivity information.
- Configure iSCSI connectivity with IP address, link aggregation, VLAN (Virtual LAN) ID and jumbo frame.
- Setup entity name and iSNS (Internet Storage Name Service).



- Configure iSCSI target with CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol) and mutual CHAP authentication.
- List and disconnect iSCSI sessions.
- Configure fibre channel connectivity with link speed and topology.

Storage Management

- Support RAID pool with RAID level 0, 1, 3, 5, 6, 0+1, 10, 30, 50, 60, and N-way mirror.
- Support thick provisioning pool and online migrate RAID pool.
- Support thin provisioning pool with space reclamation.
- Support 3-tier auto tiering with scheduled relocation. (auto tiering function is optional)
- Support SSD read cache or read-write cache to improve performance. (SSD cache function is optional)
- Support online storage pool capacity expansion and volume capacity extension.
- Configure disk properties with disk write cache, disk read-ahead, command queuing, and disk standby.
- Configure volume properties with background I/O priority, volume write-back cache, and video editing mode for enhanced performance.
- Support access control for LUN mapping.
- Support global, local, and dedicated hot spares for pool.
- Support fast RAID rebuild.
- Support disk drive health check and S.M.A.R.T attributes.
- Support hard drive firmware batch update.
- Support pool parity check and media scan for disk scrubbing.
- Support pool activated and deactivated for disk roaming.

Data Backup

- Support writable snapshot with manual or schedule tasks.
- Support volume cloning for local replication.
- Support remote replication with traffic shaping for dynamic bandwidth controller

Virtualization Integration

• Seamless integrated with popular hypervisor including VMware vSphere, Microsoft Hyper-V, and Citrix XenServer.

Monitoring

- View event logs with different levels of event and download event logs.
- Monitor enclosure status of head and enclosure units.
- Monitor storage array performance.



1.2 Terminology

In this section, we introduce the terms that are used for the storage system throughout this manual.

RAID

RAID is the abbreviation of Redundant Array of Independent Disks. There are different RAID levels with different degrees of data protection, data availability, and performance to the host environment.

Pools

A storage pool is a collection of disk drives. One pool consists of a set of volumes and owns one RAID level attribute.

Volumes

Each pool can be divided into several volumes. The volumes from one pool have the same RAID level but may have different volume capacity.

Fast RAID Rebuild

When executing rebuild, the Fast RAID Rebuild feature skips any partition of the volume where no write changes have occurred, it will focus only on the parts that have changed.

LUN

A LUN (Logical Unit Number) is a unique identifier for designating an individual or collection of physical or virtual storage devices that execute I/O commands with a host computer, as defined by the SCSI (Small Computer System Interface) standard.

iSCSI

iSCSI (Internet SCSI) is a protocol which encapsulates SCSI (Small Computer System Interface) commands and data in TCP/IP packets for linking storage devices with servers over common IP infrastructures.

Fibre Channel

Fibre channel is an extremely fast system interface. It was initially developed for use primarily in the supercomputing field but has become the standard connection type for storage area networks (SAN) in enterprise storage.

SAS

Serial-attached SCSI offers advantages over older parallel technologies. The cables are thinner, and the connectors are less bulky. Serial data transfer allows the use of longer cables than parallel data connections.



Thick Provisioning

Thick provisioning is allocated upon creation the physical disk drive space and is equal to the user capacity seen by the host server. It also called fat provisioning.

Thin Provisioning

Thin provisioning is allocated on-demand and can be less than the user capacity seen by the host server. It involves using virtualization technology to give the appearance of having more physical resources than are available.

Auto Tiering

Auto Tiering is the automated progression or demotion of data across different tiers (types) of storage devices and media. The movement of data takes place in an automated way with the help of software and is assigned to the related media according to performance and capacity requirements. It also includes the ability to define rules and policies that dictate if and when data can be moved between the tiers, and in many cases provides the ability to pin data to tiers permanently or for specific periods of time.

SSD Cache

Smart Response Technology (also known as SSD cache) allows an SSD to function as cache for an HDD volume. It is a secondary cache that improves performance by keeping frequently accessed data on SSDs where they are read/write far more quickly than from the HDD volume.

Snapshot

A volume snapshot is the state of a system at a point in time.

Local Clone

Local clone function has another physical data copy as the original volume.

Remote Replication

Remote replication function prevents primary site failure by replicating data to the remote sites.



2. Prepare for Installation

Preparation for installation is an important task, it will help you to plan your system configuration and install your system smoothly. This chapter provides a description of the configuration planning steps and a configuration worksheet example for reference.

2.1 **Prepare for Configuration Planning**

Before installing your SAN storage system, it is highly recommended you to do installation preparation using the worksheet. Sticking to the worksheet will help you to setup and initialize the storage system. Please refer to the Table 5 for the content of worksheet. You can also ask us for worksheet: "eterio SAN Configuration Worksheet", which is also delivered with your unit

Table 5: Configuration Worksheet

1. Initial Configuration				
Item	Value			
System Name: The maximum length of the system name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A -Z a -z 0 -9].				
Admin Password: The maximum length of the password is 12 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 ~!@#\$%^&* +=` \(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/].				
NTP Server: FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) or IP address of NTP (Network Time Protocol) server.				
Time Zone: Depending on your location.				
2. Management Port Setting				
Item	Value			
Management Port IP Address on Controller 1: IP address, subnet mask, and gateway of the management port on controller 1.	IP: SM: GW:			
DNS Server Address: IP address of DNS (Domain Name System) server.				



Management Por IP address, subne on controller 2.					
3. Notification S	etting				
	ltem	Value			
Email-from Addres	ess: ss to send event notification.	Email-from Address 1:			
	Email-to Address 1:				
Email-to Address Email-to addresse	ses: es to receive event notification	Email-to Address 2:			
		Email-to Address 3:			
SMTP Server: Network name or Protocol) server.	IP address of SMTP (Simple Mail Tra	ansfer			
Syslog Server: (c FQDN or IP addre	optional) ess of syslog server.				
		SNMP-Trap Address 1:			
	esses: (optional) resses of SNMP (Simple Network	SNMP-Trap Address 2:			
management Fro		SNMP-Trap Address 3:			
4. iSCSI Port Co	nfiguration				
	ltem	Value			
IP address, subne	o rt IP Addresses: at mask, and gateway of the iSCSI po GBASE-T iSCSI (RJ45) ports	orts.			
Controller 1	Onboard LAN1	Onboard LAN2			
IP Address	P Address				
Subnet Mask					
Gateway					
Controller 2	Onboard LAN1	Onboard LAN2			
IP Address					
Subnet Mask					
Gateway					



Slot 1 iSCSI Port IP Addresses: (optional) IP address, subnet mask, and gateway of the iSCSI ports. - 4-port 10GbE iSCSI Host Card (SFP+) - 2-port 1GBASE-T iSCSI Host Card (RJ45) - 4-port 1GBASE-T iSCSI Host Card (RJ45)					
Controller 1	Slot 1 LAN1	Slot 1 LAN2	Slot 1 LAN3	Slot 1 LAN4	
IP Address					
Subnet Mask					
Gateway					
Controller 2	Slot 1 LAN1	Slot 1 LAN2	Slot 1 LAN3	Slot 1 LAN4	
IP Address					
Subnet Mask					
Gateway					
Slot 2 iSCSI Port IP Addresses: (optional) IP address, subnet mask, and gateway of the iSCSI ports. - 4-port 10GbE iSCSI Host Card (SFP+) - 2-port 1GBASE-T iSCSI Host Card (RJ45) - 4-port 1GBASE-T iSCSI Host Card (RJ45)					
Controller 1	Slot 1 LAN1	Slot 1 LAN2	Slot 1 LAN3	Slot 1 LAN4	
IP Address					
Subnet Mask					
Gateway					
Controller 2	Slot 1 LAN1	Slot 1 LAN2	Slot 1 LAN3	Slot 1 LAN4	
IP Address					
Subnet Mask					
Gateway					
	ltem			Value	
Entity Name: The entity name is for a device or gateway that is accessible from the network. The maximum length of the entity name is 200 characters. Valid characters are [$a \sim z \mid 0 \sim 9 \mid:$].					
iSNS IP Address (optional): IP address of iSNS (Internet Storage Name Server) server.					
CHAP Username (optional): CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol) username. The maximum length of the username is 223 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 ~!@#%^&*+= (){}[]:;<>.?/].					



between12 to 16 A~Z a~z 0~9 Mutual CHAP Us Mutual CHAP use username is 223 A~Z a~z 0~9 Mutual CHAP Pa	I (optional): The length of the characters. Valid of ~!@#\$%^&*+=` ` sername (optional ername. The maxin characters. Valid of ~!@#%^&*+= (){ issword (optional ssword. The length			
	6 characters. Valio ~!@#\$%^&*+=`	-		
5. Fibre Channe	I Port Configurat	ion		
	ltem		Va	lue
Slot 1 Fibre Channel (optional): Link speed and topology of the fibre channel ports. Topology support: FC-AL, point-to-point (16Gb Fibre Channel only supports Point-to-Point topology) - 4-port 16Gb Fibre Channel Host Card (SFP+) - 2-port 16Gb Fibre Channel Host Card (SFP+)				
Controller 1	Slot 1 FC1	Slot 1 FC2	Slot 1 FC3	Slot 1 FC4
Link Speed				
Topology				
Controller 2	Slot 1 FC1	Slot 1 FC2	Slot 1 FC3	Slot 1 FC4
Link Speed				
Topology				
6. Pool Configu	ration			
	Item		Va	lue
Pool Type: Thick Provisioning, Thin Provisioning, or Auto Tiering (Thin Provisioning Enabled).				
Pool Name: The maximum length of the pool name is 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 - _<>].				
Disks: Disk type, disk quantity, and the capacity.			SSD: SAS: NL-SAS:	
	8, 5, 6, 0+1, 10, 30, EE level 5EE, 6EE			



Raw Capacity: Sum of disk capacity.		
Estimate Capacity: Estimate capacity according to the RAID level.		
7. Volume Configuration		
Item	Value	
Volume Name: The maximum length of the volume name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 - _<>].		
Capacity: Required capacity of the volume.		
Volume Type: RAID Volume or Backup Volume		
8. LUN Mapping Configuration		
Item	Value	
Protocol: iSCSI or FCP.		
Volume Name: Select one of created volumes.		
Allowed Hosts: iSCSI IQN or Fibre Channel WWNN for access control. Wildcard (*) for access by all hosts.		
Target: iSCSI Target or Fibre Channel Target		
LUN: Support LUN (Logical Unit Number) from 0 to 255.		
Permission: Read-only or Read-write.		
9. SSD Cache Configuration		
Item	Value	
SSD Cache Pool Name: The maximum length of the pool name is 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 - _<>].		
Cache Type: Read Cache (NRAID+) or Read-write Cache (RAID 1 or NRAID 1+).		
I/O Type: Database, File System, or Web Service.		



SSDs:		
SSD quantity and the capacity. Raw Capacity: Sum of disk capacity.		
10. Snapshot Configuration		
Item	Value	
Volume Name: Select one of created volumes.		
Snapshot Space: Reserved snapshot space for the volume.		
The maximum length of the snapshot name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 <>].		
Schedule Snapshots (optional): Define the cycle of snapshots.		
11. Local Clone Configuration		
Item	Value	
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source.		
Source Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of source volume.		
Target Volume Name: Select one of created volume for target.		
Target Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of target volume.		
Schedule Local Clones (optional): Define the cycle of local clones.		
12. Remote Replication Configuration		
Item	Value	
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volumes for source.		
Source Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of source volume.		
Item	Value	
Source iSCSI Port: iSCSI port of source unit. It can be auto or dedicated iSCSI port.		
Target iSCSI Port IP Addresses: iSCSI port IP addresses of target unit.		
Target Controller 1	Controller 2 (optional)	



IP Address:		
CHAP username username is 223	sername (optional): e. The maximum length of the b characters. Valid characters are [~!@#%^&*+= (){}[]:;<>.?/].	
CHAP password between 12 to 1	assword (optional): d. The length of the password is 6 characters. Valid characters are [~!@#\$%^&*+=` \(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/].	
Target Volume Select one of cre	Name: eated volume for target.	
Target Volume Check the capae	Capacity: city of target volume.	
	ote Replications (optional): of remote replications.	
	J for Peak Hour (optional): r rate at peak hour.	
	J for Off-peak Hour (optional): r rate at off-peak hour.	
Off-peak Hour (Define the off-pe		

Now please follow the steps and fill the worksheet out for initial system configuration.

2.1.1. Configuration Planning for Initial Setup

In Table 5, the items on part 1, initial configuration, are listed for the initial setup. The information in the following checklist is helpful before the initial configuration is performed.

- System name allows maximum 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- Administrator password allows maximum 12 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#\$%^&*_-+=`|\(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/].
- The date and time can be manually entered, but to keep the clock synchronized, recommend using a NTP (Network Time Protocol) service.
- Enter the time zone based on your geographical location.



2.1.2. Management IP Configuration Planning

With your network administrator, determine the IP addresses and network parameters you plan to use with the storage system, and record the information on part 2, management port setting in Table 5. You can manage the storage system through a dedicated management port at least on controller 1. This port must share a same subnet with the host you use to initialize the system. After initialization, any host on the same network and with a supported browser can manage the system through the management port.

- It is recommended using a static IP address for the management port. Please prepare a list of the static IP addresses, the subnet mask, and the default gateway.
- DNS (Domain Name Service) server address provides a means to translate FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) to IP address. Some notification services need DNS setting.
- For dual controller configurations, the management port IP address on controller 2 is optional. If enabling the dual management ports setting, both management ports of controller 1 and 2 have their own IP addresses, and both are active. Otherwise, only the management port of master controller is active, the other one is standby. The management port fails over to the slave controller when the master controller goes offline even planned or unplanned.

2.1.3. Notification Configuration Planning

On part 3, notification setting in Table 5, prepare to configure the notification. It's helpful for monitoring the system health.

- SMTP server and email address to direct notification alerts the IT administrator and any alternate or back-up personnel.
- Syslog server address to log monitored events.
- SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) trap to send system event logs to SNMP trap agent.



2.1.4 iSCSI Configuration Planning

Although SAN is a private network environment, IP addresses of iSCSI data ports should be planned, too. Optionally, CHAP security information, including CHAP username and password should be prepared.

For an iSCSI dual-controller system, recommend installing an iSNS server on the same storage area network. For better usage of failover, the host must logon the target twice (both controller 1 and controller 2), and then the MPIO should setup automatically. More advanced, all the connections among hosts (with clustering), switches, and the dual-controller are recommended as redundant as shown below.

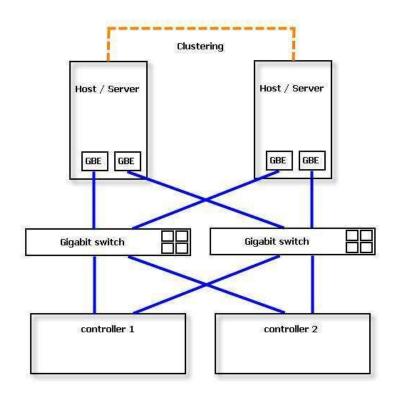


Figure 5: Dual-controller Topology

If you are using onboard iSCSI LAN ports, please fill in part 4, onboard iSCSI port IP addresses of iSCSI port configuration. Optionally, if you have iSCSI host card at slot 1 and slot 2, please fill in iSCSI port IP address.



INFORMATION:

iSCSI Host Cards at Slot 1 (PCIe Gen3 x 8)

- HQ-10G4S2, 4 x 10GbE iSCSI (SFP+) ports
- HQ-10G2T, 2 x 10GbE iSCSI (RJ45) ports
- HQ-01G4T, 4 x 1GbE iSCSI (RJ45) ports

iSCSI Host Cards at Slot 2 (PCIe Gen2 x 48)

- HQ-10G4S2, 4 x 10GbE iSCSI (SFP+) ports (Slot 2 provides 20Gb bandwidth)
- HQ-10G2T, 2 x 10GbE iSCSI (RJ45) ports
- HQ-01G4T, 4 x 1GbE iSCSI (RJ45) ports
- The entity name is for a device or gateway that is accessible from the network.
- An iSNS (Internet Storage Name Service) server uses the iSNS protocol to maintain information about active iSCSI devices on the network, including their IP addresses, iSCSI node names, and iSCSI targets. The iSNS protocol enables automated discovery and management of iSCSI devices on an IP storage network. An iSCSI initiator can query the iSNS server to discover iSCSI target devices.
- CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol) is a one-way authentication which the initiator will be authenticated by the iSCSI target. CHAP requires that both the client and server know the plaintext of the password/secret, although it is never sent over the network. In addition, mutual CHAP is a two-way authentication between the iSCSI target and the initiator. For CHAP username, the maximum length of name is 223 characters and for CHAP password, the length range is from 12 to 16 alphanumeric characters.

2.1.5. Fibre Channel Configuration Planning

Optionally, if you have fibre channel host card, please fill at slot 1 fibre channel on part 5, fibre channel port configuration in Table 5. You must be familiar the fibre channel protocol. Please consider the fibre channel typology, either direct-attach to HBA or connection with fibre channel switch.



INFORMATION:

Fibre Channel Host Card at Slot 1 (PCIe Gen3 x 8)

- HQ-16F4S2, 4 x 16Gb FC (SFP+) ports
- HQ-16F2S2, 2 x 16Gb FC (SFP+) ports

Fibre Channel Host Card at Slot 1 (PCIe Gen3 x 8)

HQ-16F2S2, 2 x 16Gb FC (SFP+) ports (Slot 2 provides 20Gb bandwidth)





- Set the link speed as the same as the HBA or fibre channel switch or set it to auto if you are not sure the link speed.
- Set the topology as the same as the HBA or fibre channel switch. Topology supports FC-AL, point-to-point (16Gb fibre channel only supports Point-to-Point topology).

2.1.6. Storage Configuration Planning

This is the most important part to use the SAN storage system effectively. Depending on your application, estimated volume capacity, and disk failure risk, you should have a well-thought out storage plan. Complete all storage configuration planning jobs on part 6, pool configuration, part 7, volume configuration, part 8, LUN mapping configuration, and part 9, SSD cache configuration.

Planning the Disks

To plan the disk drives, determine:

- The cost/performance ratio of the disk drive type.
- Estimate the total required capacity of the system.
- Whether the disk drives are SSDs.
- Quantity of spare disks. Recommend for hot spare to active drive ratios, 1 in 30 for SAS drives and 1 in 15 for NL-SAS.

Planning the Pools

Necessary activities are in the following, please fill in part 6, pool configuration, in Table 5.

- The pool name, the maximum length of name is 16 characters.
- According to the pool and disk drive characteristics, such as total capacity, budget, performance, and reliability, determine a pool type (thick, thin provisioning, or auto tiering) and a RAID level of storage systems to use. For example, create a pool which is grouped by RAID 10 for performance and RAID 5 in another storage pool to achieve desired results.
- Plan to extend the capacity of the storage pool in the future

Planning the Volumes

A volume is a member of the pool. Determine the following items and fill in part 7, volume configuration, in Table 5.

- The volume name, the maximum length of name is 32 characters.
- The volume capacity.
- Plan the volume capacity for local clone or remote replication. Set it as RAID volume for normal RAID volume usage or set it as backup volume for the backup target of local clone or remote replication.



Planning the LUNs

LUN is a unique identifier which volume maps it to differentiate among separate devices. At the same time, there are some access controls by allowed hosts, target, LUN (logic unit number), and read/write permission. Please fill in part 8, LUN mapping configuration, in Table 5.

- Prepare an allowed host list for access control. They are (iSCSI Qualified Name) or Fibre Channel WWNN (World Wide Node Name). Set it as wildcard (*) for access by all hosts.
- Select an iSCSI target for iSCSI network portal. Or a FC target.
- Support LUN from 0 to 255.
- Usually, set the volume as read-write permission. For read only purpose, set it as readonly.

Planning the SSD Cache

Optionally, preparing for some SSDs will enhance the system performance. Please fill in part 9, SSD cache configuration, in Table 5.

• For SSD cache planning, the capacity of read cache is the sum of SSDs. But the capacity of read-write cache is half of all SSDs because it needs RAID protection for write buffer.

2.1.7. Backup Configuration Planning

Backup plan is also an important job for disaster recovery. Complete the backup configuration planning jobs on part 10, snapshot configuration, part 11, local clone configuration, and part 12, remote replication configuration.

Planning the Snapshots

To plan the snapshots, you must reserve some snapshot spaces from the pool. Normally, we suggest reserving 20% of the volume capacity as a minimum.

- Select a volume and reserve its snapshot space.
- Plan the schedule of snapshots, determine the cycle of taken snapshots. It can be hourly, daily, or weekly.

Planning the Local Clones

To plan the local clones, you must select a source volume and prepare a target volume which the source clones to.

- Select a source volume and check its capacity.
- Prepare a target volume and set it as backup volume. The capacity of target volume should be larger than the source one.



• Plan the schedule local clones, determine the cycle of executing clone tasks. It can be hourly, daily, or weekly.

Planning the Remote Replications

To plan the remote replications, except to select a source volume in source unit and prepare a target volume which the source replicates to in target unit, you must prepare the information of iSCSI port IP addresses to transfer the data. In addition, according to the network bandwidth, determine the transfer rate at peak and off-peak hours.

- Select a source volume and check its capacity in source unit.
- Select a source iSCSI port to send the replication data.
- Prepare the information of iSCSI port IP addresses in target unit to receive the replication data. Also prepare CHAP username and password if the target unit is enabled CHAP authentication.
- Prepare a target volume and set it as backup volume in target unit. The capacity of target volume should be larger than the source one.
- Plan the schedule remote replications, determine the cycle of executing replication tasks. It can be hourly, daily, or weekly.
- Define the off-peak hours and plan the transfer rate at peak and off-peak hours.

2.2. System Parameters

In this section, we list all of system parameters which will help you to understand and plan the system configuration. The following table shows the maximum number of each item you can use.

iSCSI Parameters			
Item	Value		
Maximum iSCSI target quantity per system	256		
Maximum initiator address quantity per system	256		
Maximum host quantity for single controller system Maximum host quantity for dual controller system	512 1,024		
Maximum iSCSI session quantity for single controller Maximum iSCSI session quantity for dual controller	1,024 2,048		
Maximum iSCSI connection quantity for single controller Maximum iSCSI connection quantity for dual controller	4,096 8,192		
Maximum CHAP accounts per system	64		

Table 6: System Parameters



Fibre Channel Parameters			
Item	Value		
Maximum host quantity for single controller	256		
Maximum host quantity for dual controller 512			
Expansion Unit and Disk Parameters			
Item	Value		
Maximum expansion unit quantity in a system	10		
Maximum disk quantity in a system	286		
Pool Parameters (Thick Provisioning / Thin Provisioning	/ Auto Tiering)		
Item	Value		
Maximum disk group quantity in a pool	32		
Maximum disk drive quantity in a disk group (include dedicated spares)	64		
Maximum disk drive quantity in a pool (include dedicated spares)	256		
Maximum pool quantity per system	64		
Maximum dedicated spare quantity in a pool	8		
Thick Provisioning Pool Parameters			
Item	Value		
Maximum addressable capacity of a disk group	640TB (calculated by 10TB HDD)		
Maximum addressable capacity of a thick provisioning pool	2,560TB (calculated by 10TB HDD)		
Maximum addressable capacity of total thick provisioning pools	Unlimited		
Thin Provisioning Pool Parameters			
Item	Value		
Maximum addressable capacity of a disk group	64TB		
Maximum addressable capacity of a thin provisioning pool	256TB		
Maximum addressable capacity of total thin provisioning pools (include auto tiering pools)	1,024TB		
Provisioning granularity	1GB		
Auto Tiering Pool Parameters			
Item	Value		
Maximum tiers (include SSD, SAS HDD, NL-SAS HDD)	3		



64TB
256TB
1,024TB
1GB
Value
96
4,096
16
2,560TB (calculated by 10TB HDD)
256TB
256TB
Value
4,096
Value
4
8
32TB
32
4
Value
64
64
0.
4,096 (64 x 64)



Maximum clone task quantity per volume (Maximum clone pairs per source volume)	1
Maximum clone task quantity per system	64
Local Clone Parameters	
Item	Value
Maximum remote replication task quantity per volume (Maximum remote replication pairs per source volume)	1
Maximum remote replication task quantity per system	32
Maximum traffic shaping quantity per system	8
Maximum iSCSI multi-path quantity in a remote replication task	2
Maximum iSCSI multiple connection quantity per remote replication task path	4

2.3. Configuration Example

The following is an example of finished configuration worksheet just for reference.

Table 7: Configuration	Worksheet Example
------------------------	-------------------

1. Initial Configuration			
Item	Value		
System Name: The maximum length of the system name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A -Z a -z 0 -9].	Eterio SAN		
Admin Password: The maximum length of the password is 12 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 ~!@#\$%^&* +=` \(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/].	1234		
NTP Server: FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) or IP address of NTP (Network Time Protocol) server.	pool.ntp.org		
Time Zone: Depending on your location.	(GMT +01:00) Warsaw		
2. Management Port Setting			
Item	Value		



Management Port IP Address on Controller 1: IP address, subnet mask, and gateway of the management port on controller 1.			2.168.1.234 55.255.255.0 192.168.1.254	
	DNS Server Address: IP address of DNS (Domain Name System) server.			
IP address, subne	Management Port IP Address on Controller 2 (optional): IP address, subnet mask, and gateway of the management port on controller 2.			
3. Notification S	etting			
	ltem		Value	
Email-from Addr	ess:	Email	-from Address 1:	
	ss to send event notification.	admir	admin@company.com	
		Email	-to Address 1:	
		user1	@company.com	
Email-to Address	ses:	Email	-to Address 2:	
Email-to addresse	es to receive event notification	user2	@company.com	
		Email	-to Address 3:	
		user3	@company.com	
SMTP Server: Network name or IP address of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) server.			company.com	
Syslog Server: (optional) syslog.company.com FQDN or IP address of syslog server. syslog.company.com			g.company.com	
		SNMF	P-Trap Address 1:	
		snmp	1.company.com	
SNMP Trap Addr	esses: (optional) resses of SNMP (Simple Network	SNM	P-Trap Address 2:	
Management Prot		snmp	2.company.com	
-		SNM	P-Trap Address 3:	
		snmp	3.company.com	
4. iSCSI Port Configuration				
Item			Value	
Onboard iSCSI Port IP Addresses: IP address, subnet mask, and gateway of the iSCSI ports. - Onboard 2 x 10GBASE-T iSCSI (RJ45) ports				
Controller 1	Onboard LAN1	Onbe	oard LAN2	
IP Address	10.10.1.1	10.10.2.1		
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0		
Gateway	ateway 10.10.1.254 10.10.2.254			



Controller 2	Onb	oard LAN1	Onboa	ard LAN2	
IP Address	10.10.3.1	10.10.3.1		10.10.4.1	
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0		255.255.255.0	
Gateway	10.10.1.254	10.10.1.254		10.10.2.254	
IP address, su ports. - 4-port 10GbE - 2-port 1GBAS	bnet mask, and ga : iSCSI Host Card SE-T iSCSI Host C	rt IP Addresses: (optional) net mask, and gateway of the iSCSI SCSI Host Card (SFP+) E-T iSCSI Host Card (RJ45) E-T iSCSI Host Card (RJ45)			
Controller 1	Slot 1 LAN1	Slot 1 LAN2	Slot 1 LAN3	Slot 1 LAN4	
IP Address	10.10.11.1				
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0				
Gateway	10.10.11.254				
Controller 2	Slot 1 LAN1	Slot 1 LAN2	Slot 1 LAN3	Slot 1 LAN4	
IP Address	10.10.21.1				
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0				
Gateway	10.10.21.254				
IP address, su ports. - 4-port 10GbE - 2-port 1GBAS	iSCSI Port IP Addresses: (optional) ress, subnet mask, and gateway of the iSCSI t 10GbE iSCSI Host Card (SFP+) t 1GBASE-T iSCSI Host Card (RJ45) t 1GBASE-T iSCSI Host Card (RJ45)				
Controller 1	Slot 1 LAN1	Slot 1 LAN2	Slot 1 LAN3	Slot 1 LAN4	
IP Address	10.10.31.1				
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0				
Gateway	10.10.31.254				
Controller 2	Slot 1 LAN1	Slot 1 LAN2	Slot 1 LAN3	Slot 1 LAN4	
IP Address	10.10.41.1				
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0				
Gateway	10.10.41.254				
	ltem		V	alue	
Entity Name: The entity name is for a device or gateway that is accessible from the network. The maximum length of the entity name is 200 characters. Valid characters are [$a \sim z \mid 0 \sim 9 \mid:$].		lqn.2004-08.cc	om.eterio		



iSNS IP Address IP address of iSN server.	s (optional): IS (Internet Storag	e Name Server)	10.1.1.1	
CHAP Username (optional): CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol) username. The maximum length of the username is 223 characters. Valid characters are [$A \sim Z \mid a \sim z \mid 0 \sim 9 \mid \sim ! @#\%^{\&}_{-+}= (){}[:;<>.?/].$			chap1	
CHAP Password (optional): CHAP password. The length of the password is between12 to 16 characters. Valid characters are [$A \sim Z \mid a \sim z \mid 0 \sim 9 \mid \sim ! @#\$\%^&*+=` \(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/].$			1234567891011	
Mutual CHAP Username (optional): Mutual CHAP username. The maximum length of the username is 223 characters. Valid characters are [$A \sim Z \mid a \sim z \mid 0 \sim 9 \mid \sim !@\#\%^{8*}+= (){}[]:;<>.?/].$			mutualchap1	
Mutual CHAP Password (optional): Mutual CHAP password. The length of the password is between12 to 16 characters. Valid characters are [$A \sim Z \mid a \sim z \mid 0 \sim 9 \mid \sim !@#\%\% \&^{-+=` ()}[]:;"'<>,.?/].$			1234567891011	
5. Fibre Channe	el Port Configurat	ion		
	ltem		Val	ue
Slot 1 Fibre Channel (optional): Link speed and topology of the fibre channel ports. Topology support: FC-AL, point-to-point (16Gb Fibre Channel only supports Point-to-Point topology) - 4-port 16Gb Fibre Channel Host Card (SFP+) - 2-port 16Gb Fibre Channel Host Card (SFP+)				
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib	t: FC-AL, point-to-p ports Point-to-Poir re Channel Host C	point (16Gb Fibre nt topology) Card (SFP+)		
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib	t: FC-AL, point-to-p ports Point-to-Poir re Channel Host C	point (16Gb Fibre nt topology) Card (SFP+)	Slot 1 FC3	Slot 1 FC4
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib - 2-port 16Gb Fib	t: FC-AL, point-to-p ports Point-to-Poir re Channel Host C re Channel Host C	point (16Gb Fibre nt topology) Card (SFP+) Card (SFP+)	Slot 1 FC3	Slot 1 FC4
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib - 2-port 16Gb Fib Controller 1	t: FC-AL, point-to-p ports Point-to-Poir re Channel Host C re Channel Host C Slot 1 FC1	point (16Gb Fibre nt topology) Card (SFP+) Card (SFP+)	Slot 1 FC3	Slot 1 FC4
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib - 2-port 16Gb Fib Controller 1 Link Speed	t: FC-AL, point-to-p ports Point-to-Poir re Channel Host C re Channel Host C Slot 1 FC1 Auto	point (16Gb Fibre nt topology) Card (SFP+) Card (SFP+)	Slot 1 FC3 Slot 1 FC3	Slot 1 FC4 Slot 1 FC4
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib - 2-port 16Gb Fib Controller 1 Link Speed Topology	t: FC-AL, point-to-po ports Point-to-Poir re Channel Host C re Channel Host C Slot 1 FC1 Auto Point-to-Point	boint (16Gb Fibre nt topology) Card (SFP+) Card (SFP+) Slot 1 FC2		
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib - 2-port 16Gb Fib Controller 1 Link Speed Topology Controller 2	t: FC-AL, point-to-po ports Point-to-Poir re Channel Host C re Channel Host C Slot 1 FC1 Auto Point-to-Point Slot 1 FC1	boint (16Gb Fibre nt topology) Card (SFP+) Card (SFP+) Slot 1 FC2		
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib - 2-port 16Gb Fib Controller 1 Link Speed Topology Controller 2 Link Speed	t: FC-AL, point-to-po ports Point-to-Poir re Channel Host C re Channel Host C Slot 1 FC1 Auto Point-to-Point Slot 1 FC1 Auto Point-to-Point	boint (16Gb Fibre nt topology) Card (SFP+) Card (SFP+) Slot 1 FC2		
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib - 2-port 16Gb Fib Controller 1 Link Speed Topology Controller 2 Link Speed Topology	t: FC-AL, point-to-po ports Point-to-Poir re Channel Host C re Channel Host C Slot 1 FC1 Auto Point-to-Point Slot 1 FC1 Auto Point-to-Point	boint (16Gb Fibre nt topology) Card (SFP+) Card (SFP+) Slot 1 FC2		Slot 1 FC4
Topology support Channel only sup - 4-port 16Gb Fib - 2-port 16Gb Fib Controller 1 Link Speed Topology Controller 2 Link Speed Topology 6. Pool Configu Pool Type:	t: FC-AL, point-to-poorts Point-to-Point re Channel Host C re Channel Host C Slot 1 FC1 Auto Point-to-Point Slot 1 FC1 Auto Point-to-Point ration Item	ooint (16Gb Fibre ht topology) Card (SFP+) Card (SFP+) Slot 1 FC2 Slot 1 FC2	Slot 1 FC3	Slot 1 FC4



Disks: Disk type, disk quantity, and the capacity.	SSD: 4x 800GB SAS: 4x 1,200 GB NL-SAS: 4x 10TB
RAID Level: RAID level 0, 1, 3, 5, 6, 0+1, 10, 30, 50, 60, and N- way mirror RAID EE level 5EE, 6EE, 50EE, and 60EE	RAID 5
Raw Capacity: Sum of disk capacity.	48TB (800GB x4 + 1,200GB x4 + 10TB x 4)
Estimate Capacity: Estimate capacity according to the RAID level.	36TB (800GB x3 + 1,200GB x3 + 10TB x 3)
7. Volume Configuration	
Item	Value
Volume Name: The maximum length of the volume name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 - _<>].	V1-PL1
Capacity: Required capacity of the volume.	8TB
Volume Type: RAID Volume or Backup Volume	RAID Volume
8. LUN Mapping Configuration	
ltem	Value
Protocol: iSCSI or FCP.	iSCSI
	iSCSI V1-PL1
iSCSI or FCP. Volume Name:	
iSCSI or FCP. Volume Name: Select one of created volumes. Allowed Hosts: iSCSI IQN or Fibre Channel WWNN for access	V1-PL1
iSCSI or FCP. Volume Name: Select one of created volumes. Allowed Hosts: iSCSI IQN or Fibre Channel WWNN for access control. Wildcard (*) for access by all hosts. Target:	V1-PL1 *
iSCSI or FCP. Volume Name: Select one of created volumes. Allowed Hosts: iSCSI IQN or Fibre Channel WWNN for access control. Wildcard (*) for access by all hosts. Target: iSCSI Target or Fibre Channel Target LUN:	V1-PL1 * 0
iSCSI or FCP. Volume Name: Select one of created volumes. Allowed Hosts: iSCSI IQN or Fibre Channel WWNN for access control. Wildcard (*) for access by all hosts. Target: iSCSI Target or Fibre Channel Target LUN: Support LUN (Logical Unit Number) from 0 to 255. Permission:	V1-PL1 * 0 LUN 0
iSCSI or FCP. Volume Name: Select one of created volumes. Allowed Hosts: iSCSI IQN or Fibre Channel WWNN for access control. Wildcard (*) for access by all hosts. Target: iSCSI Target or Fibre Channel Target LUN: Support LUN (Logical Unit Number) from 0 to 255. Permission: Read-only or Read-write.	V1-PL1 * 0 LUN 0



Cache Type: Read Cache (NRAID+) or Read-write Cache (RAID 1 or NRAID 1+).	Read Cache
I/O Type: Database, File System, or Web Service.	Database
SSDs: SSD quantity and the capacity.	SSD: 2x 400GB
Raw Capacity: Sum of disk capacity.	800GB
10. Snapshot Configuration	
Item	Value
Volume Name: Select one of created volumes.	V1-PL1
Snapshot Space: Reserved snapshot space for the volume.	1,6TB
The maximum length of the snapshot name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 <>].	Snap-V1-PL1
Schedule Snapshots (optional): Define the cycle of snapshots.	Daily 00:00
11. Local Clone Configuration	
Item	Value
Item Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source.	Value V1-PL1
Source Volume Name:	
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source. Source Volume Capacity:	V1-PL1
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source. Source Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of source volume. Target Volume Name:	V1-PL1 8TB
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source.Source Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of source volume.Target Volume Name: Select one of created volume for target.Target Volume Capacity:	V1-PL1 8TB T1-PL1
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source.Source Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of source volume.Target Volume Name: Select one of created volume for target.Target Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of target volume.Schedule Local Clones (optional):	V1-PL1 8TB T1-PL1 8TB
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source.Source Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of source volume.Target Volume Name: Select one of created volume for target.Target Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of target volume.Schedule Local Clones (optional): Define the cycle of local clones.	V1-PL1 8TB T1-PL1 8TB
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source.Source Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of source volume.Target Volume Name: Select one of created volume for target.Target Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of target volume.Schedule Local Clones (optional): Define the cycle of local clones.12. Remote Replication Configuration	V1-PL1 8TB T1-PL1 8TB Daily 01:00
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source. Source Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of source volume. Target Volume Name: Select one of created volume for target. Target Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of target volume. Schedule Local Clones (optional): Define the cycle of local clones. 12. Remote Replication Configuration Item Source Volume Name:	V1-PL1 8TB T1-PL1 8TB Daily 01:00 Value
Source Volume Name: Select one of created volume for source. Source Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of source volume. Target Volume Name: Select one of created volume for target. Target Volume Capacity: Check the capacity of target volume. Schedule Local Clones (optional): Define the cycle of local clones. 12. Remote Replication Configuration Item Source Volume Name: Select one of created volumes for source. Source Volume Capacity:	V1-PL1 8TB T1-PL1 8TB Daily 01:00 Value V1-PL1



Target iSCSI Port IP Addresses: iSCSI port IP addresses of target unit.		
Target	Controller 1	Controller 2 (optional)
IP Address:	10.10.100.1	10.10.101.1
Target CHAP Username (optional): CHAP username. The maximum length of the username is 223 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z a~z 0~9 ~!@#%^&*+= (){}[];;<>.?/].		chap2
Target CHAP Password (optional): CHAP password. The length of the password is between 12 to 16 characters. Valid characters are [$A \sim Z \mid a \sim z \mid 0 \sim 9 \mid \sim !@#\$\%^\&*+=` \setminus(){{[]:;"'<>,.?/]}}.$		1234567891011
Target Volume Name: Select one of created volume for target.		RT1-PL1
Target Volume Check the capac	Capacity: city of target volume.	8TB
	ote Replications (optional): of remote replications.	Daily 02:00
Traffic Shaping for Peak Hour (optional): Limit the transfer rate at peak hour.		100MB
Traffic Shaping for Off-peak Hour (optional): Limit the transfer rate at off-peak hour.		500MB
Off-peak Hour (Define the off-pe		Mon ~ Fri PM10:00 ~ AM06:59 Sat ~ Sun AM00:00 ~PM23:59



3. Getting Started

After completing the configuration planning, it's time to power on the system, find your system and log into ESOS (eterio SAN Operating System). This chapter explains how to discover the SAN storage system and how to sign into ESOS.

3.1. Power on the Storage System

Before you power on the system, we assume that you have followed the following hardware installation document (delivered with the system) to finish the hardware installation:

- eterio SAN QIG (Quick Installation Guide)
- eterio SAN Hardware User's Manual



TIP:

Please double check all the cables (including power cords, Ethernet, fibre channel, and SAS cables) are connected properly, especially network cable connects to the management port. If everything is ready, now you can power on the system.

3.2. Discover the SAN Storage System

The default setting for the management IP address is DHCP. For users who are going to install at the first time, we provide the QFinder Java utility (a software made by Qsan technology) to search for eterio products on the network and aid quick access to the login page of the ESOS web interface.



3.2.1. QFinder Utility

QFinder utility provides to search eterio systems on LAN. You can discover the management IP addresses of the storage systems via this utility. Please download QFinder utility from the following website: https://eterio.eu/sterowniki-i-oprogramowanie/

In addition, QFinder is a java-based program. It is also a highly portable utility. To execute this program, JRE (Java Runtime Environment) is required. You can visit the following websites to download and install JRE: <u>http://www.java.com/en/download/</u>

After JRE is installed, run the QFinder.jar program. The SAN storage system in your network will be detected and listed in the table.

Funct	tion Icons		Information Area		
Of Inder	B		/		
Rescan Abou			/		
IP Address 192.168.30.234	Migmt	System Name	Model Name	Firmware Ver. 1.0.0	MAC Address + 00:13:78:D4:00:00
t system tound				2016/10/14	15:42:04

Figure 6: QFinder Utility

Using the example in Figure 3-2, the default setting of the management port IP address is gotten from the DHCP server, e.g., 192.168.30.234. The default system name is the model name plus the last 6 digits of serial number, e.g., MD4224S-700605. Double clicking the selected entry will automatically bring up the browser and display the login page.



TIP:

QFinder utility works in the following network environments:

- Both the management port of the SAN storage system and the management computer are both on the same subnet domain of the LAN.
- The LAN works with or without DHCP server.
- If the LAN doesn't have a DHCP server, it still can work on zeroconfiguration networking. The management port will be assigned a fix IP address: 169.254.1.234/16. So, you can configure the IP address of your management computer to the same subnet domain of the storage system, e.g.: 169.254.1.1/16. Then open a browser and enter <u>http://169.254.1.234</u> to go into the login page. For more information about zero configuration, please refer to: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zeroconfiguration_networking

3.3. Initial Setup

The Initial configuration wizard will guide the first-time user to initialize and setup the system quickly. After discovering the storage system, please follow the steps to complete the initial configuration.

	Default System Name			
	Welcome to	MD4224S-7	00605	
Use <mark>rn</mark> ame:	adn	nin		
Password:	***	•		
English	,	•	Login	

Figure 7: Login Page of Web GUI

To access the ESOS web interface, you must enter a username and password. The initial defaults for administrator login are:

Username: admin

Password: 1234





TIP:

For existing users who are experienced, the Initial configuration wizard will not be shown again when you login next time, unless the system is **Reset to Defaults**. You may skip this section to start the operations of web UI in next chapter.

You can execute **Reset to Defaults** function in **SYSTEM SETTINGS** -> **Maintenance** -> **Reset to Defaults**. Please refer to the chapter 6.5.5, Reset to Factory Default section for more details.

initial Configuration				
System Setup	System Name			
letwork Setup	System Name	eterio SAN	0	
lummary	Admin Panaword			
	New Password :		0	
	Confirm New Password			
	Date and Time			
	Keep Current Time :	2017/3/28 15:49:37		
	Manual Setting :	201113/20 15:43:51		
		letwork Protocol Time) server automatically :		
	NTP Server	0.pool.ntp.org		
	Time Zone			
	Time Zone :	(GMT +01:00) Warsaw		
				Next

Figure 8: Initial Configuration Step 1

- Enter a System Name, for security reason, it's highly recommended to change system name. The maximum length of the system name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_].
- Change **Admin Password**, The maximum length of the password is 12 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#\$%^&*_-+=`|\(){}[];;"'<>,.?/].
- Set the local **Date and Time**. Date and time can be set by manually or synchronized with a NTP (Network Time Protocol) server.
- Select a **Time Zone** depending on your location.
- Click the **Next** button to proceed.



initial Configuration		
System Setup Network Setup Summary	Management Port IP Addres DHCP BOOTP Static IP Address IP Address Subret Mask Gateway : CINE Server Address DNS Doman Name Systh rotification services need	192,165,1,234 255,255,255,0 192,100,7,254 em) provides a means to translate FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) to IP address. Some
	Obtain DNS services need User the following DNS ser	s automatically
	Preferred DNS Server	8.8.4.4
	1	Each Next

Figure 9: Initial Configuration Step 2

• Assign an IP address for the management port by DHCP, BOOTP, or Static IP Address.



INFORMATION:

DHCP: The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol is a standardized network protocol used on IP (Internet Protocol) networks for dynamically distributing network configuration parameters, such as IP addresses for interfaces and services. With DHCP, computers request IP addresses and networking parameters automatically from a DHCP server, reducing the need for a network administrator or a user to configure these settings manually.

BOOTP: Like DHCP, the Bootstrap Protocol is also a computer networking protocol used in Internet Protocol networks to automatically assign an IP address to network devices from a configuration server. While some parts of BOOTP have been effectively superseded by the DHCP, which adds the feature of leases, parts of BOOTP are used to provide service to the DHCP protocol. DHCP servers also provide legacy BOOTP functionality

- Assign a DNS Server Address. DNS (Domain Name System) provides a means to translate FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) to IP address. Some notification services require DNS settings.
- Click **Next** button to proceed.



Initial Configuration	7	
System Setup	System Setup	
Network Setup	System Name	eterio SAN
Summary	Date and Time	Synchronize with NTP
	Time Zone	(GMT +01:00) Warsaw
	Network Setup	
	Management Port Type	Static
	IP Address	192.168.1.234
	Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
	Gateway	192.168.1.254
	DNS Server Address	
	DNS Server	8.8.8.8
	Please click Finish button to ta	ke effect, and then login as new IP address of management port and new admin password.
69		Back Finish

Figure 10: Initial Configuration Step 3

• Verify all items, and then click the **Finish** button to complete the initial configuration. You have to login with the new IP address of the management port and new admin password next time.



4. ESOS User Interface

This chapter illustrates the web user interface of ESOS and provides a brief introduction to the ESOS 4.0 desktop function menus.

4.1. Accessing the Management Web GUI

To access the management web user interface, open a supported web browser and enter the management IP address or Hostname of the system. The login panel is displayed, as shown in Figure 11.

Username:	admin	
Password:	******	

Figure 11: Login Page of Web GUI

To access the web user interface, you must enter a username and password.

- Username: admin
- Password: <Your Password>



TIP:

Supported web browsers:

- Google Chrome 45 or later.
- Mozilla Firefox 45 or later.
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 10 or later.
- Apple Safari 8 or later



4.2. ESOS 4.0 Desktop Panel

When the password has been verified, the home page is displayed. As shown in Figure 12, the ESOS 4.0 desktop panel has three main sections:

- Function Menus and Submenus
- Function Tabs
- Main Working Area

	Function Tabs			Main Workinα Area		
Dashecard				Performance:	/	
Hardisae Montoring SYSTEM SETTINGS General Settings Management Port Power Settings Notifications Maintenince Date Encryption HOST CONNECTIVITY Diversiew 3028 (Ports Fore Channel Ports	X352%	Rem System Name Model Name Backplane ID System Serial Namber Firmware Version System Cristion System Chatus System Health	Hormation eterio SAN MD4224S OW316 MD1912200007700605 4.0.0 (suid 201811241900) Datal Controller, Active-Active Good		ostern Throughout S	ntem 1095
Plate charter Palas					CC. Fool Mogas	4 21 MBps
TORAGE MANAGEMENT Disks Poole	Starage View			Event Logs		
Daks	Disks Pools Volumes	LUNis Snapshots Local Oc 1 0 0	ories Remote Replications	Event Logs Type Information	7ime Sun: 15 Sep 2015 11 09:30	Content [CTR1] Virtual data Vol-T fue started initiatization
Disks Pools Volumes LUN Mappings	Disks Pools Volumes	1 0 0		Type Information Information Information	Sun 15 Sep 2015 11 29 30 Sun 15 Sep 2015 11 09 30	(CTRI) Vihue disk Vol-1 Iwa stanted initiatization (CTRI) Vihuel disk Vol-1 Invahid etaeng process (CTRI) Vihuel disk Vol-1 teated etaxing process (CTRI) Vihuel disk Vol-1 teat been created
Daks Pools Volumes LUN Mappings SSD Cache ATA BACKUP Snapshots	Disks Pools Volumes 16 2 2 Click a pool name to show to	1 0 0	0	Type Information Information	Sun 15 Sep 2016 11 09 30 Sun 15 Sep 2016 11 09 30 Sun 15 Sep 2016 11 09 30	[CTR1] Virtue dak Vo-1 fas started intratazion (CTR1) Virtuel dak Vo-1 finished erasing process [CTR1] Virtuel dak Vo-1 started erasing process

Menus & Submenus

Figure 12: ESOS 4.0 Desktop Panel

All function menus are listed at the left side of the window. They are grouping by function icon and uppercase letter such as **DASHBOARD**, **SYSTEM SETTINGS** ...etc. The following is the second level function submenus such as **General Settings**, **Management Port** ...etc. This provides an efficient and quick mechanism for navigation.

Click a second level function submenu will appear the related user interface in main working area. Some function submenus have their sub fuctions and display at the top of function tabs. You may see all functions in Table 8.

The top-right corner displays a **Logout** button.



TIP:

For security reasons, always logout when you finish working in ESOS



4.3. Function Menus

The following table shows all function menus and their function tabs for reference.

Table 8 [.]	ESOS 4.0	Eunction	Menus
	L000 4.0	i uncuon	Menus

Symbol	Function Menus	Function Tabs
	DASHBOARD	
an	Dashboard	Dashboard
	Hardware Monitoring	Hardware Monitoring
	SYSTEM SETTING	
	General Settings	General Settings
	Management Port	Management Port
	Power Settings	Boot Management Cache to Flash UPS
	Notifications	Email Alert SNMP
0	Maintenance	System Information Update Firmware Synchronization System Identification Reset to Defaults Configuration Backup Volume Restoration Reboot and Shutdown
	General Settings	Authentication Key SEDs
	HOST CONNECTIVITY	
	Overview	Overview
۲	iSCSI Ports	iSCSI Ports iSCSI Settings iSCSI Targets CHAP Accounts Active Sessions
	Fibre Channel Ports	Fibre Channel Ports
	STORAGE MANAGEMENT	
	Disks	Disks Disk Settings
3.	Pools	Pools Auto Tiering
	Volumes	Volumes
	LUN Mappings	LUN Mappings
	SSD Cache	SSD Cache Pools SSD Cache Statistics
	DATA BACKUP	
0	Snapshots	Snapshots
	Remote Replications	Remote Replications
	VIRTUALIZATION	
20	VMware	VMware
	Microsoft	Hyper-V
	Citrix	Citrix
	MONITORING	
-de-	Log Center	Event Logs
	Enclosures	Hardware Monitoring SES
	Performance	Disk Volume iSCSI Fibre Channel

The following describes a brief introduction of desktop function menus.



4.3.1. Dashboard Menu

The **DASHBOARD** menu provides access to function menus of Dashboard and Hardware Monitoring.

Dashboard

Select **Dashboard** function menu provides summary of the overall system. For more information, please refer to the chapter 5.1, Dashboard section in the Dashboard chapter.

Hardware Monitoring

Select **Hardware Monitoring** function menu provides summary enclosure information. For more information, please refer to the chapter 5.2, Hardware Monitoring section in the Dashboard chapter.

4.3.2. System Settings Menu

The **SYSTEM SETTINGS** menu provides access to function menus of General, Management Port, Power, Notification, and Maintenance.

General Settings

Select **General Settings** function menu to setup general system settings. For more information, please refer to the chapter 6.1, General System Settings section in the System Settings chapter.

Management Port

Select **Management Port** function menu to setup IP address and DNS settings of management port. For more information, please refer to the chapter 6.2, Management Port Settings section in the System Settings chapter.

Power Settings

Select **Power Settings** function menu to setup boot management which includes auto shutdown, wake on LAN, and wake on SAS ...etc., view the status of cache to flash, and setup UPS for power outage. For more information, please refer to the chapter 6.3, Power Settings section in the System Settings chapter.



Notifications

Select **Notifications** function menu to setup notification settings of email, syslog, popup alert, LCM alert, and SNMP trap. For more information, please refer to the chapter 6.4, Notification Settings section in the System Settings chapter.

Maintenance

Select **Maintenance** function menu to view system information, update system firmware and check firmware synchronization, system identification, reset to system defaults, import and export configuration files, restore volumes if an accidental delete occurs, reboot and shutdown. For more information, please refer to the chapter 6.5, Maintenance section in the System Settings chapter.

Disk Encryption

Select **Disk Encryption** function menu to setup the authentication key and configure SEDs. For more information, please refer to the chapter 14, SED and ISE Support chapter.

4.3.3. Host Configuration Menu

The **HOST CONFIGURATION** menu provides access to function menus of Overview, iSCSI Port, and Fibre Channel Ports which is visible when fibre channel host cards are installed.

Overview

Select **Overview** function menu to view all host connectivity which includes status and settings of all host cards. For more information, please refer to the chapter 7.2, Host Connectivity Overview section in the Host Configuration chapter.

iSCSI Ports

Select **iSCSI Ports** function menu to setup iSCSI port settings, including iSCSI port IP address, link aggregation, VLAN ID, jumbo frame, iSNS server, iSCSI targets, CHAP accounts, and view iSCSI active sessions. For more information, please refer to the chapter 7.3, Configure for iSCSI Connectivity section in the Host Configuration chapter.

Fibre Channel Ports

Select **Fibre Channel** function menu to setup fibre channel port settings, including link speed, topology, target configuration, and clear counters of fibre channel statistics. For more information, please refer to the chapter 7.4, Configure for Fibre Channel Connectivity section in the Host Configuration chapter.



4.3.4. Storage Management Menu

The **STORAGE MANAGEMENT** menu provides access to function menus of Disks, Pools, Volumes, and Mappings.

Disks

Select **Disks** function menu to view status of disk drives and S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology) information. For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.3, Working with Disk Drives section in the Storage Management chapter.

Pools

Select **Pools** function menu to configure storage pools. For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.4, Configuring Thick Provisioning Pools section in the Storage Management chapter, chapter 9.3, Configuring Thin Provisioning Pools section in the Thin Provisioning chapter, chapter 11.3, Configuring Auto Tiering Pools section in the Auto Tiering chapter.

Volumes

Select **Volumes** function menu to configure volumes and manage clone tasks. For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.5, Configuring Volumes section in the Storage Management chapter and the chapter 12.2, Managing Local Clones section in the Data Backup chapter.

LUN Mappings

Select **LUN Mappings** function menu to configure LUN mappings. For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.6, Configuring LUN Mappings section in the Storage Management chapter.

SSD Cache

Select **SSD Cache** function menu to configure SSD cache pools. For more information, please refer to the chapter 10.3, Configuring SSD Cache section in SSD Cache chapter.



4.3.5. Data Backup Menu

The **DATA BACKUP** menu provides access to function menus of Snapshots and Replications.

Snapshots

Select **Snapshots** function menu to manage snapshots, including setting up snapshot space, taking snapshots, rollback to snapshot, and scheduling snapshots. For more information, please refer to the chapter 12.1, Managing Snapshots section in the Data Backup chapter.

Replications

Select **Replications** function menu to manage remote replications, including setup replication tasks, schedule replication tasks, configure shaping settings. For more information, please refer to the chapter 12.3, Managing Remote Replications section in the Data Backup chapter.

4.3.6. Virtualization Menu

The **VIRTUALIZATION** menu provides access to function menus of VMware, Microsoft, and Citrix.

VMware

Provide information of supported **VMware** integration of storage, such as VAAI (VMware vSphere Storage APIs for Array Integration).

Microsoft

Provide information of supported **Microsoft** Windows feature of storage, such as ODX (Offloaded Data Transfer).

Citrix

Provide information of **Citrix** XenServer platform and its compatible version.



4.3.7. Monitoring Menu

The **MONITORING** menu provides access to function menus of Log Center, Enclosure, and Performance.

Log Center

Select **Log Center** function menu to view event logs, download event logs, or clear event logs. Also, mute buzzer if system happens alerts. For more information, please refer to the chapter 13.1, Log Center section in the Monitoring chapter.

Enclosures

Select **Enclosures** function menu to view hardware monitor status and enable SES (SCSI Enclosure Services). For more information, please refer to the chapter 13.2, Hardware Monitor section in the Monitoring chapter.

Performance

Select **Performance** function menu to view system performance. For more information, please refer to the chapter 13.3, Performance Monitor section in the Monitoring chapter.

4.4. Accessing the Management USB LCM

Optionally, we provide a portable USB LCM (LCD Control Module) for simple management. To access the management USB LCM, plug it into the USB port of the right ear in the front panel.



Figure 13: Portable USB LCM



INFORMATION:

For the USB port in front panel, please refer to the chapter 2, System Components Overview in the eterio SAN MD Hardware User's Manual.



After plugging the USB LCM into the system, the LCD screen shows the management port IP address and the system model name.

192.168.1.234			
Eterio SAN MD4224S			

Figure 14: USB LCM Screen

To access the LCM options, use the **ENT** (Enter) button, **ESC** (Escape) button, \blacktriangle (up) and \blacktriangledown (down) to scroll through the functions. **MUTE** button to mute the buzzer when the system alarms. If there are event logs occurred, events will be displayed on the first line of the LCM.



TIP:

The event alert settings can be changed, please refer to the chapter 6.4.2, Alert Settings section in the System Settings chapter.

This table describes the function of each item.

Table 9: USB LCM Function List

Function	Description	
System Info.	Display system information including firmware version and memory size	
Reset/Shutdown	Reset or shutdown the system.	
View IP Setting	Display current IP address, subnet mask, and gateway.	
Change IP Config	Set IP address, subnet mask, and gateway. There are three options of DHCP, BOOTP, or static IP address.	
Enc. Management	Show the enclosure data of disk drive temperature, fan status, and power supply status.	
Reset to Default	Reset the system to default settings. The default settings are:	
	 Reset Management Port IP address to DHCP, and then fix IP address: 169.254.1.234/16. Reset admin's Password to 1234. Reset System Name to model name plus the last 6 digits of serial number. For example: MD4224S-700605. Reset IP addresses of all iSCSI Ports to 192.168.1.1, 192.168.2.1, etc. Reset link speed of all Fibre Channel Ports to Automatic. Clear all access control settings of the host connectivity. 	



INFORMATION:

DHCP: The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol is a standardized network protocol used on IP (Internet Protocol) networks for dynamically distributing network configuration parameters, such as IP addresses for interfaces and services. With DHCP, computers request IP addresses and networking parameters automatically from a DHCP server, reducing the need for a network administrator or a user to configure these settings manually.

BOOTP: Like DHCP, the Bootstrap Protocol is also a computer networking protocol used in Internet Protocol networks to automatically assign an IP address to network devices from a configuration server. While some parts of BOOTP have been effectively superseded by the DHCP, which adds the feature of leases, parts of BOOTP are used to provide service to the DHCP protocol. DHCP servers also provide legacy BOOTP functionality.





This table displays the LCM menu hierarchy for your reference when you operate USB LCM.

Menu	L1	L2	L3	L4		
		Firmware Version <n.n.n></n.n.n>				
	System Info.	RAM Size <nnnn> MB</nnnn>				
		[▲] Yes No [▼]	^Yes No▼			
	Reset /	Reset	[▲] Yes No [▼]			
	Shutdown	Shutdown	▲Yes No▼			
		IP Config <static <br="" ip="">DHCP / BOOTP></static>				
	View IP Setting	IP Address <192.168.001.234>				
	view in Setting	IP Subnet Mask <255.255.255.0>				
		IP Gateway <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx></xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>				
<ip addr=""> eterio <model> ▲ ▼</model></ip>		DHCP				
		BOOTP				
	Change IP		IP Address	Adjust IP address		
	Config	Static IP	IP Subnet Mask	Adjust Submask IP		
			IP Gateway	Adjust Gateway IP		
			Apply IP Setting	[▲] Yes No [▼]		
		Phy. Disk Temp.	Local Slot <n>: <nn> (C)</nn></n>			
	Enc. Management	Cooling	Local FAN< <i>n</i> >: < <i>nnnnn</i> > RPM			
		Power Supply	Local PSU< <i>n</i> >: <status></status>			
	Reset to Default	[▲] Yes No [▼]				

Table 10: USB LCM Menu Hierarchy

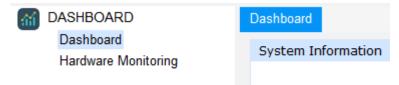


5. Dashboard

The **DASHBOARD** function menu provides submenus of Dashboard and Hardware Monitoring. These pages may help user to quickly view the basic information and system health.

5.1. Dashboard

Select the Dashboard function submenu to show summary of overall system. It's divided into four blocks in the main working area. There are system information, storage view, performance, and event logs.





		ltem	þ	Information			dan Troublet II-A	present 10PS
		System Name	e	eterio SAN			stolet strendt date	internation and international and internationa
-	-	Model Name	P	MD4224S				
		Backplane ID	(QW316				
		System Serial Num	nber N	MD18112100001700605			A 10 1	and the second sec
MD4224S		Firmware Version	4	4.0.0 (build 201811241900)		- 1	In the second	A CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACTOR OFTA CONTRACTOR O
		System Controller Status		Dual Controller, Active-Active			a second second second second	and the second se
		Ourstand Utanlith				- 84		
		System Health		Good	-		no on one of the second se	
nger Villen-		System Health		Good	tin.	Invitions	fore the second se	n an
14.0411	Warner				tim.			The second
da Pam		(194 Sugniture)	Louis Drive	Good	tin.	American Tam	The second secon	Cartest
ian Paris	Volumen 2	(194 Sugniture)	Las a Cheen		-	Tops	Ten	
ias Pain. 1 2	2	5104 Brandette	Las a Cheen		6m.	Type Homese	Tere San: 10 Sea 2010 11 03 30	General (2010) What and Mil-Trac stand contractors
iches Promis L 2 Liste a proditionen	2 In Scalar rat	(18th Bragebate) 1 E ar identiation	Luca Chaen C	Reste Replation.	the s	Tops Information Information	Ten: Sun: 15 Sea 2014 11 (ST 32 Sun: 18 Sun 2015 11 (ST 33	Cartoni (2010) Maar dadi Mili Yana sarang manakatan (2010) Maar dadi Mili Felahat mang pranasa
ista Paris. 2 Isti a profitiane of Nerre	2	(10te Disposition) 1 E	Las a Cheen	Reste Replation.	-	Top Honator Monator Monator	7.em Sur: 15 Sus 2015 11 CE 30 Sur: 14 Sur 2015 11 CE 30 Sur: 13 Sur 2015 11 CE 30	Connet (2019) Wear did Vol 1 yan darine matazatan (2019) Wear did Vol 1 feldeat maring parame (2019) Wear did Vol 1 strend serving parame
	2 In Scalar rat	(18th Bragebate) 1 E ar identiation	Luca Chaen C	Reste Replation.	-	Typ Hondo Manda Manda Manda	Ten San 10 San 2010 11 (53 32 San 10 San 2010 11 (53 32 San 10 San 2011 11 (53 35 San 10 San 2011 11 (53 35	Gented (2010) Volume and Vol-1 time, separat constraints, (2010) Volume and Vol-1 feedback assessing processes (2010) Volume and AV-Vol-1 advance assessing processes (2010) Volume and AV-Vol-1 advance assessing processes (2010) Volume and AV-Vol-1 advance assessing processes

Figure 16: Dashboard



System Information

The system information block displays the basic information of the system. In addition, clicking More... will pop up a window for more details.

	Item	Information
	System Name	eterio SAN
	Model Name	MD4224S
	Backplane ID	QW316
elizzaki ing kiring kiring k	System Serial Number	MD18112100001700605
MD4224S	Firmware Version	4.0.0 (build 201811241900)
	System Controller Status	Dual Controller, Active-Active
	System Health	Good

Figure 17: System Information Block in the Dashboard

This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 11: System Information Block Descriptions

Column Name	Description
System Availability Status	 The status of system availability: Dual Controller, Active/Active: Dual controllers and expansion units are in normal stage. Dual Controller degraded: In dual controller mode, one controller or one of expansion unit fails or they have been plugged out. Please replace or insert a good controller. Dual Controller, Lockdown: In dual controller mode, the configurations of two controllers are different, including the memory capacity, host cards, and controller firmware version. Please check the hardware configurations of two controllers or execute firmware synchronization. Single Controller: Single controller mode.
System Health	 The status of system health: Good: The system is good. Fan Fault: A fan module has failed or is no longer connected. PSU Fault: A power supply has failed or is no longer connected. Temperature Fault: Temperature is abnormal. Voltage Fault: Voltage values are out of range. UPS Fault: UPS connection has failed.

Clicking More... will pop up a window of system information details.



ystem		
ltem	Information	
System Name	eterio SAN	
Model Name	MD4224S	
System Serial Number	MD18112100001700605	
System Controller Status	Dual Controller, Active-Active	
Master Controller	Controller 1	4
Controller 1		
ltem	Information	
Controller Serial Number	50013780080A0440	
CPU	Intel(R) Xeon(R) Processor D-1500 4 Cores	
Memory	8 GB	
Host Card Slot 1	Empty	
Host Card Slot 2	Empty	
Firmware Version	1.0.0	
SAS IOC Firmware Version	15.00.00.00	
SAS Expander Firmware Vers	ion 1000	
Controller 2		_
ltem	Information	
Controller Serial Number	50013780080A0380	
CPU	Intel(R) Xeon(R) Processor D-1500 8 Cores	
Memory	8 GB	
Host Card Slot 1	Empty	
Host Card Slot 2	Empty	

Figure 18: System Information Window

Click the **Close** button to exit the window.



Storage View

The storage view block displays the basic information of storage. In addition, clicking pool column will pop up a window for more details.

Disks	Pools	Volumes	LUNs	Snapshots	Local Clones	Remote Replications	
16	2	2	1	0	0	0	
D 1 M	ame	Health	Tot	al	Percentage U	lsed	
		ne to show n		-35			
Pool N							
		Good	3.6	4 TB			
Pool N		Good	3.6	4 TB			

Figure 19: System View Block in the Dashboard

The top table displays sum of disks, pools, volumes, LUN mappings, snapshots, clones, and remote replications in system. The following table displays all created pools and its basic information.

Table 12: Storage View Block Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Name	Pool name.
	The health of the pool:
	Good: The pool is good.
Health	Failed: The pool is failed.
	• Degraded: The pool is not healthy and not completed. The reason could be lack of disk(s) or have failed disk.
Total	Total capacity of the pool.
Percentage Used	Mouse over the Blue block will display the percentage of used. And
	the Gray block will display the percentage of available.



Click any one of the pool names such as Pool-1 in Figure 5-4 will pop up the detailed pool information.

Figure 20: Pool Information Popup Window



This table shows the column descriptions.

Column Name	Description		
Name	Volume name.		
Health	 The health of the volume: Optimal: The volume is working well and there is no failed disk in the RG Failed: the pool disk of the VD has single or multiple failed disks than its RAID level can recover from data loss. Degraded: At least one disk from the RG of the Volume is failed or plugged out. Non-optimal: the volume has experienced recoverable read errors After passing parity check, the health will become Optimal. 		
Capacity	Total capacity of the volume.		
Used	Used capacity of the volume.		
Used %	Used percentage of the volume.		
Snapshot space	Used snapshot space / Total snapshot space. The first capacity is current used snapshot space, and the second capacity is reserved total snapshot space.		
Snapshots	The quantity of snapshot of the volume.		

Table 13: Volume Column Descriptions

Table 14: Disk Group Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description	
No	The number of disk group.	
	The status of the disk group:	
	Online: The disk group is online.	
	Offline: The disk group is offline.	
Status	Rebuilding: The disk group is being rebuilt.	
	Migrating: The disk group is being migrated.	
	Relocating: The disk group is being relocated.	
	• EE Rebuilding: The disk group is being RAID EE rebuilt.	
	The health of the disk group:	
	Good: The disk group is good.	
Health	Failed: The disk group is failed.	
	• Degraded: The disk group is not healthy and not completed. The	
	reason could be missing or have failed disks.	
Total	Total capacity of the disk group	
Free	Free capacity of the disk group.	
Disks Used	The quantity of disk drives in the disk group.	
Location	Disk location represents in Enclosure ID: Slot.	
Snapshots	The quantity of snapshot of the volume.	



Table 15: Disk Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Enclosure ID	The enclosure ID.
Slot	The position of the disk drive.
Status	 The status of the disk drive: Online: The disk drive is online. Missing: The disk drive is missing in the pool. Rebuilding: The disk drive is being rebuilt. Transitioning: The disk drive is being migrated or is replaced by another disk when rebuilding occurs. Scrubbing: The disk drive is being scrubbed. Check Done: The disk drive has been checked the disk health. Copying back: The disk drive is being copied back
Health	 The health of the disk drive: Good: The disk drive is good. Failed: The disk drive is failed. Error Alert: S.M.A.R.T. Error alert Read Errors: The disk drive has unrecoverable read errors.
Capacity	Total capacity of the disk drive
Disk Type	The type of the disk drive: • [SAS HDD NL-SAS HDD SAS SSD SATA SSD] • [12.0Gb/s 6.0Gb/s 3.0Gb/s 1.5Gb/s]
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the disk drive.
Model	The model name of disk drive.

Click the Close button to exit the window.

Performance

The **performance** block displays the system throughput or system IOPS of all front-end ports for reference.

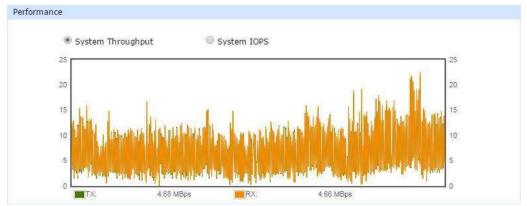


Figure 21: Performance Block in the Dashboard



When selecting System Throughput:

- **TX:** Green line is transmitting throughput performance data. Unit of measure is MBps (Mega Byte Per Second).
- **RX:** Amber line is receiving throughput performance data. Unit of measure is MBps (Mega Byte Per Second).

When selecting System IOPS:

• **IOPS:** Green line is total IOPS (Input/Output Per Second). Unit is the number of times.

Event Logs

The event log block displays the recent 5 event logs. In addition, clicking More... will link to Event Logs function tab of Log Center function submenu to view complete event logs.

	Content
Sun, 18 Sep 2016 11:09:30	[CTR1] Virtual disk Vol-1' has started initialization.
Sun, 18 Sep 2016 11:09:30	[CTR1] Virtual disk 'Vol-1' finished erasing process.
Sun, 18 Sep 2016 11:09:30	[CTR1] Virtual disk Vol-1' started erasing process.
Sun, 18 Sep 2016 11:09:30	[CTR1] Virtual disk 'Vol-1' has been created.
Sun, 18 Sep 2016 11:09:07	[CTR1] RAID group 'Pool-1' has been created.
	Sun, 18 Sep 2016 11:09:30 Sun, 18 Sep 2016 11:09:30 Sun, 18 Sep 2016 11:09:30

Figure 22: Event Logs in the Dashboard



TIP:

The displaying types of the event logs are the same as the event level filter in Event Logs, please refer to the chapter 13.3, Log Center section in the Monitoring chapter.



5.2. Hardware Monitoring

Select the **Hardware Monitoring** function submenu to show summary status of all enclosures. There is current voltage, temperature, status of fan module, and power supply. In addition, clicking More... will pop up a window for more details.

	hboard dware Monitoring	Head Unit
1 Idi	aware monitoring	
- Figure 23: H	Hardware Monitoring	g Function Submenu
	System	
	Item	Information
The local division in which the local division in the local divisi	Enclosure ID	0
	System Serial Number	MD18112100001700605
	System Name	eterio SAN
MD4224	Model Name	MD4224S
	Backplane ID	QW316
	System Health	Good
	Controller 1	
	Item	Information
	Voltage	Good
	Temperature	Good
	Controller 2	
	Item	Information
	Voitage	Good
	Temperature	Good
	Backplane	
	Nem	Information
	Voltage	Good
	Temperature	Good
	System Components	
	item	Information
	Power Supply	Good
	Fan Module	Good
	Cache to Flash	
	Item	Information
	Power Module	Good
	Power napquie	0000

Figure 24: Hardware Monitoring



There are many voltage and temperature sensors on the controller and backplane. If the statuses of every sensor are Good, the information in this page displays Good. On the other hand, if anyone is not good, it will display Failed. So, you may click More... to see details on what component has a fault.

Clicking More... of every enclosure will pop up a window of enclosure status in detail.

ontroller 1	Ngan Matanan ang	çan în a	fame and an		ný la setestestes en ann		
Type	Item	Value	Low Ontical	High Warning	High Warning	High Critical	Status
Voltage	+3.3V	+3.33 V	+3.04 V	+3.14 V	+3.47 V	43.56 V	Good
Voltage	Standby +3.3V	+3.34 V	+3.04 V	+3.14 V	+3.47 V	+3.56 V	Good
Voltage	CPU 10G6E MAC	+1.06 V	+0.98 V	+1.02 V	+1.07 V	+1.12 V	Good
Voltage	CPU South Complex	+1.00 V	+0.90 V	40.96 V	+1.05 V	+1.10 V	Good
Voltage	CPU KR/KX PHY	+1.29 V	+1.23 V	+1.24 V	+1.35 V	+1.37 V	Good
Voitage	SAS Expander	+0.90 V	+0.81 V	+0.85 V	+0.95 V	+0.99 V	Good
Voltage	SAS IOC	+0.96 V	+0.87 V	+0.92 V	+1.03 V	+1.08 V	Good
Voltage	Battery	+3.26 V	+2.00 V	+2.30 V	+3.47 V	+3.56 V	Good
Voltage	+1.2V	+1.26 V	+1.08 V	+1.13 V	*1.28 V	+1:32 V	Good
Voltage	+0.82V	+0.82 V	+0.73 V	+0.77 V	+0.86 V	+0.90 V	Good
Voltage	VCore	+1.81.V	+1.40 V	+1.45 V	+1.97 V	+2.60 V	Good
Temperature	CPU	60.0°C / 140.0°F	0.0°C / 32.0°F	5.0°C741.0'F	82.0°C / 179.6°F	95.0°C / 203.0°F	Good
Temperature	SAS Expander	73.3°C / 163.9'F	0.0°C / 32.0°F	5.0°C / 41.0°F	90,0°C / 194,0°F	95.0°C / 203.0°F	Good
Controller 2							
Type	Item	Value	Low Critical	High Warning	High Warning	High Critical	Status
Voltage	+3.3V	+3.32 V	+3.04 V	+3.14 V	+3.47 V	+3.56 V	Good
Voltage	Standby +3.3V	+3.33 V	+3.04 V	+3.14 V	+3.47 V	*3.56 V	Good
Voltage	CPU 10G6E MAC	+1.05 V	+0.98 V	+1.02 V	+1.07 V	+1.12 V	Good
Voltage	CPU South Complex	+1.00 V	+0.90 V	+0.95 V	+1.05 V	+1.10 V	Good
Voltage	CPU KRIKX PHY	+1.28 V	+1.23 V	+5.24 V	+1.35 V	+1.37 ∀	Good
Voltage	SAS Expander	¥0.89 V	+0.81 V	+0.85 V	+0.95 V	+0.99 V	Good
Voltage	SAS IOC	+0.95 V	+0.87 V	+0.92 V	+1.03 V	+1.08 V	Good
Moltana .	Rotten	43.46 V	45 100 1/	22 10 V	+3.87 M	43.56 M	Sand 1977

Figure 25: Head Unit Popup Window

Click the **Close** button to exit the window.



6. System Settings

This chapter describes the details of system settings. The **SYSTEM SETTINGS** function menu provides submenus of **General Settings**, **Management Port**, **Power Settings**, **Notification**, **Maintenance**, and **Disk Encryption**.

6.1. General System Settings

Select the **General Settings** function submenu to show the information of system name, date and time, and login related settings. The system name, administrator's password, user's password, date and time, and the login options can be changed as required.

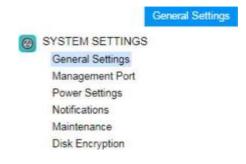
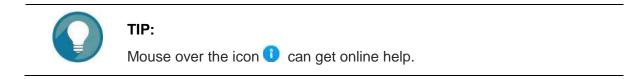


Figure 26: General Function Submenu





System Name			
System Name:	eterio SAN_ESOS		0
Admin Password			
Change Admin Password	ssword		
Current Passwo		*******	(n)
New Password:			
Confirm New Pa	การและสำ		
Connini New Pa	ssword,	******	
Jser Password			
Change User Pass	word		
New Password:			0
Confirm New Pa	ssword:		
Date and Time			
Change Date and	Time		
Current Time:	2017/6/22 16 30 24		
Time Zone:	(GMT+01:00) Warsaw		
Setup Date and	I Time Manually		
Date:	2017 * / 6 * / 22 *		
Time:	16 * : 29 * : 18 *		
INTP			
NTP Server:	0.pool.ntp.org		
Login Options			
Auto Logout:		Disabled	* 0
Login Lock:		Disabled	• •

Figure 27: General Settings



Options of System Settings

The options available in this tab:

- System Name: Change the system name, highlight the old name and type in a new one. Maximum length of the system name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_].
- Change Admin Password: Check it to change administrator password. The maximum length of the password is 12 alphanumeric characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#\$%^&*_-+=`|\(){}[:;"'<>,.?/].
- Change User Password: Check it to change user password. The maximum length of the password is 12 alphanumeric characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#\$%^&*_-+=`|\(){{]:;"'<>,.?/].
- **Date and Time:** Check Change Date and Time button and change the current date, time and time zone as required. Date and time can be set by manually or synchronized from a NTP (Network Time Protocol) server.
- **Auto Logout:** When the auto logout option is enabled, you will be logged out of the admin interface after the time specified. There are Disabled (default), 5 minutes, 30 minutes, and 1-hour options.
- Login Lock: When the login lock is enabled, the system allows only one user to login to the web UI at a time. There are Disabled (default) and Enabled options.

When finished, click the Apply button to take effect.

6.2. Management Port Settings

Select the **Management Port** function submenu to show the information of the management ports. MAC address is displayed for reference and it is used on wake-on-LAN feature. IP address, DNS server, and service ports can be modified according to the management purpose.



Figure 28: Management Port Function Submenu



Show Information for: Co	ontroller 1 💌		
	ontroller 2		
MAC Address:		00:13:78:D4:00:00	
IP Address			
CHCP			
SOOTP			
Static IP Add	dress		
IP Addres	5:	192.168.1.234	
Subnet Ma	isk:	255.255.255.0	
Gateway:		192.168.1.254	
DNS Server Address			
Address:		8.8.8.8	
Service Ports			
Enable HTTP Set	ervice		
HTTP Port:		80	(Default Port : 80)
Enable HTTPS \$	Service		
HTTPS Port:		443	(Default Port : 443)
🖉 Enable SSH Ser	vice		
SSH Port:		22	(Default Port : 22)

Apply

Figure 29: Management Port settings

Options of Management Port Settings

The options available in this tab:

 Enable Dual Management Ports: This is for dual controller models. When the setting is enabled, both management ports of the controllers have their own IP addresses and MAC addresses, and both are active. If the setting is disabled, only the management port of the master controller is active, the other one is on standby. Both controller management ports share the same IP address and MAC address. The management port fails over to the slave controller when the master controller goes offline, either planned or unplanned.





INFORMATION:

For deployment of management ports, please refer to the chapter 4 Deployment Types and Cabling in the eterio SAN MD Hardware User's Manual.

- MAC Address: Display the MAC address of the management port.
- **IP Address:** The option can change IP address for remote administration usage. There are three options for **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **Static IP Address**.



INFORMATION:

DHCP: The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol is a standardized network protocol used on IP (Internet Protocol) networks for dynamically distributing network configuration parameters, such as IP addresses for interfaces and services. With DHCP, computers request IP addresses and networking parameters automatically from a DHCP server, reducing the need for a network administrator or a user to configure these settings manually.

BOOTP: Like DHCP, the Bootstrap Protocol is also a computer networking protocol used in Internet Protocol networks to automatically assign an IP address to network devices from a configuration server. While some parts of BOOTP have been effectively superseded by the DHCP, which adds the feature of leases, parts of BOOTP are used to provide service to the DHCP protocol. DHCP servers also provide legacy BOOTP functionality.

- DNS Server Address: DNS (Domain Name System) provides a means to translate FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) to IP address. Some notification services need DNS setting. Enter an IP address of DNS server here.
- Service Ports: Uncheck to disable the service ports of HTTP, HTTPS, and SSH. If the default port numbers of the service ports are not allowed on your network environment, they can be changed here.

When finished, click the **Apply** button to take effect.



6.3. Power Settings

The **Power Settings** function submenu provides **Boot Management**, **Cache to Flash**, and **UPS** function tabs to show information and configuration setup.

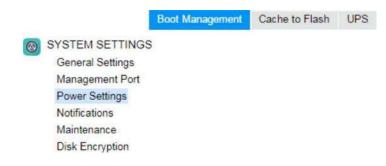


Figure 30: Power Settings Function Submenu

6.3.1. Boot Management Settings

Select the Boot Management function tab in the Power Settings function submenu to enable or disable options about boot.

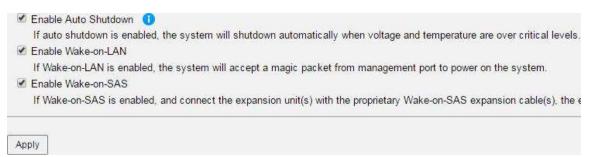


Figure 31: Boot Management Settings

Options of Boot Management Settings

The options available in this tab:

• Enable **Auto Shutdown**: Check to enable auto shutdown. If enabling the setting, the system will shut down automatically when the internal power levels or temperature are not within normal levels.





TIP:

For better protection and to avoid a single short period of abnormal voltage or temperature, enabling the setting could trigger an automatic shutdown. This is done using several sensors placed on key systems that the system checks every 30 seconds for present voltages or temperatures. The following items are trigger conditions. The value of voltage or temperature is lower than Low Critical or higher than High Critical. When one of these sensors reports above the threshold for three contiguous minutes, the system will be shutdown automatically. For more information about critical values, please refer to the chapter 13.2.1, Hardware Monitoring section in the Monitoring chapter.

• Enable Wake-on-LAN: Check to enable wake-on-LAN, the system will accept a magic packet from management port to power on the system.



TIP:

To execute wake-on-LAN function, MAC address of management port is needed. For the information of MAC address, please refer to the chapter 6.2, Management Port Settings page.

 Enable Wake-on-SAS: Check to enable wake-on-SAS. If Wake-on-SAS is enabled and connect the eterio SAN JBOD expansion unit(s) with the proprietary Wake-on-SAS expansion cable(s), the eterio SAN JBOD will power on or shutdown in conjunction with the head unit.



INFORMATION:

For deployment of the head unit and expansion units, please refer to the chapter 4, Deployment Types and Cabling in the eterio SAN MD Hardware User's Manual.



CAUTION:

Wake-on-SAS feature required genuine eterio proprietary expansion cables connected between the head unit and expansion units. Please contact local sales for this accessory.

When finished, click the **Apply** button to take effect.



6.3.2. Cache to Flash Status

Select the **Cache to Flash** function tab in the **Power** function submenu to show information of power module and flash module for cache to flash protection. Power module indicates BBM (Battery Backup Module) or SCM (Super Capacitor Module).



INFORMATION:

For hardware information about power module and flash module, please refer to the chapter 2.7.2, Features of the Cache-to-Flash Module section in the eterio SAN MD Hardware User's Manual.

Power Module

Item	Information	
Status	Good	
Туре	BBM	
Power Level	100%	
Temperature	+32.0(C)	

Flash Module

Item	Information	-
Status	Good	

Figure 32: Cache to Flash

These tables show the column descriptions.

Table 16: Power Module Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description	
Status	 The status of power module: Good: The power module is good. Failed: The power module is failure. Absent: The power module is absent. Charging: The power module is charging 	
Туре	The type of power module:BBM (Battery Backup Module)SCM (Super Capacitor Module)	
Power Level	The power level of the module.	
Power Level	The temperature of the power module.	



Table 17: Flash Module Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description	
	The status of flash module:	
	Good: The flash module is good.	
Status	Failed: The flash module is failure.	
	Absent: The flash module is absent.	
	Detecting: The flash module is detecting	

6.3.3. UPS Settings and Status

Select the **UPS** function tab in the **Power** function submenu to enable UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply) settings and watch the UPS status.



INFORMATION:

For deployment of UPS, please refer to the chapter 3, Installing the System Hardware in the eterio SAN MD Hardware User's Manual.

UPS Status :	On Line	
UPS Battery Level :	58.00%	
UPS Manufacturer :	CYBERPOWER	
UPS Model :	PR750LCD	
UPS Settings		
Enable UPS Support		
Communication Type :	SNMP	
Shutdown Battery Level :	80	۲
SNMP IP Address :	192.168.123.123	
SNMP Version :	SNMP v3	۲
Username :	snmp1	
Use Authenication		
Authentication Protocol :	MDS	٧
Authentication Password :		
🗭 Use Privacy		
Privacy Protocol :	DES	
Privacy Password :		

Apply

Figure 33: UPS Status and Settings



This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 18: UPS Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
UPS Status	 The status of UPS: On-line: The UPS is good. On Battery: The UPS is on battery Low Battery: The voltage of the battery is low. High Battery: The voltage of the battery is high. Replace Battery: The battery needs to be replaced. Charging: The battery is charging Discharging: The battery is discharging Bypass Mode: The power circuit bypasses the UPS battery, so no battery protection is available. It may happen to check if the UPS operates properly during a power loss. Or the UPS is offline for maintenance. Off-Line: UPS is offline and is not supplying power to the load. Overloaded: UPS is overloaded. You plugged more equipment's into the UPS than it was designed to handle. Forced Shutdown: Forced shutdown the UPS.
UPS Battery Level	The battery level of the UPS
UPS Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the UPS.
UPS Model	The model of the UPS.

Options of UPS Settings

The options available in this tab:

- **Enable UPS Support:** Check to enable UPS supported. Now we support network UPS via SNMP, Serial UPS with COM port, and USB UPS.
- **Communication Type:** Now we support network UPS via SNMP, Serial UPS with COM port, and USB UPS.
- **Shutdown battery Level:** If the power is shortage, the system will execute shutdown process when reaching the UPS battery level.

If Communication Type selects SNMP:

- SNMP IP Address: Enter the IP address of the network UPS via SNMP.
- **SNMP Version:** Select SNMP supported versions: v1, v2c, or v3. Please enter community if select SNMP v1 or v2c. If select SNMP v3, it needs more options for authentication. Please enter a username, check to use authentication if necessary, select an authentication protocol and enter an authentication password, check to use privacy if necessary, the privacy protocol supports DES, and enter a privacy password.

If Communication Type selects Serial:

- **UPS Manufacturer:** Select the UPS manufacture.
- **UPS Model:** Select the UPS model.

When finished, click the **Apply** button to take effect.





INFORMATION:

Authentication Protocol:

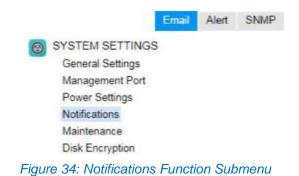
- **MD5:** The MD5 algorithm is a widely used hash function producing a 128-bit hash value. It can still be used as a checksum to verify data integrity, but only against unintentional corruption
- SHA: SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm) is a cryptographic hash function which is a mathematical operation run on digital data; by comparing the computed "hash" (the output from execution of the algorithm) to a known and expected hash value, a person can determine the data's integrity

Privacy Protocol:

• **DES**: The DES (Data Encryption Standard) is a symmetric-key algorithm for the encryption of electronic data

6.4. Notification Settings

The **Notifications** function submenu provides **Email**, **Alert** and **SNMP** function tabs to show information and configuration setup.



6.4.1. Email Settings

Select the **Email** function tab in the **Notifications** function submenu to be used to enter up to three email addresses for receiving the event notifications.



SMTP Server:	smtp.company.com	
SMTP Port:	25	
Email-from Address:	admin@company.com	0
Authentication Required		
User Name:	admin	0
Password:	*******	0
Secure Connection:	ns .	ŧ
Subject Prefix:	[SAN]	0
mail Notification Settings		
Email-to Address 1:	user1@company.com	0
	🔲 Information 🗭 Warning 🗟 Error	
Email-to Address 2:	user2@company.com	0
	🔲 Information 🗹 Warning 🖉 Error	
Email-to Address 3:	user3@company.com	0
	🔲 Information 💌 Warning 💌 Error	

Figure 35: Email Settings

Options of SMTP Settings

The options available in this tab:

- **SMTP Server:** Enter the IP address or FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) of SMTP server to deliver the notification mails.
- **SMTP Port:** Default is port 25. You can change the SMTP port here.
- Email-from Address: Enter the sender email address.
- **Authentication Required:** Some email servers require authentication for SMTP relay. Check to enable authentication and enter the User Name and Password.
- Secure Connection: Using SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) or TLS (Transport Layer Security) for secure connection.
- **Subject Prefix:** The input string will be appended to the front of the email subject.

Options of Email Notification Settings

The options available in this tab:

• **Email-to-Address:** Enter the email address for receiving the event notifications. You can also select which levels of event logs which you would like to receive. The default setting only includes Warning and Error event logs.





TIP:

Please make sure the IP address of DNS server is well-setup in **Management Port** tab. So, the event notification emails can be sent successfully. Please refer to the Management Port Settings section for more details.

When finished, click the **Send Test Email & Apply** button to take effect. Or click the **Reset to Default** button to reset settings.

6.4.2. Alert Settings

Select the **Alert** function tab in the **Notifications** function submenu to be used to setup alerts via the **Syslog** protocol, the pop-up alerts and alerts on the front display. The device buzzer is also managed here.

Host Address or Name:	192.168.122.123	
UDP Port:	514	
Facility:	User	
	🗐 Information 📽 Warning 🕷 Error	
Admin Interface and LCM Alerts 🕕		
Admin Interface Popup Alerts:	🖾 Information 🗐 Warning 💭 Error	
Show Alerts on LCM:	🗐 Information 🗟 Warning 🗟 Error	
Device Buzzer 🕕		
Enable Buzzer:	2	

Figure 36: Alert Settings

Options of Alert Settings

The options available in this tab:

- **Syslog Server Settings:** Fill in the host address and the facility for syslog service. The default UDP port is 514. You can also check the alert levels here. Most LINUX/UNIX systems built in syslog daemon.
- Admin Interface and LCM Alerts: You can check or uncheck the alert levels which you would like to have pop-up message in the Web UI and show on LCM.
- **Device Buzzer:** Check it to enable the device buzzer. Uncheck it to disable device buzzer.

When finished, click the **Apply** button to tack effect.

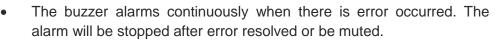


TIP:

Chind Cl. Tenes

The device buzzer features are listed below:

• The buzzer alarms 1 second when system boots up successfully.



• The alarm will be muted automatically when the error is resolved. For example, when a RAID 5 pool is degraded and alarm rings immediately, user replaces one disk drive for rebuild. When the rebuild process is done, the alarm will be muted automatically

6.4.3. SNMP Settings

Select the **SNMP** function tab in the **Notifications** function submenu to be used to setup SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) traps for alerting with event logs and setup SNMP server settings for client monitoring.

Enable SNMP Trap			
SNMP Trap Port:	162		(Default Port : 162)
	Information Water	rning	Error
SNMP Trap Address 1:	192.168.123.123		ĺ
SNMP Trap Address 2:			
SNMP Trap Address 3:			
SNMP Server			
SNMP Version:	SNMP v3	×	
Username:	user1		
Authentication Protocol:	MDS	Ŧ	
Authentication Password:		٢	
🕑 Use Privacy			
Privacy Protocol:	DES	Y	
Privacy Password:	******	٩	0
Apply			
1 2 2 7 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2			
SNMP MIB Files			
Downlaod SNMP MIB File:	Download		
Download iSCSI MIB File:	Download		

Page 91 from 350



Options of SNMP Trap Settings

The options available in this tab:

• Enable SNMP Trap: Check to enable SNMP trap to send system event logs to SNMP trap agent. The default SNMP trap port is 162. You can check or uncheck the alert levels which you would like to receive. And then fill in up to three SNMP trap addresses for receiving the event notifications.

Options of SNMP Server Settings

The options are available on this tab:

SNMP Version: Select SNMP supported versions: v1/v2, or v3. If select SNMP v3, it
needs more options for authentication. Please enter a username, select an authentication
protocol and enter an authentication password, check to use privacy if necessary, select
a privacy protocol, and enter a privacy password.

When finished, click the **Apply** button to take effect.



INFORMATION:

Authentication Protocol:

- **MD5:** The MD5 algorithm is a widely used hash function producing a 128-bit hash value. It can still be used as a checksum to verify data integrity, but only against unintentional corruption
- SHA: SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm) is a cryptographic hash function which is a mathematical operation run on digital data; by comparing the computed "hash" (the output from execution of the algorithm) to a known and expected hash value, a person can determine the data's integrity

Privacy Protocol:

• **DES**: The DES (Data Encryption Standard) is a symmetric-key algorithm for the encryption of electronic data

Options of SNMP MIB Files

The options available in this tab:

• **Download SNMP MIB File:** Click **Download** button to save the SNMP MIB file which can be imported to the SNMP client tool to get system information. You can view fan, voltage, and system status via SNMP MIB.



• **Download iSCSI MIB File:** Click **Download** button to save the iSCSI MIB file which can be imported to the SNMP client tool to get network information. You can view iSCSI traffic via iSCSI MIB.

6.5. Maintenance

The **Maintenance** function submenu provides **System Information**, **Upgrade**, **Firmware Synchronization** (This option is only visible when dual controllers is installed.), **System.**

Identification, **Reset to Defaults**, **Configuration Backup**, **Volume Restoration**, and **Reboot / Shutdown** function tabs. The **Volume Restoration** function will be described in the Volume Restoration section in the Advanced Volume Administration chapter, the others are described in the following sections.

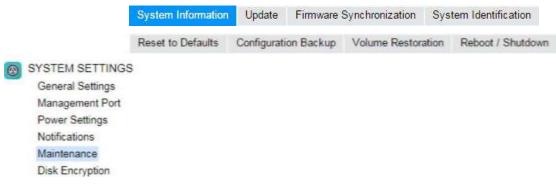


Figure 38: Maintenance Function Submenu

6.5.1. System Information

Select the **System Information** function tab in the **Maintenance** function submenu to display all system information.



System

ltem	Information
System Name	eterio SAN
Model Name	MD4224S
System Serial Number	MD18112100001700605
System Controller Status	Dual Controller, Active-Active
Master Controller	Controller 1

Controller 1

Item	Information
Controller Serial Number	50013780080A0440
CPU	Intel(R) Xeon(R) Processor D-1500 4 Cores
Memory	8 GB
Host Card Slot 1	Empty
Host Card Slot 2	Empty
Firmware Version	1.2.0
SAS IOC Firmware Version	07.00.01.00
SAS Expander Firmware Version	1000

Item -	Information
Controller Serial Number	50013780080A0380
CPU	Intel(R) Xeon(R) Processor D-1500 4 Cores
Memory	8 GB
Host Card Slot 1	Empty
Host Card Slot 2	Empty
Firmware Version	12.0
SAS IOC Firmware Version	07.00.01.00
SAS Expander Firmware Version	1000

Backplane

Item	Information	
Backplane Serial Number	001378D40000	
Backplane ID	QW316	
MCU Version	1.2.0	

Licenses

Item II	Information
SSD Cache	Enabled
Auto Tiering	Enabled

Download Service Package

Figure 39: System Information



This table shows the descriptions.

TIL 10 OUT		1.6		
Table 19: Statu	s in System	Information	Column Description	S

Column Name	Description
System Availability Status	 The status of system availability: Dual Controller, Active/Active: Dual controllers and expansion units are in normal stage. Dual Controller degraded: In dual controller mode, one controller or one of expansion unit fails, or they have been plugged out. Please replace or insert a good controller. Dual Controller, Lockdown: In dual controller mode, the configurations of two controllers are different, including the memory capacity, host cards, and controller firmware version. Please check the hardware configurations of two controllers or execute firmware synchronization. Single Controller: Single controller mode.

Options of System Information

The options available in this tab:

• **Download Service Package**: Click button to download system information for service.



CAUTION:

If you try to increase the system memory and running in dual controller mode, please make sure both controllers have the same DIMM on each corresponding memory slot. Failing to do so will result in controller malfunction, which will not be covered by warranty.

6.5.2. Firmware Update

Select the **Update** function tab in the **Maintenance** function submenu to be used to update controller firmware, expansion unit firmware, change operation mode, and active licenses.



TIP:

Before upgrading, we recommend you export your system configurations first in the **Configuration Backup** function tab. Please refer to the Configuration Backup section for more details



Head Unit Firmware Update	
Model Name:	MD4224S
Firmware Version:	4.0.0.
Select the firmware file for the update:	Choose File eterio MD-S Series_1.3.4_201810191700.bin
Apply	
Expansion Unit Firmware Update	
Select an Expansion Unit:	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Firmware Version:	
Select the firmware file for the update:	Choose File No file chosen
Apply	
Change Operation Mode	
Select an Operation Mode:	Dual Controller 🔹
Apply Figure 40: Firmware Update	

Options of Firmware Update

The options available in this tab:

• Head Unit Firmware Update: Please prepare new controller firmware file named "xxxx.bin" in local hard drive, click the **Choose File** button to select the firmware file. Then Click the **Apply** button, it will pop up a warning message, click the **OK** button to start upgrading the firmware.

When upgrading, there is a progress bar running. After finished upgrading, the system must reboot manually to make the new firmware take effect.





TIP:

Firmware update can be done without downtime if the MPIO configuration is well-configured between the connected host / server and both controllers. A firmware update process will update both controllers at the same time. After finished updating, you must reboot the system.

A system reboot will reboot the master controller first. At this point, the slave controller will take over all tasks (and becomes a new master controller). After the original master controller finishes the booting process (the original master controller is slave controller at this moment), the new master controller (the original slave controller) will reboot automatically, and so on for the original master controller to take over the tasks, once the original slave controller finishes the booting process, the firmware update procedure is completed.

- **Expansion Unit Firmware Update:** To upgrade expansion unit firmware, first select an expansion unit. Then other steps are the same as the head unit firmware update. After finished upgrading, the expansion unit must reboot manually to make the new firmware take effect. This is not valid for third-party systems.
- Change the Operation Mode: This option can be modified to operate in dual-controller or single-controller mode here. If the system installed only one controller, switch this mode to Single Controller, and then click the Apply button. After changing the operation mode, the system must reboot manually to take effect.

SSD Cache License		
Download Request License file and send to your I	ocal sales to get a License Key.	
Select the license file to enable SSD Cache:	Choose File No file chosen	
Apply Request License		
Download Request License file and send to your I	ocal sales to get a License Key.	
Select the license file to enable Auto Tiering:	Choose File No file chosen	
Apply Request License		

Figure 41: Enable Licenses



- **SSD Cache License:** This option enables SSD cache. Download **Request License** file and send to your local sales to obtain a License Key. After getting the license key, click Choose File button to select it, and then click the **Apply** button to enable. Each license key is unique and dedicated to a specific system. If you have already enabled, this option will be invisible. After enabling the license, the system must reboot manually to take effect.
- **Auto Tiering License:** This option enables auto tiering. The operation is the same as SSD cache.



TIP:

After enabling the licenses, the functions cannot be disabled, and these license options will be hidden.

6.5.3. Firmware Synchronization

Select the **Firmware Synchronization** function tab in the **Maintenance** function submenu to be used on dual controller systems to synchronize the controller firmware versions when the firmware of the master controller and the slave controller are different. The firmware of slave controller is always changed to match the firmware of the master controller. It doesn't matter if the firmware version of slave controller is newer or older than that of the master. Normally, the firmware versions in both controllers are the same.

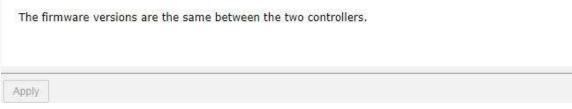


Figure 42: Both Firmware Versions are Synchronized

If the firmware versions between two controllers are different, it will display the warning message. Click the **Apply** button to synchronize and force a reboot.



TIP:

This tab is only visible when the dual controllers are installed. A single controller system does not have this option.



6.5.4. System Identification

Select the **System Identification** function tab in the **Maintenance** function submenu to turn on or turn off the UID (Unique Identifier) LED control mechanism. The system UID LED helps users to easily identify the system location within the rack.

When the UID LEDs are turn off, click the **OK** button to turn on the UID LEDs which are light **blue** color, located on the right panel of front view and both controllers of rear view.

System Identification		
Turn on the UID (Unique Identifier) LEDs.	OK	
Figure 43: Turn on the UID (Unique Identifier) LED		

When the UID LEDs are steady on, click the OK button to turn off the UID LEDs.



INFORMATION:

For the front and rear view about the UID LEDs, please refer to chapter 2, System Components Overview in the eterio SAN MD Hardware User's Manual.

6.5.5. Reset to Factory Defaults

Select the **Reset to Defaults** function tab in the **Maintenance** function submenu to allow users to reset the system configurations back to the factory default settings and clean all configurations of the expansion enclosure ID.



Reset to Factory Default
Click the Reset button to clear all user-entered configurations and reset the system to factory default. If the following item is checked, it will also clear all volume restoration records. It is irreversible, the system won't be able to restore the recorded RAID configuration if it fails while there is no record. Please carefully consider before making this reset.
Clear all volume restoration records
Reset
Clean Expansion Enclosure ID
Click the Clean button to clean all configurations of the expansion enclosure ID.
Clean

Figure 44: Reset to Defaults

Options of Resets to Factory Defaults

The options available in this tab:

- **Reset to Defaults:** Click the **Reset** button to progress reset to defaults and force a reboot. The default settings are:
 - Reset Management Port IP address to DHCP, and then fix IP address: 169.254.1.234/16.
 - Reset admin's Password to 1234.
 - Reset System Name to model name plus the last 6 digits of serial number. For example: MD4224S-700605.
 - Reset IP addresses of all iSCSI Ports to 192.168.1.1, 192.168.2.1, ... etc.
 - Reset link speed of all Fibre Channel Ports to Automatic.
 - Clear all access control settings of the host connectivity.
- Clear all volume restoration records: Check to clear all volume restoration records.



CAUTION:

Process the Reset to Defaults function will force a reboot. To clear all volume restoration records is irreversible. The system won't be able to restore the recorded RAID configuration if it fails while there is no record. Please carefully consider before making this reset.

 Clean Expansion Enclosure ID: Click the Clean button to clean all configurations of expansion enclosure ID. A clean will cause the system shutdown, and then you must start manually.





INFORMATION:

The eterio SAN JBOD features the seven-segment LED display for users to easily identify a specific eterio SAN JBOD. The enclosure ID is assigned by head unit (eterio SAN MD-Series) automatically. The seven - segment LED display supports up to ten eterio SAN JBOD, and the numbering rule will start from 1 to A. For dual controller models, both controllers will display the same enclosure ID. After the eterio SAN JBOD had been assigned the enclosure ID, head unit will assign the same enclosure ID when the system reboots or goes shutdown.



CAUTION:

Process the **Clean Expansion Enclosure ID** function will force the system shutdown to clean all configurations of expansion enclosure ID.

6.5.6. Configuration Backup

Select the **Configuration Backup** function tab in the **Maintenance** function submenu to be used to either save system configuration (export) or apply a saved configuration (import).

Export	
Export Mode:	System 🔹
Export File:	CONFIG-4224L-D40000-20170627-135559.csv
Apply	
Import	
Import File:	Choose File No file chosen
Apply	

Figure 45: Configuration Backup



While the volume configuration settings are available for exporting, to prevent conflicts and overwriting existing data, they cannot be imported.

Options of Configuration Backup

The options available in this tab:

- **Import**: Import all system configurations excluding volume configuration.
- **Export**: Export all configurations to a file.



CAUTION:

The Import option will import all system configurations excluding volume configuration. The current system configurations will be replaced.

6.5.7. Reboot and Shutdown

Select the **Reboot / Shutdown** tab in the **Maintenance** function submenu to be used to reboot or shutdown the system. Before powering off the system, it is highly recommended to execute **Shutdown** function to flush all data from memory cache into the disk drives. The step is important for data protection.



Figure 46: Reboot and Shutdown

The **Reboot** function has three options; reboot both controllers, controller 1 only or controller 2 only.

Reboot		
Both Controller 1 and Controller 2 Controller 1 Controller 2		
	OK	Cancel





6.6. Disk Encryption

The **Disk Encryption** function submenu provides **Authentication**, and **SEDs** function tabs. SED (Self-Encrypting Drive) support will be described in the chapter 14, SED and ISE Support chapter.



Figure 48: Disk Encryption Function Submenu



7. Host Configuration

This chapter describes host protocol concepts and the details of host configuration. The **HOST CONFIGURATION** function menu provides submenus of **Overview**, **iSCSI Ports**, and **Fibre Channel Ports**.

TIP:

The Fibre Channel Ports function menu will appear only when the system has a fibre channel host card installed.

7.1. Host Protocol Technology

This section describes the host protocol technology of iSCSI (Internet SCSI) and fibre channel.

7.1.1. iSCSI Technology

iSCSI (Internet SCSI) is a protocol which encapsulates SCSI (Small Computer System Interface) commands and data in TCP/IP packets for linking storage devices with servers over common IP infrastructures. iSCSI provides high performance SANs over standard IP networks like LAN, WAN or the Internet.

IP SANs are true SANs (Storage Area Networks) which allow several servers to attach to an infinite number of storage volumes by using iSCSI over TCP/IP networks. IP SANs can scale the storage capacity with any type and brand of storage system. In addition, it can be used by any type of network (Ethernet, Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, and 10 Gigabit Ethernet) and combination of operating systems (Microsoft Windows, Linux, Solaris, Mac, etc.) within the SAN network. IP-SANs also include mechanisms for security, data replication, multi-path and high availability.

Storage protocols, such as iSCSI, have "two ends" in the connection. These ends are initiator and target. In iSCSI, we call them iSCSI initiator and iSCSI target. The iSCSI initiator requests or initiates any iSCSI communication. It requests all SCSI operations like read or write. An initiator is usually located on the host side (either an iSCSI HBA or iSCSI SW initiator).



The target is the storage device itself or an appliance which controls and serves volumes. The target is the device which performs SCSI command or bridge to an attached storage device.

Each iSCSI node, that is, an initiator or target, has a unique IQN (iSCSI Qualified Name). The IQN is formed according to the rules that were adopted for Internet nodes. The IQNs can be abbreviated by using a descriptive name, which is known as an alias. An alias can be assigned to an initiator or a target.

Table 20: iSCSI Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum iSCSI target quantity per system	256
Maximum initiator address quantity per system	256
Maximum host quantity for single controller system	512
Maximum host quantity for dual controller system	1,024
Maximum iSCSI session quantity for single controller	1,024
Maximum iSCSI session quantity for dual controller	2,048
Maximum iSCSI connection quantity for single controller	4,096
Maximum iSCSI connection quantity for dual controller	8,192
Maximum CHAP accounts per system	64

7.1.2. Fibre Channel Technology

Fibre channel is an extremely fast system interface. It was initially developed for use primarily in the supercomputing field but has become the standard connection type for SAN in enterprise storage.

The target is the storage device itself or an appliance which controls and serves volumes or virtual volumes. The target is the device which performs SCSI commands or bridges to an attached storage device.

Fibre Channel is the traditional method used for data center storage connectivity. The eterio SAN supports fibre channel connectivity at speeds of 4, 8, and 16 Gbps. Fibre Channel Protocol is used to encapsulate SCSI commands over the fibre channel network. Each device on the network has a unique 64-bit WWPN (World Wide Port Name).

Table 21: Fibre Channel Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum host quantity for single controller	256
Maximum host quantity for dual controller	512



7.2. Host Connectivity Overview

eterio SAN provides different type of host connectivity according to the system configuration, it could be base system or host cards installed system. The base system has two 10GbE iSCSI ports onboard per controller. The host cards are installed the same type on both controllers. Currently host card has three types, 1GbE iSCSI (RJ45), 10GbE iSCSI (SFP+), and 16Gb FC (SFP+), for selection according to system infrastructure.

Select **Overview** function submenu to display all the host connectivity in system. The status and information of all host ports are listed.



Figure 49: Overview Function Submenu

The following is an example to show onboard 10GbE LAN port, 1GbE iSCSI host card at slot 2 and 16Gb FC host cards at slot 1.

Location	Name	Status	MAC Address/WWPN
Onboard	LAN1 (10Gb)	Down	00:13:78:ff:88:02
Onboard	LAN2 (10Gb)	Down	00.13.78.ff 88.03
Slot2	LAN1 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	00:13:78:ff:88:04
Slot2	LAN2 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	00:13:78:ff:88:05
Slot2	LAN3 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	00:13:78:ff:88:06
Slot2	LAN4 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	00:13:78:ff:88:07
Slot1	FC1 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	2100001378FF8800
Slot1	FC2 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	2200001378FF8800
Slot1	FC3 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	2300001378FF8800
Slot1	FC4 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	2400001378FF8800

Figure 50: Controller 1: Host Port Overview



Location	Name	Status	MAC Address/WWPN
Onboard	LAN1 (10Gb)	Down	00:13:78:ff:88:0c
Onboard	LAN2 (10Gb)	Down	00:13:78:ff:88:0d
Slot2	LAN1 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	00:13:78:ff:88:0e
Slot2	LAN2 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	00:13:78:ff:88:0f
Slot2	LAN3 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	00:13:78:ff:88:10
Slot2	LAN4 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	00:13:78:ff:88:11
Slot1	FC1 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	2900001378FF8800
Slot1	FC2 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	2A00001378FF8800
Slot1	FC3 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	2B00001378FF8800
Slot1	FC4 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	2C00001378FF8800

Figure 51: Controller 2: Host Port Overview

The columns display information of **Location**, **Name**, **Status**, and **MAC address** for iSCSI or **WWPN** (World Wide Port Name) for fibre channel.



INFORMATION:

Fibre Channel / iSCSI Host Card at Slot 1:

- HQ-16F4S2: 4 x 16Gb FC (SFP+) ports
- HQ-16F2S2: 2 x 16Gb FC (SFP+) ports
- HQ-10G4S2: 4 x 10GbE iSCSI (SFP+) ports
- HQ-10G2T: 2 x 10GBASE-T iSCSI (RJ45) ports
- HQ-01G4T: 4 x 1GBASE-T iSCSI (RJ45) ports

iSCSI Host Card at Slot 2 (20Gb bandwidth):

- HQ-16F2S2: 2 x 16Gb FC (SFP+) ports
- HQ-10G4S2, 4 x 10GbE iSCSI (SFP+) ports
- HQ-10G2T: 2 x 10GBASE-T iSCSI (RJ45) ports
- HQ-01G4T, 4 x 1GBASE-T iSCSI (RJ45) ports



INFORMATION:

For hardware information about host cards, please refer to the chapter 3.3, Installing the Optional Host Cards section in the eterio SAN MD Hardware User's Manual.





CAUTION:

If you change the configuration of the host cards including insert or remove them, it must execute **Reset to Defaults** function in **SYSTEM SETTINGS** \rightarrow **Maintenance** \rightarrow **Reset to Defaults**. Before that, you can keep the system configurations by export and import the configuration file in **SYSTEM SETTINGS** \rightarrow **Maintenance** \rightarrow **Configuration Backup**. Please refer to the chapter 6.5.5, Reset to Factory Default section and the chapter 6.5.5, Configuration Backup section for more details.

7.3. Configure iSCSI Connectivity

The iSCSI Ports provides iSCSI Ports, iSCSI Settings, iSCSI Targets, CHAP Accounts, and Sessions function tabs to configure iSCSI ports.

 iSCSI Ports
 iSCSI Settings
 iSCSI Targets
 CHAP Accounts
 Sessions

 Image: HOST CONNECTIVITY
 Overview
 Image: ScSI Ports
 Image: ScSI

7.3.1. Configure iSCSI Ports

Select the iSCSI Ports function submenu to show information of iSCSI ports where they are located (onboard or host cards). The iSCSI port properties can be configured by clicking the functions button ▼ to the left side of the specific iSCSI port.

The columns display information of Location, Name, Status, LAG (Link Aggregation), VLAN ID (Virtual LAN ID), IP address, Gateway IP address, Jumbo Frame status, and MAC address.

Set IP Address

Click ▼ -> Set IP Address which can assign an iSCSI IP address of the iSCSI data port. There are two options: Use DHCP to acquire an IP address automatically or specify a Static IP Address to set the IP address manually.



	Location	Name	Status	LAG	VLAN ID	IP Address	Gateway	Jumbo Frame	MAC Address
٠	Onboard	LAN1 (10Gb)	Down	N/A	N/A	192.168.1.1	192.168.1.254	Disabled	00 13 78 # 88 02
*	Onboard	LAN2 (10Gb)	Down	N/A	N/A	192.168.2.1	192 168 2 254	Disabled	00.1378 ft.88:03
•	Slot2	LAN1 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	N/A	N/A	192.168.100.11		Disabled	00.13.78 ff 88.04
	Slot2	LAN2 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	N/A	N/A	192 168 100 12		Disabled	00.13:78:ff 88:05
۲	Slot2	LAN3 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	N/A	N/A	192.168.100.13		Disabled	00 13 78 1 88 0
	Slot2	LAN4 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	N/A	N/A	192, 168, 100, 14		Disabled	00.13 78 # 88.07

*	Onboard	LAN1 (10Gb)	Down	N/A	N/A	192, 168, 11, 1	192.168.11.254	Disabled	00:13:78 ff 88.0c
	Onboard	LAN2 (10Gb)	Down	N/A	N/A	192.168.12.1	192.168 12.254	Disabled	00:13:78 #.88.0d
•	Slot2	LAN1 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	N/A	N/A	192,168,100,21		Disabled	00:13:78 # 88.0e
	Slot2	LAN2 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	N/A	N/A	192.168.100.22		Disabled	00:13:78:ff:88.0f
۲	Slot2	LAN3 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	N/A	N/A	192.168.100.23		Disabled	00 13 78 ff.88 10
	Slot2	LAN4 (1Gb)	1 Gb/s	N/A	N/A	192.168.100.24		Disabled	00:13:78.#.88:11

Figure 53: List iSCSI Ports



INFORMATION:

DHCP: The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol is a standardized network protocol used on IP (Internet Protocol) networks for dynamically distributing network configuration parameters, such as IP addresses for interfaces and services. With DHCP, computers request IP addresses and networking parameters automatically from a DHCP server, reducing the need for a network administrator or a user to configure these settings manually.

	lect 'DHCP' to acqui lic' to specify an IP a	re an IP address automatically or address manually.	
0	DHCP		
۲	Static IP Address	3	
	IP Address:	192.168.1.1	
	Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0	
	Gateway:	192.168.1.254	

Figure 54: iSCSI IP Address Settings



Set Link Aggregation

Click ▼ -> Set Link Aggregation, the default mode of each iSCSI data port is connected without any bonding. Two bonding methods, Trunking and LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol), can be selected. At least two iSCSI data ports must be checked for iSCSI link aggregation.

Set Link Aggregation		
Select the network interfa	aces that you would like to bond together.	
Bonding Method:	Trunking LACP 1	
IP Address:	192.168.1.1	
Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0	
Gateway:	192.168.1.254	
Network Setup:	Onboard-LAN1 (10Gb) Onboard-LAN2 (10Gb)	
2		
		OK Cancel

Figure 55: Set Link Aggregation



INFORMATION:

Trunking: Sometimes called "Port Trunking" configures multiple iSCSI ports to be grouped together into one to increase the connection speed beyond the limit of a single iSCSI port.

LACP: The Link Aggregation Control Protocol is part of IEEE 802.3ad that allows bonding several physical ports together to form a single logical channel. LACP allows a network switch to negotiate an automatic bundle by sending LACP packets to the peer. LACP can increase bandwidth usage and automatically perform failover when the link status fails on a port.

Set VLAN ID

Click ▼ -> Set VLAN ID, VLAN (Virtual LAN) is a logical grouping mechanism implemented on switch device. VLANs are collections of switching ports that comprise a single broadcast domain. It allows network traffic to transfer more efficiently within these logical subgroups. Please consult your network switch user manual for VLAN setting instructions. Most of the work is done at the switch. Please make sure that your VLAN ID of iSCSI port matches that of switch port. If your network environment supports VLAN, you can use this function to change the configurations. Fill in VLAN ID and Priority settings to enable VLAN.



et VLAN ID		
VLAN ID:	2	VLAN ID range (2~4094)
Priority:	0	Priority range (0 ~ 7)
		OK Cancel

Figure 56: Set VLAN ID



INFORMATION:

VLAN ID: VLAN ID is a number range from 2 to 4094. Three numbers (0, 1, and 4095) are reserved for special purposes.

Priority: The PCP (Priority Code Point) is a number-ranges from 0 to 7 and reserved for QoS (Quality of Service). The definition is compliant with IEEE 802.1p protocol and 0 is the default value. In normal cases, you don't need to set this value.

Set Default Gateway

Click ∇ -> **Set Default Gateway** to set the gateway of the IP address as default gateway. There can be only one default gateway.

Remove Default Gateway

To remove the default gateway, click **▼** -> **Remove Default Gateway**.

Set Jumbo Frames

Click ▼ -> **Set Jumbo Frames** to set the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) size. The jumbo frame size could be set as 4000 or 9000 bytes. Jumbo Frame is disabled by default.

Jumbo Frame:	Disabled 🔻	
	9000	
	4000	
	Disabled	

Figure 57: Set Jumbo Frame





CAUTION:

If the VLAN ID or jumbo frames are set, the related switching hub and HBA on host must be set, too. Otherwise, the LAN connection cannot work properly.

Ping Host

Click ▼ -> **Ping Host**, it can verify the port connection from a target to the corresponding host data port. Input the host's IP address and click Start button. The system will display the ping result. Click Stop button will stop ping activity.

192,1	58,100).12	Start	Stop
Reply	from	192.168.100.12:	time<1ms	1
Reply	from	192.168.100.12:	time<1ms	
Reply	from	192.168.100.12:	time<1ms	
Reply	from	192.168.100.12:	time<1ms	

Figure 58: Ping Host

Reset Port

Click ▼ -> **Reset Port**, which is generally used to recover from a port malfunction.

7.3.2. Configure iSCSI Settings

Select the **iSCSI Settings** function tab in the **iSCSI Ports** function submenu to provide to setup entity name of the system and iSNS (Internet Storage Name Service) server. The entity name is default in IQN (iSCSI Qualified Name) format and could be modified for management purpose. The iSNS IP is used by iSNS protocol for automated discovery, management and configuration of iSCSI devices on a TCP/IP network. To use iSNS, an iSNS server must be added to the SAN. The iSNS server IP address must be added to the storage system for iSCSI initiator service to send queries.



Entity Name: iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000 The entity name is for a device or gateway that is accessible from the network	0
	WOFK.
ISNS IP Address	
iSNS IP Address:	
The iSNS protocol allows automated discovery, management, and configu	ration of iSCSI devices on a network

Figure 59: Entity Name and iSNS Settings

Options of iSCSI Settings

The options available in this tab:

- Entity Name: Change the entity name; highlight the old name and type in a new one. The maximum length of entity name is 200 characters. Valid characters are [a~z | 0~9 | -.:].
- **iSNS IP Address:** The option can change iSNS IP address for internet storage name service.

When finished, click the **Apply** button to effect changes.



INFORMATION:

iSNS: The iSNS protocol allows automated discovery, management, and configuration of iSCSI devices on a network.

7.3.3. Configure iSCSI Targets

Select the **iSCSI Targets** function tab in the **iSCSI Ports** function submenu to show the iSCSI target information for iSCSI initiator. The iSCSI target properties can be configured by clicking the functions button ▼ to the left side of the specific iSCSI target.

Change Authentication Mode

Click $\mathbf{\nabla}$ -> Authentication Method to enable CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol) and mutual CHAP authentication method used in point-to-point for user login. CHAP is a type of authentication in which the authentication server sends the client a key to be used for encrypting the username and password. It enables the username and password to transmit in an encrypted form for protection.



In addition, mutual CHAP is a two-way authentication between the iSCSI target and the initiator. User must enter another username and password which are set in the initiator side.

80.0	ID	Auth	Target Name	Portal	Alias
		CHAP	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev0.ctr1	10.10.1.101:3260, 10.10.1.102:3260	
	1	None	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev1.ctr1	10.10.1.101:3260, 10.10.1.102:3260	
82	2	None	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev2.ctr1	10.10.1.101:3260, 10.10.1.102:3260	
	3	None	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev3.ctr1	10.10.1.101:3260, 10.10.1.102:3260	
	4	None	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev4.ctr1	10.10.1.101:3260, 10.10.1.102:3260	
e jõ	5	None	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev5.ctr1	10.10.1.101:3260, 10.10.1.102:3260	
	6	None	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev6.ctr1	10.10.1.101.3260, 10.10.1.102.3260	
	7	None	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev7.ctr1	10.10.1.101.3260, 10.10.1.102.3260	
	8	None	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev8.ctr1	10.10.1.101:3260, 10.10.1.102:3260	
	9	None	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev9.ctr1	10.10.1.101:3260, 10.10.1.102:3260	

<< first < prev 1 2 3 4 5 6 Z 8 9 10 next> last>>

Figure 60: iSCSI Targets

Controller 1

Change Authentication M	thod
Target : iqn.2018-08.com.e	erio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev0.ctr1
🖉 Enable CHAP 0	
Please select at least on target. It allows multiple	CHAP user to protect the iSCSI selection.
CHAP Username :	chap1 + chap2
🔲 Mutual CHAP 0	
Usemane :	
Password :	
	OK Cancel

Figure 61: Authentication Method



Here is an example of changing the authentication method.

- Check **Enable CHAP** to enable CHAP authentication.
- Select the CHAP usernames that you would like to have access to this target. CHAP users can be more than one, but it must be at least one CHAP to enable on the target.
- If necessary, check Mutual CHAP to enable mutual CHAP authentication.
- Enter **Username** of mutual CHAP user. The maximum length of the username is 223 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#%^&*_-+=|(){{[]:;<>.?/].
- Enter Password (mutual CHAP secret). The length of the password is between 12 to 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#\$%^&*_-+=`|\(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/].
- Click the **OK** button to change the authentication method.



TIP:

A CHAP account must be added before you can use this authentication method. Please refer to the chapter 7.3.4, Configure iSCSI CHAP Accounts section to create an account.

After enabling the CHAP authentication mode, the host initiator should be set with the same CHAP account. Otherwise, the host cannot connect to the volume.

Change Target Name

Click $\mathbf{\nabla}$ -> Change Target Name to change iSCSI target name if necessary. The maximum length of the target name is 223 characters. Valid characters are [$a \sim z \mid 0 \sim 9 \mid -.:$].

Change Target Na	ime	
To change iSCSI	Target Name, enter the name below and click the OK button.	
Target Name:	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev0.ctr1	0
h		OK Cancel

Figure 62: Change Target Name

Change Network Portal

Click ▼ -> Change Network Portal, and then select the network ports that you would like to be available for this iSCSI target.



Select the network por	s that you would like to be available for this iSCSI target.	
Available On:		
		OK Cance

Figure 63: Change Network Portal

Change Alias

Click $\mathbf{\nabla}$ -> **Change Alias** to add or change the alias name. To remove an alias, clear out the current name. The maximum length of the alias name is 223 characters. Valid characters are [a-z | 0-9 | -.:].

Change Alias		
	nge the alias name, enter the name below and press OK. To remove an alias, clear out and press OK.	the
Alias Name:	alias-0	0
5		OK Cance

Figure 64: Change Alias

7.3.4. Configure iSCSI CHAP Accounts

Select the **CHAP Accounts** function tab in the **iSCSI Ports** function submenu to manage the CHAP accounts on the system.

Create a CHAP user

Here is an example of creating a CHAP user.

• Select the CHAP Account function tab of the iSCSI Ports function submenu, click the Create CHAP User button.



	or the command key (Mac) to s	then you can use the control key elect multiple targets.
Username:	chap1	0
Password:		0
Confirm Password:	*****	
Targets:	0 în 1 ÎN 2 3 4 5 5 6 7 8 9 •	
	8	

Figure 65: Create a CHAP User

- Enter **Username** of CHAP user. The maximum length of the username is 223 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#%^&*_-+=|(){}[:;<>.?/].
- Enter Password (CHAP secret) and Confirm Password. The length of the password is between 12 to 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#\$%^&*_+=`|\(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/].
- Select the targets using this CHAP user.
- Click the **OK** button to create a CHAP user.

List CHAP Users

Here is an example of list CHAP users. The CHAP account properties can be configured by clicking the functions button $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to the left side of the CHAP account.

	CHAP Username	Access to Targets
V	chap1	· 0
V	chap2	1, 2

Create CHAP User

Figure 66: List CHAP Users

Modify CHAP User

Click ▼ -> Modify CHAP User to modify the selected CHAP user information. To change the targets that this user has access to, please go to **iSCSI Targets** tab, click on the option menu, and select Change CHAP Users. For more information, please refer to the chapter 7.3.3, Configure for iSCSI Targets section.



	CHAP user's information below. please go to iSCSI Targets, clic s.		
Username:	chap1	0	
Password:	******	0	
Confirm Password:	•••••		

Figure 67: Modify a CHAP User

Here is an example of modifying the CHAP user.

- Enter **Username** of CHAP user. The maximum length of the username is 223 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#%^&*_-+=|(){}[]:;<>.?/].
- Enter Password (CHAP secret) and Confirm Password. The length of the password is between 12 to 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#\$%^&*_+=`|\(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/].
- Click the **OK** button to modify the CHAP user.

Delete CHAP User

Click ▼ -> **Delete CHAP User** to delete the selected CHAP user.

7.3.5. Active Sessions

Select the **Sessions** function tab in the **iSCSI Ports** function submenu to shows all currently active iSCSI sessions and their connection information.

20	200	ro	110	10 1	
00	232	10	112	111	

	No.	TSIH	Initiator Name	Target Name
V 2	0	0x0008	iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft.win-hevb9u50pv9	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev6.ctr1
V	1	0x0009	iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:win-hevb9u50pv9	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev7.ctr1
V	2	0x0006	iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:win-hevb9u50pv9	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev8.ctr1
▼.]	3	0x0007	iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:win-hevb9u50pv9	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev9.ctr1

Figure 68: Active Sessions



This table shows the column descriptions.

Column Name	Description
TSIH	TSIH (Target Session Identifying Handle) is used for this active session.
Initiator Name	It displays the host computer name.
Target Name	It displays the controller name.
InitiaIR2T	InitialR2T (Initial Ready to Transfer) is used to turn off either the use of a unidirectional R2T command or the output part of a bidirectional command. The default value is Yes.
Immed. Data	Immediate Data sets the support for immediate data between the initiator and the target. Both must be set to the same setting. The default value is Yes.
MaxDataOutR2T	MaxDataOutR2T (Maximum Data Outstanding Ready to Transfer) determines the maximum number of outstanding ready to transfer per task. The default value is 1.
MaxDataBurstLen	MaxDataBurstLen (Maximum Data Burst Length) determines the maximum SCSI data payload. The default value is 256kb.
DataSeginOrder	DataSeginOrder (Data Sequence in Order) determines if the PDU (Protocol Data Units) are transferred in continuously non-decreasing sequence offsets. The default value is Yes.
DataPDU InOrder	DataPDU InOrder (Data PDU in Order) determines if the data PDUs within sequences are to be in order and overlays forbidden. The default value is Yes.

Table 22: Active Sessions Column Descriptions

List Connection Details

Click ▼ -> Connection Details which will list all connection(s) of the selected session.

Disconnect Session

Click ▼ -> **Disconnect** will disconnect the selected session, click the **OK** button to confirm.



7.4. Configure Fibre Channel Connectivity

Select the **Fibre Channel Ports** function submenu to show information of installed fibre channel ports. The fibre channel port properties can be configured by clicking the functions button to the left side of the specific fibre channel port.

	Fibre Channel Por	k
0	HOST CONNECTIVITY	
-	Overview	
	iSCSI Ports	
	Fibre Channel Ports	



	Location	Name	Status	Change Topology	WWNWWPN	Loss of Signal.	Loss of Sync	Link Failure	Invalid CRC
۲	Slot1	FC1 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	Point-to-Point	WWNN: 2000001378124770 WWPN: 2100001378124770	0.	655	-0	0
•	Slott	FC2 (16G6)	Down	NA	WANN: 2000001378124770 WWPN: 2200001378124770	0	0	0	0
۲	Slot1	FC3 (16G6)	Down	NA	WWNN: 2000001378124770 WWPN: 2300001376124770	0	ō	đ.	0
•	Slot1	FC4 (16Gb)	Down	NA	WWNN 2000001378124770 WWPN 2400001378124770	0	0	0	0
ontro	Der 2		Provide and an and					1910	
196.00	lier : Location	Name	Status	Change Topology	WWWWWPN	Loss of Signal	Loss of Sync	Link Failure	Invalid CRC
ontro	lier 2	Name PC1 (16Gb)	Status 16Gb/s	Change Topology Point 40-Point		Loss of Signal	Loss of Sync 561	Link Failure	Invalid CRC 0
1000	Location		and the second second second		WWWWWEW WWWW 2000001378124770			A TARGET STATUT	
ombro •	Location Slot1	FC1 (16Gb)	16Gb/s	Point-to-Point	WWWWWEN WWWN 2000001378124770 WWPN 250001378124770 WWWN 200001378124770	Ð	561	0	0

Clear All Counters

Figure 70: List Fibre Channel Ports

The columns display information of Location, Name, Status, Topology, WWNN (World Wide Node Name), WWPN (World Wide Port Name), and some statistical information.



7.4.1. Configure Fibre Channel Link Speed

Click ▼ -> Change Link Speed to change the link speed of fibre channel.

Change Link Spee	d	
Please select the	ink speed. The default setting is automatic detect	on of data rates.
Link Speed:	Automatic V	
	Automatic	
	4 Gb/s 8 Gb/s	OK Can
	16 Gb/s	

Figure 71: Change Link Speed

Options of Change Link Speed

The option available in this tab:

• Link Speed: Set the link speed of fibre channel. The options are Automatic (default), 4 Gb/s, 8 Gb/s, and 16 Gb/s. Recommend setting it as Automatic to detect the data rate automatically.

7.4.2. Configure Fibre Channel Topology

Click ▼ -> **Change Topology** to change the topology of fibre channel.

Change Topology			
Change the topology below			
Change Topology :	Point-to-Point 🔻		
	Point-to-Point		
	Loop	OK	Cancel

Figure 72: Change Topology

Options of Change Topology

The option available in this tab:

• **Topology**: Set the topology fibre channel. The option is Point-to-Point for 16 Gb/s fibre channel, Point-to-Point and Loop modes for 4 Gb/s, 8 Gb/s fibre channel. Set it appropriately according to your fibre channel environment.





INFORMATION:

Point-to-Point (FC-P2P): Two devices are connected directly by FC interface. This is the simplest topology with limited connectivity and supports 4 Gb/s, 8 Gb/s, and 16 Gb/s fibre channel speed.

Loop (FC-AL, Arbitrated Loop): All devices are connection in loop or ring, like token ring networking. Add or remove any device will affect activities on the loop. The failure of any device will cause ring broken. Fibre Channel hub connects multiple devices together and may bypass the failed ports. A loop may also be made by cabling each port to the next in a ring. Loop mode supports 4 Gb/s and 8 Gb/s fibre channel speed only



CAUTION:

If the link speed and topology are set, the related fibre channel switch and HBA on host must be set, too. Otherwise, the connection cannot work properly.

7.4.3. Configure Fibre Channel Targets

Click ▼ -> **Target Configuration** to set multi-target configurations which are accessible by the host.

Target Configuration	
Target List :	III All
	🖉 Target 1 🖉 Target 2 🖉 Target 3 🖉 Target 4
	🗹 Target 5 🗹 Target 6 🗹 Target 7 🗹 Target 8
	Target 9 C Target 10 Target 11 Target 12
	🗷 Target 13 🗹 Target 14 🗹 Target 15 🗹 Target 16
	🗹 Target 17 🗹 Target 18 🗹 Target 19 🗹 Target 20
	Target 21 Starget 22 Starget 23 Starget 24
	🗹 Target 25 🗹 Target 26 🗹 Target 27 🗹 Target 28
	🗹 Target 29 🗹 Target 30 🗹 Target 31 🗹 Target 32
	🗹 Target 33 🗹 Target 34 🗹 Target 35 🗹 Target 36
	Target 37 Z Target 38 Z Target 39 Z Target 40
	Target 41 Target 42 Target 43 Target 44
	Target 45 Target 46 Target 47 Target 48
	Target 49 Z Target 50 Z Target 51 Z Target 52
	Target 53 Z Target 54 Z Target 55 Z Target 56
	🗹 Target 57 🗹 Target 58 🗹 Target 59 🗹 Target 60
	🗷 Target 61 🗹 Target 62 🗹 Target 63 🗹 Target 64

Figure 73: Target Configuration





CAUTION:

Point-to-Point connection mode does not support multi-target.

7.4.4. Clear Fibre Channel Counters

Click **Clear All Counters** button to clear all counters of fibre channels.

Click ▼ -> Clear Counters to clear the counters of the selected fibre channel.



8. Storage Management

This chapter describes storage technologies of RAID, storage pool, volume, and LUN mapping. Also includes the details of storage management operations and examples. The **STORAGE MANAGEMENT** function menu provides submenus of **Disks**, **Pools**, **Volume**, and **LUN Mappings**. In this chapter, we will focus on the fundamental storage architecture called thick provisioning. The advanced storage features and functions will be described in the following.

- Thin Provisioning feature is described in the **Thin Provisioning** chapter.
- Auto Tiering feature is described in the **Auto Tiering** chapter.
- SSD Cache feature is described in the **SSD Cache** chapter.
- SED (Self-Encrypting Drive) and ISE (Instant Secure Erase) drive support is described in the **SED and ISE Support** chapter.

The data backup functions are described in the following sections.

- Snapshot function is described in the **Managing Snapshots** section.
- Local Clone function is described in the **Manage Local Clones** section.
- Remote Replication function is described in the **Managing Remote Replications** section.

8.1. RAID Technology

RAID is the abbreviation of Redundant Array of Independent Disks. The basic idea of RAID is to combine multiple drives together to form one large logical drive. This RAID drive obtains performance, capacity and reliability than a single drive. In point view of the host, the operating system in host detects the RAID drive as a single storage device.

8.1.1. Traditional RAID Overview

The disk drives in storage are referred to as members of the array. Each array has a RAID level. RAID levels provide different degrees of redundancy and performance. They also have different restrictions regarding the quantity of member disk drives in the array. The following describe the features of RAID levels.



RAID 0 (Striping, no redundancy)

RAID 0 consists of striping, without mirroring or parity. It has more than two disks in parallel, as a large-capacity disk. The capacity of a RAID 0 volume is the sum of the capacities of the disks. There is no added redundancy for handling disk failures. Thus, failure of one disk causes the loss of the entire RAID 0 volume. Striping distributes the contents roughly equally among all member disks, which makes concurrent read or write operations on the multiple disks and results in performance improvements. The concurrent operations make the throughput of most read and write operations equal to the throughput of one disk multiplied by the quantity of disk drives. Increased throughput is the big benefit of RAID 0, at the cost of increased vulnerability of data due to drive failures.

RAID 1 (Mirroring between two disks)

RAID 1 consists of data mirroring, without parity or striping. Data is written identically to two drives, thereby producing a mirrored set of drives. Thus, any read request can be serviced by any member drive. Write throughput is always slower because every drive must be updated, and the slowest drive limits the write performance. The array continues to operate as long as at least one drive is functioning.

N-way Mirror (Mirroring between N disks)

It's an extension of RAID 1. Data is written identically to N drives, thereby producing an N-way mirrored set of drives

RAID 3 (Striping, can survive one disk drive fault, with parity on a dedicated disk drive)

RAID 3 consists of byte-level striping with dedicated parity. All disk spindle rotation is synchronized, and data is striped such that each sequential byte is on a different drive. Parity is calculated across corresponding bytes and stored on a dedicated parity drive. The data disperses on a different hard drive, even if you want to read short information, it may need all the hard drives to work. So, this is more suitable for large amounts of read data requests.

RAID 5 (Striping, can survive one disk drive fault, with interspersed parity over the member disk drives)

RAID 5 consists of block-level striping with distributed parity. It requires at least three disk drives. Upon failure of a single drive, subsequent reads can be calculated from the distributed parity such that no data is lost. RAID 5 is seriously affected by the general trends regarding array rebuild time and the chance of disk drive failure during rebuild. Rebuilding an array requires reading all data from all disks, opening a chance for a second disk drive failure and the loss of the entire array.



RAID 6 (Striping, can survive two disk drive faults, with interspersed parity over the member disk drives)

RAID 6 consists of block-level striping with double distributed parity. It requires a minimum of four disks. Double parity provides fault tolerance up to two failed disk drives. This makes larger RAID groups more practical, especially for high-availability systems, as large-capacity drives take longer to restore. As with RAID 5, a single drive failure results in reduced performance of the entire array until the failed drive has been replaced. With a RAID 6 array, using drives from multiple sources and manufacturers, it is possible to mitigate most of the problems associated with RAID 5. The larger the drive capacities and the larger the array size, the more important it becomes to choose RAID 6 instead of RAID 5.

RAID 0+1 (RAID 1 on top of RAID 0)

RAID 0+1 creates a second striped set to mirror a primary striped set. The array continues to operate with one or more drives failed in the same mirror set, but if drives fail on both sides of the mirror, the data on the RAID system is lost.

RAID 10 (RAID 0 on top of RAID 1)

RAID 10 creates a striped set from a series of mirrored disk drives. The array can sustain multiple drive losses so long as no mirror loses all its drives.

RAID 30 (RAID 3 on top of RAID 0)

RAID 30 is the combination of RAID 3 and RAID 0, do RAID 3 first, further RAID 0. It is composed of multiple sets of RAID 3 stripe access to each other. Because RAID 30 is based on RAID 3 which requires at least three disk drives, therefore RAID 30 is constituted a plurality RAID 3, at least six disk drives. RAID 30 can still operate when appearing a damaged disk drive in disk group of RAID 3. But if any one group of RAID 3 appears two or two or more disk drives damaged, the entire RAID 30 will fail.

RAID 50 (RAID 5 on top of RAID 0)

RAID 50 is the combination of RAID 5 and RAID 0, do RAID 5 first, further RAID 0. The concept is the same as RAID 30. RAID 50 requires at least six disk drives. Since RAID 50 constitutes stripe of multiple disk group of RAID 5, it has higher performance than RAID 5, but capacity utilization is lower than RAID 5.



RAID 60 (RAID 6 on top of RAID 0)

RAID 60 is the combination of RAID 6 and RAID 0, do RAID 6 first, further RAID 0. In other words, it accesses stripes for more than two groups of RAID 6. RAID 6 needs to have at least four disk drives, so the minimum requirement of RAID 60 is eight disk drives.

RAID 60 can tolerate maximum two damage disk drives in any disk group of RAID 6, while it still maintains the operating, but as long as it damages three drives in any group of RAID 6, the entire RAID 60 will fail. Of course, the probability of this case is quite low.

Compared to a simple RAID 6, RAID 60 binds stripes through multiple of RAID 6. Therefore, it has higher performance. However, high threshold usage and the capacity utilization rate are major problems.

RAID Level Summary

The following is the summary of the RAID levels.

Table 23: RAID Level Summary – 1

RAID Level	RAID 0	RAID 1	RAID 3 RAID 5	RAID 6	N-way Mirror
Min. Drives	1	2	3	4	3
Data Protection	No protection	One drive failure	One drive failure	Two drives failure	N-1 drive failure
Read Performance	Very Good	Very Good	Very Good	Very Good	Very Good
Write Performance	Excellent	Good	Good	Fair to Good	Fair
Capacity: N = drive quantity M = drive capacity G = subgroups	N x M (e.g. 8 drives x 1TB = 8TB)	N/2 x M (e.g. 8 drives / 2x 1TB = 4TB)	(N-1) x M (e.g. (8 drives - 1) x 1TB = 7TB)	(N-2) x M (e.g. (8 drives - 2) x 1TB = 6TB)	(N/N) x M (e.g. (8 drives/8) x 1TB = 1TB)
Capacity Utilization (Min.~26 drives)	100% (e.g. 8/8=100%)	50% (e.g. 4/8=50%)	67% ~ 96% (e.g. 7/8=88%)	50% ~ 92% (e.g. 6/8=75%)	4% ~ 33% (e.g. 1/8=13%)
Typical Applications	High end workstation, Data logging, Real-time rendering, Very transitory data	Operating system, Transaction database	Data warehouse, Web service, Archive	Data archive, High Availability solution, Server with large capacity requirement	Operating system, Transaction database



RAID Level	RAID 0+1	RAID 10	RAID 30	RAID 50	RAID 60
Min. Drives	4	4	6	6	8
Data Protection	One drive failure in each sub- group	One drive failure in each sub- group	One drive failure in each sub- group	One drive failure in each sub- group	Two drives failure in each sub- group
Read Performance	Excellent	Excellent	Very Good	Very Good	Very Good
Write Performance	Very Good	Very Good	Good	Good	Fair to Good
Capacity: N = drive quantity M = drive capacity G = subgroups	N/2 x M (e.g. 8 drives / 2x 1TB = 4TB)	N/2 x M (e.g. 8 drives / 2x 1TB = 4TB)	(N-G) x M (e.g. (8 drives – 2 subgroups) x 1TB = 6TB)	(N-G) x M (e.g. (8 drives – 2 subgroups) x 1TB = 6TB)	(N-2xG) x M (e.g. (8 drives – 2x2 subgroups) x 1TB = 4TB)
Capacity Utilization (Min.~26 drives)	50% (e.g. 4/8=50%)	50% (e.g. 4/8=50%)	67% ~ 92% (e.g. 6/8=75%)	67% ~ 92% (e.g. 6/8=75%)	50% ~ 85% (e.g. 4/8=50%)
Typical Applications	Fast Database, Application Server	Fast Database, Application Server	Large database, File server, Application server	Large database, File server, Application server	Data archive, HA solution, Server with large capacity requirement

Table 24: RAID Level Summary – 2

ESOS supports hot spare drives. When a member disk drive in array fails, the system automatically replaces the failed member with a hot spare drive and rebuilds the array to restore its redundancy. Candidate and spare drives can be manually exchanged with array members. For more information, please refer to the chapter 15.2, Rebuild section in the Troubleshooting chapter.

8.1.2. RAID EE Overview

RAID (Redundant Array of Independent Disks) is to combine multiple independent physical disks based on a certain algorithm to form a virtual logical disk that provides a larger capacity, higher performance, or better data error tolerance. RAID has been the basic technology of storage system as a mature and reliable data protection standard. However, with the rapid growth in demand of disk drive for data storage and the advent of high-performance applications in recent years, traditional RAID has gradually revealed its defects.

As hard disk capacity increases, the amount of time required to rebuild RAID data has also dramatically increased. This makes one of the most troubles for enterprise storage management today. In the past days when the hard disk capacity was only 10GB to 100GB, RAID built was a job that could be completed in 10 minutes or even more than 10 minutes, which was not yet a problem without special concern. However, as disk capacity grows to hundreds of GB and even TB, RAID rebuild times have increased to hours or even days, it becomes a major problem in storage management.



For example, a traditional RAID 5 with 8 and 1 parity on 6TB NL-SAS disk drives takes 2.5 days to rebuild data. The rebuild process consumes system resources, reducing the overall performance of the application system. If users restrict the rebuild priority, the rebuild time will be even longer. The important of all, during time-consuming rebuilding, many access operations could cause the failure of other disk drives in the pool, greatly increasing the probability of disk failure and the risk of data loss.

Limitations of Traditional RAID Architecture

The traditional RAID architecture is composed of a certain number of disk drives which are selected to form a disk group (also known as RAID group). You may also assign some disk drives as idle hot spare disk drives. A storage pool is grouped to provide capacity for volumes, and then finally map the LUN to the host to become the storage space on the host.

There are several limitations in such RAID architecture:

- First, when a disk drive of the disk group is damaged and the rebuild is required, only the member disks of the disk group participates in the rebuild job, and the data writing loading at the time is concentrated on the spare disk to form a bottleneck.
- Second, volume data access is limited to the member disks belonging to a disk group; this restricts the performance available to the host because the storage is executing both accessing and rebuilding I/O.

Why RAID Rebuild Time-Consuming

As drive capacity grows, RAID rebuild time grows linearly, raising the rebuild time required by traditional RAID architectures to tens of hours when using RAID disks with more than 4TB HDD capacity.

There are several factors that affect the RAID rebuild time:

- **HDD Capacity**: The HDD capacity makes up the disk group, the larger the HDD capacity, the longer the rebuild time is required.
- **Quantity of Disk Drives**: The quantity of disk drives included in a disk group affects the amount of time it takes for the system to read data from the remaining healthy disk drives and write them to the hot spare disk drives. The more disk disks, the longer the rebuild time.
- **Rebuild Job Priority**: During RAID rebuild, the system still has to assume I/O access to the front-end host. The higher the priority assigned to the RAID rebuild job, the faster the rebuild, but the less the front-end host gains I/O performance.
- **Fast Rebuild**: Enabling fast rebuild function only need to rebuild the actual capacity of the volume, unused disk group space has not to rebuild. If only part of the space in a disk group is used by the volume, the rebuild time will be shortened.
- **RAID level**: RAID 1 and RAID 10 with direct block-to-block replication will rebuild faster than RAID 5 and RAID 6 with parity calculations.



Given the potential for failure on each disk drive, the more disk drives contain in a disk group, the more possibility of cumulative failure increase, so there is an upper limit on the quantity of disk drives in a disk group. Compared with the previous factors, the increasing impact of the disk drive capacity on the rebuild speed has become the primary factor. Such a long rebuild time is apparently not acceptable to any user. To solve the problems of traditional RAID, we implement RAID EE technology.

8.1.3. Theory of RAID EE Operation

RAID EE adds more spare disks in a disk group, we call them **RAID EE** spares to separate the original global, local, and dedicated spares. Spare areas are preserved in each stripe of the disk group and are distributed in the disk group by means of disk rotation. When disks failed in the disk group, missing data is rebuilt into the preserved spare areas. Since all disks in the set are destination of rebuilt data, the bottleneck of traditional RAID rebuild is gone, rebuild performance dramatically improved. If new disks are added in, data in spare areas are copied back to new joined disks.

Four new RAID levels are provided for RAID EE, there are:

- RAID 5EE (E stands for Enhanced), requires a minimum of 4 disk drives with one RAID EE spare disk which can tolerate 2 disk drives failure. Adding more RAID EE spares will tolerate more disk drives failure.
- RAID 6EE requires a minimum of 5 disk drives.
- RAID 50EE requires a minimum of 7 drives.
- RAID 60EE requires a minimum of 9 drives.



INFORMATION:

The RAID EE spare quantity in a disk group is 1 to 8 disk drives.

Example of RAID 5EE with 1 RAID EE spare

Now we take an example to describe how it works. The following example is a RAID 5EE with 5 disks. 4 disks are for RAID disks, and additional one disk is for RAID EE spare. After initialization, data block distribution is as follows. P is stands for parity, S is stands for RAID EE spare, and it is empty now.



D1	D2	D3	D4	D5
1	2	3	Р	S
S	4	5	6	Р
Ρ	S	7	8	9
10	Р	S	11	12
13	14	Р	S	15

Figure 74: Data Block Distributed of RAID 5EE

Assume that disk 2 is failed. RAID 5EE is under degraded mode.

D1	D2	D3	D4	D5
1	2	3	Р	S
s	4	5	6	Р
Ρ	S	7	8	9
10	Р	S	11	12
13	14	Р	S	15

Figure 75: Disk 2 is Failed

The spare areas are rebuilt with data from the failed disk drive. This action is called **EE Rebuild**. After rebuilding, data distributed is like RAID 5 and it can tolerate another failed disk drive. As we can imagine, the more RAID EE spare disks, the faster it rebuilds.

D1	D3	D4	D5
1	3	Р	2
4	5	6	Р
Р	7	8	9
10	Р	11	12
13	Р	14	15

Figure 76: Empty Blocks are Rebuilt from the Failed Disk Drive



D1	D2	D3	D4	D5
1	2	3	Р	S
S	4	5	6	Р
Р	s	7	8	9
10	P	S	11	12
13	14	Р	S	15

Figure 77: Data is copied back

When a new disk drive is joined into the RAID EE disk group, the data rebuilt in the spare area will be copied back to the new disk. This action is called **Copyback**.

After copied back, it is back to RAID 5EE normal state.

Example of RAID 60EE with 2 RAID EE spares

Take another example of a RAID 60EE with 10 disks. 8 disks are for RAID disks, and 2 disks are for RAID EE spares. After initialization, data block distribution is as follows.

<			— Qua	ntity of Di	isk Group	= 10 -	1	1	
←	– Subgi	roup 1 -		<	– Subgr	oup 2 ·		🗲 Spar	e = 2 🔶
D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7	D8	D9	D10
1	2	Р	Q	3	4	Р	Q	S	S
S	5	6	Ρ	Q	7	8	Р	Q	S
S	S	9	10	Р	Q	11	12	Р	Q
Q	S	S	13	14	Р	Q	15	16	Р
Р	Q	S	S	17	18	Ρ	Q	19	20
24	Р	Q	S	S	21	22	Р	Q	23
27	28	Р	Q	S	S	25	26	Ρ	Q
Q	31	32	Р	Q	S	S	29	30	Р
Р	Q	35	36	Р	Q	S	S	33	34
38	Р	Q	39	40	Р	Q	s	S	37

Figure 78: Data Block Distributed of RAID 60EE

Rebuild and copy back of RAID 60EE is similar as the above; it will not be repeated here.



RAID EE Level Summary

The following is the summary of the RAID EE levels.

RAID Level	RAID 5EE	RAID 6EE	RAID 50EE	RAID 60EE
Min. Drives	4	5	7	9
Data Protection	One drive failure	Two drives failure	One drive failure	Two drives failure
Read Performance	Very Good	Very Good	Very Good	Very Good
Write Performance	Good	Fair to Good	Good	Fair to Good
Capacity: N = drive quantity M = drive capacity G = subgroups S = RAID EE spares	(N-1-S) x M (e.g. (10 drives – 1 – 2 spares) x 1TB = 7TB)	(N-2-S) x M (e.g. (10 drives – 2 – 2 spares) x 1TB = 6TB)	(N-G-S) x M (e.g. (10 drives – 2 subgroups – 2 spares) x 1TB = 6TB)	(N-2xG-2) x M (e.g. (10 drives – 2x2 subgroups – 2 spares) x 1TB = 4TB)
Capacity Utilization (Min.~26 drives)	18% ~ 92% (e.g. 7/10=70%)	17% ~ 88% (e.g. 6/10=60%)	29% ~ 88% (e.g. 6/8=60%)	25% ~ 80% (e.g. 4/10=40%)
Typical Applications	Same as RAID 5	Same as RAID 6	Same as RAID 50	Same as RAID 60

8.2. ESOS Storage Architecture

This section describes the ESOS storage architecture including pool, volume, LUN mapping, and hot spares.

8.2.1. Pool Technology

A storage pool is a collection of disk drives. It has three pool types which are listed in the following.

- Thick or fat provisioning pool, we use the term of thick provisioning pool in the following.
- Thin provisioning pool
- Auto tiering pool

We describe thick provisioning pool here and introduce thin provisioning in the Thin Provisioning chapter and auto tiering in the Auto Tiering chapter.



A thick provisioning pool is a collection of disk groups which contain disk drives and made up a RAID. A storage pool is grouped to provide capacity for volumes. Volumes are then allocated out of the storage pool and are mapped to LUN which can be accessed by a host system. The following is the storage architecture of a thick provisioning pool.

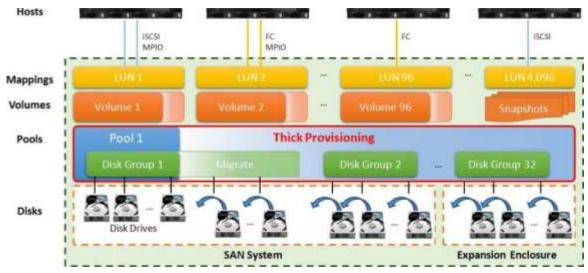


Figure 79: Storage Architecture of Thick Provisioning Pool

In thick provisioning pool, there are two methods to increase the capacity of the pool. They are migration or adding disk groups. For migration, disk drives can be added to a disk group at any time, no matter the disk drives are from the head SAN system or from expansion units. Or disk drives can be added to upgrade the RAID level in a thick provisioning pool. For example, you can migrate RAID 5 to RAID 6 by adding disk drives because RAID 6 needs one more disk drive for parity.

The other method is adding other disk groups which contain disk drives to increase the capacity of the pool. A thick provisioning pool can have up to 32 disk groups with each disk group containing up to 64 disk drives. And the maximum disk drive quantity in a pool is 256. For more information about pool operation, please refer to the chapter 8.4, Configuring Thick Provisioning Pools section.



Table 26: Thick Provisioning Pool Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum disk group quantity in a pool	32
Maximum disk drive quantity in a disk group (include dedicated spares)	64
Maximum RAID EE spare quantity in a disk group	8
Maximum disk drive quantity in a pool (include dedicated spares)	256
Maximum pool quantity per system	64
Maximum dedicated spare quantity in a pool	8
Maximum addressable capacity of a disk group	640TB (calculated by 10TB HDD)
Maximum addressable capacity of a thick provisioning pool	2,560TB (calculated by 10TB HDD)
Maximum addressable capacity of total thick provisioning pools	Unlimited

8.2.2. Migrate vs. Add Disk Group

In thick provisioning pool, there are two methods to increase the capacity of the pool. Migration takes a long time and risk during migration. But after migration, it is more efficient than adding disk groups. By this way, it can also migrate RAID level to get a better protection.

With adding disk group, it can increase the capacity immediately but cannot change the quantity or RAID level after adding this disk group. User can evaluate the advantages and disadvantages to choose the best way.

8.2.3. Volume Technology

A volume is a logical disk that is presented to a host system. The capacity is provided by pool. Each pool can be divided into several volumes. The volumes in one pool share the same RAID level but may have different volume capacity.



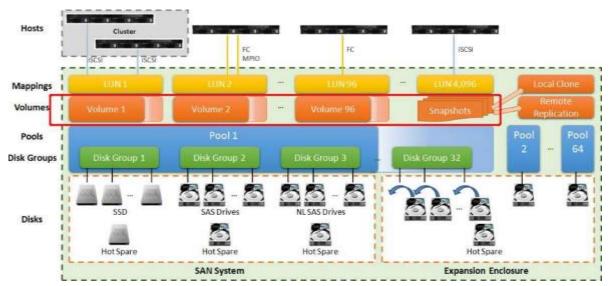


Figure 80: Volume in Storage Architecture

Volume is a basic unit of data backup. Base on the volume, ESOS provides snapshot, local clone, and remote replication functions. For more information about data backup, please refer to the chapter 12, Data Backup chapter.

A pool contains up to 96 volumes and a system can contain up to 4,096 volumes including snapshot volumes. For more information about volume operation, please refer to the chapter 8.5, Configuring Volumes section.

Item	Value
Maximum volume quantity in a pool	96
Maximum volume quantity per system (include snapshot volumes)	4,096
Maximum host number per volume	16
Maximum addressable volume capacity of a thick provisioning pool	2,560TB (calculated by 10TB HDD)
Maximum addressable volume capacity of a thin provisioning pool	256TB
Maximum addressable volume capacity of an auto tiering pool	256TB

Table 27: Volumes Parameters



8.2.4. LUN Technology

LUN (Logical Unit Number) is a number used to identify a logical unit, which is a device addressed by the SCSI protocol or Storage Area Network protocols which encapsulate SCSI, such as Fibre Channel or iSCSI.

The LUN is not the only way to identify a logical unit. There is also the SCSI device ID, which identifies a logical unit uniquely in the world. Labels or serial numbers stored in a logical unit's storage volume often serve to identify the logical unit. However, the LUN is the only way for an initiator to address a command to a logical unit, so initiators often create, via a discovery process, a mapping table of LUN to other identifiers.

There is one LUN which is required to exist in every target: LUN 0. The logical unit with LUN 0 is special in that it must implement a few specific commands, most notably report LUNs, which is how an initiator can find out all the other LUNs in the target. LUN 0 does not provide any other services, such as a storage volume. Many SCSI targets contain only one logical unit (so its LUN is necessarily 0). Others have a small number of logical units that correspond to separate physical devices and have fixed LUNs. A large storage system may have up to thousands of logical units, defined logically, by administrative command, and the administrator may choose the LUN or the system may choose it.

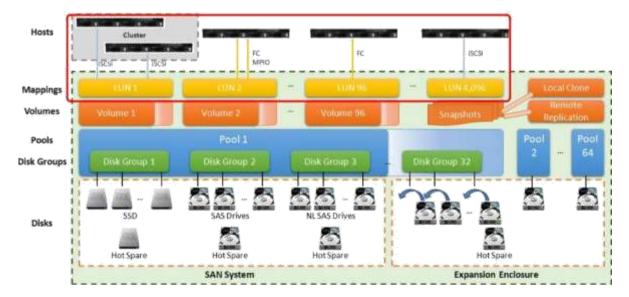


Figure 81: LUM Mappings in Storage Architecture



Volumes are then allocated out of the storage pool and are mapped to LUN which can be accessed by a host system. In Figure 8-3, a LUN can be accessed by cluster with two or more hosts via iSCSI. Or can be accessed by MPIO to provide HA (High Availability) architecture and increase the access bandwidth. The snapshot volumes can also be mapped to a LUN. The same, the read-only snapshot LUN can be read by the host, and the writable snapshot LUN can be read/write.

An ESOS system can contain up to 4,096 LUNs which includes the total of volume LUN mappings and snapshot volume LUN mappings.

Table 28: LUN Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum LUN quantity per system	4,096

For more information about LUN mapping operation, please refer to the chapter 8.6, Configure LUN Mappings section.

8.2.5. Hot Spares

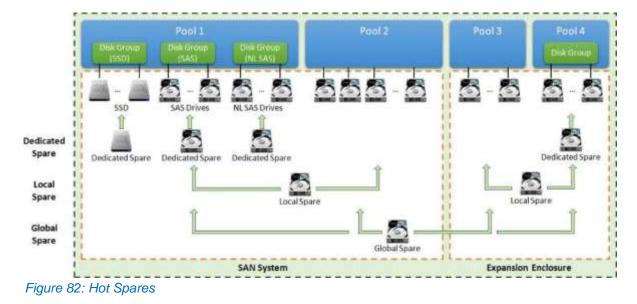
A hot spare disk is a disk used to automatically or manually replace a failing or failed disk in a RAID configuration. The hot spare disk reduces the MTTR (Mean Time To Recovery) for the RAID redundancy group, thus reducing the probability of a second disk failure and the resultant data loss that would occur in any singly redundant RAID (e.g., RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 10). Typically, a hot spare is available to replace some different disks and systems employing a hot spare normally require a redundant group to allow time for the data to be generated onto the spare disk. During this time the system is exposed to data loss due to a subsequent failure, and therefore the automatic switching to a spare disk reduces the time of exposure to that risk compared to manual discovery and implementation.

If one disk drive of the pool fails or has been removed from any singly redundant RAID, the pool status will change to degraded mode. At the moment, the ESOS system will search the spare disk to execute pool/volume/data rebuild into a healthy RAID drive.

There are three types of spare disk drive which can be set in function menu **Disks**:

- **Dedicated Spare**: Set a spare disk drive to a dedicated pool.
- **Local Spare**: Set a spare disk drive to the pools which located in the same enclosure. The enclosure is either in head unit or in one of expansion units.
- **Global Spare**: Set a spare disk drive to all pools which located whether in head unit and expansion unit.

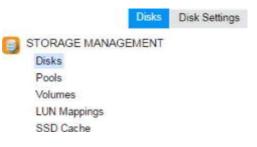




When a member disk of the pool fails, the system will first search for a dedicated spare disk for the pool, if not present, search for a local spare instead, then eventually global spare disk. For more information about spare disk operation, please refer to the chapter 8.3.2, Operations on Disks section.

8.3. Working with Disk Drives

Select the **Disks** function submenu to display the status of the disk drives, set hot spares, check disk health, and update disk firmware. The eterio SAN storage system can contain up to 10 expansion enclosures and/or 286 disk drives.









INFORMATION:

For deployment of the SAN system and expansion enclosures, please refer to the chapter 4, Deployment Types and Cabling in the eterio SAN Hardware User's Manual

Table 29: Enclosure and Disk Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum expansion unit quantity in a system	10
Maximum disk quantity in a system	286

8.3.1. List Disks

The drop-down lists at the top enable you to select the enclosure from head unit (SAN system) or expansion units (expansion enclosures). The disk properties can be configured by clicking the functions button $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to the left side of the specific disk drive.



TIP:

Enclosure format: Enclosure ID ([Head Unit | Expansion Unit]: Model Name). For example: 0 (Head Unit: 4224L), 1 (Expansion Unit: JBOD 4224).

	Slot	Status	histh	Energyleso	SED / DE Status	Capacity	Dak 1ype	Unage:	Pool Name	Manufacturiar.	Minke
	9.	-Ocites-	-;Good	Nora	204	372.39.68	\$45.550 12.00b/k	2166	1	SEAGATE	\$T430FM0563
•	2	Chine	Glood	Note	818	372.32.68	548 550 12 0064	free		BEAGATE	ST490FM0063
•	3	Otine	Good	Note	N/A	372.36 GB	\$45 55D 12 0/26%	File.		BEAGATE	57400FM0053
•	4	Othe	floot	None	N/A	312.36.08	548 580 17 00e's	Free		BEAGATE	ST400FM0050
٠	6	Chiles	-Good	Norie	NA	744.96 08	SAS 650 12 006/s	Print		MORON	363000-600
•	6	Online	Good	None	8/4	744,96-08	545 65D 12 009 s	Free		MORON	983000-805
•	1	dekke	10066	Nonie	NA	744.96-08	849 880 12,096%	1798		MCRON	\$6300C-808
•	1	Circleso	Good	Nore	NA	741.96 (38)	848 99D 12 9069	Free.		MORON	9630610-606
•	8	0006	Good	Note	N04	1.09 TB	SAS HOD 12 DOM	Free		SEAGATE	ST1250MM005
•	12	Celou	Good	Nore	44A	1.09.70	545 HOD 12 05HN	Tion.		SEAGATE	97120044003
	18	Cellon	Good	Norie	844	1.09 78	\$45 H00 12 CGbN	Free		REAGATE	3112205690003
•	12	Orline	Good	Nore	N/A	1.09 TE	SAS HOD 12.00b/k	Even		SEAGATE	\$7120068/009
•	23.	(Circline)	Good	Norw	NIS	5.46.18	NL-5451100 12.0Gb/v	£100-		SEAGATE	570000484001
•	- 14	Shine.	Good	None	84	5.4518	NL-548 HOD 12 0G8/k	Free		BEAGATE	B18350N34001
•	15	Orine	Spec	Nore	N/A	5.65 118	NL-848 H0D 12,00bis	Free.		SEADATE	ST6300N94001
	16.15	Cerlene /	Good	Nore	NA	6.46 TB	NL-545 HOD 12 5084	Pres.		BEAGATE	S16000N8001

Desired the line of the transformed based of the line of the line

Figure 84: List Disks



This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 30: Disk Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Slot	The position of the disk drive.
	The status of the disk drive:
	On-line: The disk drive is online.
	Rebuilding: The disk drive is being rebuilt.
Status	• Transitioning: The disk drive is being migrated or is replaced by
	another disk when rebuilding occurs.
	Scrubbing: The disk drive is being scrubbed.
	• Check Done: The disk drive has been checked the disk health.
	Copying Back: The disk drive is being copied back. The back drive is being copied back.
	The health of the disk drive:
	Good: The disk drive is good.
Health	Failed: The disk drive is failed.
	Error Alert: S.M.A.R.T. error alerts.
	Read Error: The disk drive has unrecoverable read errors. The data security mode of the disk drive:
	 SED: The disk drive is a Self-Encrypting Drive.
Encryption	 ISE: The disk drive is an Instant Secure Erase drive.
	 None: The disk drive does not have encryption function.
	The status of the SED:
	Enabled: The SED is enabled.
	Locked: The SED is locked. It must be unlocked by the correct AK
	before it can be used.
	• Disabled: The SED is disabled. It must be initiated before it can
	be used.
	• Password Locked: The SED is locked by entering the incorrect
	password too many times
	Unknown: The SED is unknown.
	 Initiating: The SED is being initiated.
SED / ISE Status	Unlocking: The SED is being unlocked.
	Erasing: The SED is being erased.
	Changing Key: The SED is being changed the key.
	The status of the ISE:
	Normal: The ISE is normal.
	Erasing: The ISE is being erased.
	 Unknown: The ISE is unknown.
	The status of the Non SED/ISE:
	N/A: The field is not applicable.
Capacity	The capacity of the disk drive.
	The type of the disk drive:
Disk Type	• [SAS HDD NL-SAS HDD SAS SSD SATA SSD]
	• [12.0Gb/s 6.0Gb/s 3.0Gb/s 1.5Gb/s]



Column-Name	Description
Usage	 The usage of the disk drive: Free: This disk drive is free for use. RAID: This disk drive has been set to a pool. SSD Cache: This SSD has been set to an SSD cache pool. Dedicated Spare: This disk drive has been set as dedicated spare of a pool. Local Spare: This disk drive has been set as local spare of the enclosure. Global Spare: This disk drive has been set as global spare of whole system. SSD Spare: This SSD has been set as dedicated SSD spare of an SSD cache pool.
Pool Name	Which pool the disk drive belongs to.
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the disk drive.
Model	The model name of the disk drive.

8.3.2. Operations on Disks

Disk Health Check

Click the **Disk Health Check** button to check the health of the selected disks. Also select the quantity of bad block to stop disk health check. And then click **OK** button to proceed. It cannot check disks which are currently in use.

isk Health Check		
isk Slot:	Select Disks	
top disk health check when the quantity of ad block is greater than:		
	ок с	ancel

Figure 85: Disk Health Check

Disk Check Report

Click the **Disk Check Report** button to download the disk check report. It's available after executing **Disk Health Check**.

Set Free Disk

Click ▼ -> **Set Free Disk** to make the selected disk drive be free for use.



Set Spare Disk

Click ▼ -> **Set Global Spare** to set the selected disk drive to global spare of all pools which located whether in head unit and expansion unit.

Click ∇ -> Set Local Spare to set the selected disk drive to local spare of the pools which located in the same enclosure. The enclosure is either in head unit or in one of expansion units.

Click ▼ -> Set Dedicated Spare to set the disk drive to dedicated spare of the selected pool.

For more information about hot spares, please refer to the chapter 8.2.4, Hot Spares section and the chapter 15.2, Rebuild section in the Troubleshooting chapter. Here is an example how to set a spare disk to a dedicated pool.

Select a free disk, and then click ▼ -> Set Dedicated Spare.

	No.	Pool Name	Total	Free	Disks Used	Volumes	Status	Health	
	1	Pool-1	2.18 TB	2.18 TB	3	0	Online	Good	
9	2	Pool-2	10.92 TB	10.92 TB	3	0	Online	Good	

Figure 86: Set Dedicated Spare

2. Select the pool which the disk drive is set to its dedicated spare, and then click **OK** button.

Disk Scrub and Clear Disk Read Error

Click ▼ -> **Disk Scrub** to scrub the disk drive. It's not available when the disk drive is in used.

Click ▼ -> Clear Disk Read Error to clean the read error of the disk drive and reset the failed status.

Update Disk Firmware

Click ▼ -> **Update Disk Firmware** to upgrade the firmware of the disk drive.



t the firr t Disks:	nware file:		Choose File No	file chosen			
Slot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Usage	Manufacturer	Model	Firmware Version
1	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	0006
2	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	0006
3	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	0006
4	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	0006

Figure 87: Update Disk Firmware

Turn on Disk LED

Click ▼ -> **Turn on Disk LED** to turn on the indication LED of the disk drive.

Turn off Disk LED

Click ▼ -> **Turn off Disk LED** to turn off the indication LED of the disk drive.

S.M.A.R.T.

Click $\mathbf{\nabla} \rightarrow \mathbf{S.M.A.R.T.}$ to show the S.M.A.R.T. information of the disk drive. For more information about S.M.A.R.T., please refer to the chapter 8.3.3, S.M.A.R.T. section

More Information of the Disk

Click ▼ -> More Information to show the detail information of the disk drive.



fore Information		
Location and Status		
ltem	Information	
Enclosure ID	0	
Slot	1	
Status	Online	
Health	Good	
Disk Information	N-	1994 S.
Item	Information	
Manufacturer	SEAGATE	
Model	ST400FM0053	
Serial Number(s)	Z3F010RT0000Z3F010RT	
Capacity	372.36 GB	
Disk Type	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	
Disk Firmware Version	0006	
Disk Properties		
Item	Information	
Disk Write Cache	Enabled	
Disk Read-ahead	Enabled	1
Disk Command Queuing	Enabled	
Disk Standby	Disabled	
Storage Properties	nanan - 1, ana 🦇	annannannannan an Ar 19
Item	Information	
Usage	Free	

Figure 88: More Information of Disk Drive

8.3.3. S.M.A.R.T.

S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology) is a diagnostic tool for disk drives to deliver warning of drive failures in advance. It provides users a chance to take actions before a possible drive failure.

S.M.A.R.T. measures many attributes of disk drives all the time and inspects the properties of disk drives which are close to being out of tolerance. The advanced notice of possible disk drive failure will allow users to back up the data of disk drive or replace the disk drive.



This is much better than a disk drive crash when it is writing data or rebuilding a failed disk drive.

Select a disk drive and click \vee -> **S.M.A.R.T.** to show the S.M.A.R.T. information of the disk drive. The number is the current value. Please refer to the product specification of that disk drive for details.

Item	Information
Write Errors Corrected with Possible Delays	0
Total Write Errors	0
Total Write Errors Corrected	0
Total Write Errors Corrected by Algorithm	0
Total Bytes Written	28768743330304
Total Uncorrected Write Errors	0
Read Errors Corrected by ECC Hardware Method	0
Read Errors Corrected with Possible Delays	0
Total Read Errors	0
Total Read Errors Corrected	0
Total Read Errors Corrected by Algorithm	0
Total Bytes Read	49617093781504
Total Uncorrected Read Errors	0
Non Medium Errors	0
Temperature	29°C / 84.2°F
Reference Temperature	60°C / 140°F
Specified Cycle Count Over Device Lifetime	10000
Accumulated Start-stop Cycles	692
Accumulated Load-unload Count Over Device Lifetime	0
Accumulated Load-unload Cycles	0
Blocks Sent to Initiator	2419105780
Blocks Received from Initiator	344659577
Blocks Read from Cache and Sent to Initiator	2504089149
I/O Commands with Size Smaller than Segment Size	1527136133
I/O Commands with Size Larger than Segment Size	3866641966

Figure 89: S.M.A.R.T. Attributes of Disk Drive



Item	Information
Read Error(Rate)	100(0)
Reallocated Sector(Count)	100(0)
Erase Fail(Count)	100(0)
Unexpected Power Loss(Count)	100(0)
Uncorrectable Error(Count)	100(0)
Temperature	30°C / 212°F
SSD Endurance	100%

Figure 90: S.M.A.R.T. Attributes of SSD

For some SSDs, we provide SSD endurance values to monitor the health of SSDs. The value is a percentage to know how much remaining life of SSD is. The system will notify user if the SSD endurance is under 10%. And also 5%, 3%, 2% by sequence.



TIP:

Although it's a useful reference value to know the remaining life of the SSD, we recommend replacing the SSD if the value is under 5%.

S.M.A.R.T. Polling

Select the **Disk Settings** function submenu to configure the S.M.A.R.T. polling setting. Uncheck the **Enable S.M.A.R.T. Polling** to disable S.M.A.R.T. polling setting. Disabling S.M.A.R.T. polling will let system not report any problems if there were any S.M.A.R.T. error. There are 2 options when enabling the S.M.A.R.T. polling setting. Selecting the **Inquiry** option will let system report problems of disk when discovering S.M.A.R.T. error and show in event log to inform customers. Selecting the **Inquiry and Action** option will allow system to report problems of disk when discovering S.M.A.R.T. error and show in event log to inform customers, and then the system will remove the problematic disk drive from the pool. The pool will be rebuilt by using a spare disk drive.



Enable S.M.A.R.T. Polling

Disabling S.M.A.R.T. polling will let system not report any problems if there were any S.M.A.R.T. error. Selecting Inquiry will let system report problems of disk when discovering S.M.A.R.T. error and show in event log to inform customers. Selecting Inquiry & Action will allow system to report problems of disk when discovering S.M.A.R.T. error and show in event log to inform customers, and then the system will remove the problematic disk drive from the pool. The pool will be rebuilt by using a spare disk drive.

Inquiry •
Inquiry
Inquiry and Action

Figure 91: Disk Settings

8.4. Configure Thick Provisioning Pools

Select the Pools function submenu to create, modify, delete, or view the status of the pools. We will describe thick provisioning pool in the following section; keep thin provisioning technology in the Thin Provisioning chapter and auto tiering in the Auto Tiering chapter.



Figure 92: Pools Function Submenu

8.4.1. Create a Thick Provisioning Pool

Here is an example of creating a thick provisioning pool with 4 disks configured in RAID 5. At the first time of creating a thick provisioning pool, it contains a disk group and the maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64.

1. Select the **Pools** function submenu, click the **Create Pool** button. It will scan available disks first.





TIP:

It may take 20 ~ 30 seconds to scan disks if your system has more than 200 disk drives. Please wait patiently.

Create Pool				
Create Pool General Dak Selection RAID Configuration Disk Properties Summary	SED Pool	re and select preferre Pool-1 Controller 1 41 be managed by the	preferred controller which	s are not supported in a pool
				Next Cancel

Figure 93: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 1

- 2. Select the **Pool Type** as Thick Provisioning.
- 3. Enter a **Pool Name** for the pool. Maximum length of the pool name is 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- 4. Select a **Preferred Controller** from the drop-down list. The backend I/O resources in this pool will be processed by the preferred controller which you specified. This option is available when dual controllers are installed.
- 5. Check the **Enable SED Pool** checkbox. Enabling SED pool will use the secure SEDs to create a pool. Intermixing SEDs and non-SEDs are not supported in a pool.
- 6. Click the **Next** button to continue.



RAID Configuration	Encla	oure ID.	0.7444	d Unit: XS	10102				
RAID Configuration Disk Properties	4,11074	NUT IN 2	a a those	a 197701- 1978	HERE W	20			
	0	Enclosure ID	Slot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model	
Summary	0	0	1	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	1
	8	0	2	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
	.0	0	3	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
	0	0	4	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
	60	0	5	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800	
	0	0	6	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800	
	0	0	7	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800	
	10	0	8	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800	
	8	0	9	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
	8	0	10	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
	10	0	11	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
	8	0	12	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
		0	13	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014	
	0	0	14.	Good	5.45 TB	NL-SAS HOD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014	
	0	0	15	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014	

Figure 94: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 2

- 7. Please select disks for pool. The maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64. Select an **Enclosure ID** from the drop-down list to select disks from expansion enclosures.
- 8. Click the **Next** button to continue.



Create Pool			
General Disk Selection	RAID Configuration Please select a RAID level.		
RAID Configuration Disk Properties Summary	RAID Level Quantity of SAS Disks	KAID 0 * RAID 1 * RAID 2 * RAID 3 * RAID 3EE * RAID 3EE * RAID 3E * RAID 10 *	
Back			Next Cancel

Figure 95: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 3

- Select a RAID Level from the drop-down list which lists available RAID level only according to the disk selection. And select a Quantity of Subgroups if the combination RAID level is selected.
- 10. Click the **Next** button to continue.



Create Pool							
Create Pool General Disk Selection RAID Configuration Disk Properties Summary	Disk Properties Please configure the disk properties. If Enable Disk Write Cache Enabling disk write cache will improve write I/O performance but risking data loss when power failure. If Enable Disk Read-ahead System will preload data to disk buffer based on previously retrieved data. This feature will efficiently improve the performance of sequential data interved.						
	🗐 Enable Disk Stan	nmands to a disk at o dby	5 5		eccording to the settin	9	
Back						Next	

Figure 96: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 4

- 11. Disk properties can also be configured optionally in this step:
 - Enable Disk Write Cache: Check to enable the write cache option of disks. Enabling disk write cache will improve write I/O performance but have a risk of losing data when power failure.
 - Enable Disk Read-ahead: Check to enable the read-ahead function of disks. System will preload data to disk buffer based on previously retrieved data. This feature will efficiently improve the performance of sequential data retrieved.
 - Enable Disk Command Queuing: Check to enable the command queue function of disks. Send multiple commands to a disk at once to improve performance.
 - **Enable Disk Standby:** Check to enable the auto spin down function of disks. The disks will be spun down for power saving when they are idle for the period specified.
- 12. Click the **Next** button to continue.



reate Pool			
General	Pool Properties		
Disk Selection	Pool Type	Thick Provisioning	
RAID Configuration	Pool Name :	Pool-1	
Disk Properties	Preferred Controller	Controller 1	
ianmary	RAID Configuration		
	RAID Level	RAID 5	
	Quantity of SAS Disks	4	
	Disk Properties		
	Disk Write Cache	Enabled	
	Disk Read-ahead	Enabled	
	Disk Command Queuing	Enabled	
	Disk Standby	Disabled	
l:			
Back			Fetab Cantel
Contraction of Contra			A CONTRACTOR AND

Figure 97: Create a Thick Provision Pool Step 5

13. After confirmation at summary page, click the **Finish** button to create a pool.

P	Status	Health	Total	Free	Available	Thin Provisioning	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controller
• P	Online	Good	3.27 TB	3.27 TB	3.27 TB	Disabled	Disabled	0	Controller 1
-		1000	1.50-00 //10/00		Transfer Alterna Transfer Transfer				

Figure 98: A Thick Provisioning Pool is Created

14. A pool has been created. If necessary, click **Create Pool** button again to create others.



8.4.2. List Thick Provisioning Pools

Click a **pool**; it will display the related disk groups. Similarly, click a **disk group**; it will display the related disk drives. The pool properties can be configured by clicking the functions button $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to the left side of the specific pool.

	Pool N	lame	Status	Health	Total	Free	Available	Thin Provisioning	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controller
	Pool-1		Online	Gloopd	3327 718	3.27 18	32778	Deathed	Deabled	0	Controller 1
NSK Gr	oups										
	No.	Status	Health	Total	Free	RAID	Disks Use	RAID EE Sp	ares		
	1	Orline	Good	327/1	16 3.27 11	B RAID		N/A			
10000											
1200	10	(Ca.)	Chatas	Manith	Council	Dirth T.		Manufactures	Madel	-	
Enclosu	ure 10	Siot	Status	Health	Capacity	Disk Ty	and the second second second	Manufacturer	Model ST1200MM0088		
Enclosu 0	ire 1D	9	Status Onine Online	Health Good Good	Capacity 1.09 TB 1.09 TB	SAS H	/pe DD 12.0Gb/s DD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE SEAGATE	Model ST1200MM0088 ST1200MM0088	2	
Enclosu 0 0 0	ure ID		Onine	Good	1.09 TB	SAS H	DD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0688		

Figure 99: List Thick Provisioning Pools

This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 31: Pool Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Pool Name	The pool name.
Status	 The status of the pool: On-line: The pool is online. Offline: The pool is offline. Rebuilding: The pool is being rebuilt. Migrating: The pool is being migrated. Relocating: The pool is being relocated. EE Rebuilding: The pool is being RAID EE rebuilt.
Health	 The health of the pool: Good: The pool is good. Failed: The pool is failed. Degraded: The pool is not healthy and not complete. The reason could be missing or failed disks.
Total	Total capacity of the pool.
Free	Free capacity of the pool.
Available	Available capacity of the pool.
Thin Provisioning	The status of Thin provisioning:Disabled.Enabled.



Column Name	Description
Encryption	The Data Secure Mode:Disabled: The pool is not encrypted.Enabled: The pool is encrypted.
Volumes	The quantity of volumes in the pool.
Current Controller (<i>This option is only</i> <i>visible when dual</i> <i>controllers are</i> <i>installed.</i>)	The current running controller of the pool.

Table 32: Disk Group Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
No.	The number of the disk group.
Status	 The status of the pool: On-line: The disk group is online. Offline: The disk group is offline. Rebuilding: The disk group is being rebuilt. Migrating: The disk group is being migrated. Relocating: The disk group is being relocated. EE Rebuilding: The disk group is being RAID EE rebuilt.
Health	 The health of the disk group: Good: The disk group is good. Failed: The disk group fails. Degraded: The pool is not healthy and not complete. The reason could be missing or failed disks.
Total	Total capacity of the disk group.
Free	Free capacity of the disk group.
RAID	The RAID level of the disk group.
Disks Used	The quantity of disk drives in the disk group.
RAID EE Spare	The quantity of RAID EE spare disk drives in the disk group. Display N/A is the RAID level is traditional.



Table 33: Disk Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Enclosure ID	The enclosure ID.
Slot	The position of the disk drive.
Status	 The status of the disk drive: On-line: The disk drive is online. Missing: The disk drive is missing in the pool. Rebuilding: The disk drive is being rebuilt. Transitioning: The disk drive is being migrated or is replaced by another disk when rebuilding occurs. Scrubbing: The disk drive is being scrubbed. Check Done: The disk drive has been checked the disk health Copying Back: The disk drive is being copied back.
Health	 The health of the disk drive: Good: The disk drive is good. Failed: The disk drive is failed. Error Alert: S.M.A.R.T. error alerts. Read Errors: The disk drive has unrecoverable read errors.
Capacity	The capacity of the disk drive.
Disk Type	The type of the disk drive: • [SAS HDD NL-SAS HDD SAS SSD SATA SSD] • [12.0Gb/s 6.0Gb/s 3.0Gb/s 1.5Gb/s]
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the disk drive.
Model	The model name of disk drive.

8.4.3. Operations on Thick Provisioning Pools

The options available in this tab:

Activate and Deactivate the Pool

Click ▼ -> Activate/Deactivate in one of pools, these options are usually used for online disk roaming. Deactivate can be executed when the status is online. Conversely, activate can be executed when the pool status is offline. For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.8, Disk Roaming section.

Change Disk Properties of the Pool

Click ▼ -> Change Disk Properties in one of pools to change disk properties of the pool.



Disk Write Cache:	Enabled	• 0	
Disk Read-ahead:	Enabled	• 0	
Disk Command Queuing:	Enabled	v 	
Disk Standby:	Disabled	× 0	

Figure 100: Change Disk Properties

Change Thin Provisioning Policy of the Pool

Click ▼ -> Change Thin Provisioning Policy in one of pools to change policy of the thin provisioning pool. For more information, please refer to the chapter 9, Thin Provisioning.

Change Preferred Controller of the Pool

Click ▼ -> Change Preferred Controller in one of pools to change the pool ownership to the other controller.

Verify Parity of the Pool

Click ▼ -> Verify Parity in one of pools to regenerate parity for the pool. It supports RAID level 3, 5, 6, 30, 50, 60 and RAID EE level 5EE, 6EE, 50EE, 60EE.

Add a Disk Group into the Pool

Click ▼ -> Add Disk Group in one of pools to add another disk group into the pool. For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.4.5, Add a Disk Group in a Thick Provisioning Pool section.

If the auto tiering license is enabled, you can click $\nabla \rightarrow$ Add Disk Group in one of pools to transfer from the thick provisioning pool to auto tiering pool. For more information, please refer to the chapter 11.7, Transfer to Auto Tiering Pool section.



	Provisioning : Tiering :		Disable	ed 🔻 0			
LAID	Level		Disable				
Pleas	e select a RAID	level.					
RAID	Level		RAID 1		*		
Selec	a Disks						
leas	e select disks to	add a di	skaroun Th	e maximum ova	intity of disk in a disk group is	64	
	isure ID :			Unit: 4224L		5.7	
-	Enclosure ID	Slot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
6	0	1	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
8	0	2	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
8	0	3	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
8	0	4	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
8	0	5	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
	0	6	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$638DC-800
0	0	7	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
8	0	8	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
8	Û	13	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
0	0	14	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
	0	15	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
0	0	16	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014

Figure 101: Transfer Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering



CAUTION:

The action of transferring from the thick provisioning pool to auto tiering is irreversible. Consider all possible consequences before making this change.

Delete a Pool

Click ▼ -> **Delete** to delete the pool. The pool cannot be deleted when there are volumes in the pool.

More Information of the Pool

Click ▼ -> More Information to show the detail information of the pool.



8.4.4. Migrate a Disk Group in a Thick Provisioning Pool

The **Migrate Disk Group** function changes the disk group to a different RAID level or adds the member disks of the disk group to increase the capacity. Each disk group is independent, you can migrate each one of disk groups.

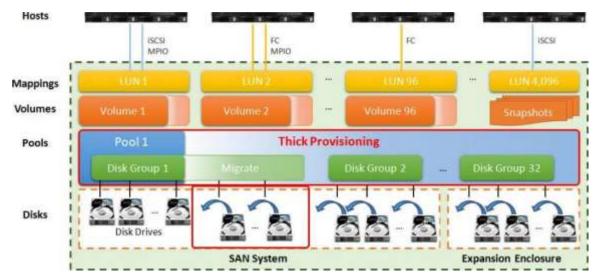


Figure 102: Migrate a Disk Group in a Thick Provisioning Pool

Usually, the disk group migrates to higher RAID level for better protection. To perform a migration, the total capacity of the disk group must be larger than or equal to the original one. If the RAID level doesn't change, the migration can also move the member disk drives to completely different disk drives.

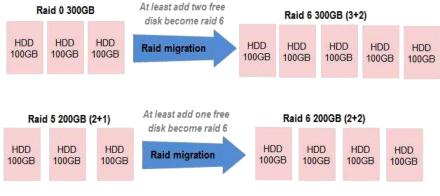


Figure 103: RAID Migration



Here's an example of migrate a disk group from RAID 5 to RAID 6.

1. Select a disk group, and then click ▼ -> Migrate Disk Group

leas	e select a RAID	level.							
RAID	Level :		RAID 5	ī.	٧				
Pleas	ct Disks se select disks to sure ID :	migrate t	RAID :	L 3 5 5EE		tity of disk in a disk gr	roup is 64.		
1	Enclosure ID	Slot	RAID (Туре	Manufacturer	Model	
	0	1	RAID C			SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
	0	2	C RAID	30		SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
	0	3	RAID S			SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
	0	4	C RAID	50		SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	d.
	0	5	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	S630DC-800	1
	0	6	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	S630DC-800	
	0	7	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	S630DC-800	
	0	8	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	S630DC-800	
	0	9	Good	1.09 TB	SAS	HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
	0	10	Good	1.09 TB	SAS	HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	1000
2	0	11	Good	1.09 TB	SAS	HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
	0	12	Good	1.09 TB	SAS	HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	-
Ø	0	13	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014	
	0	14	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014	

- Figure 104: Migrate RAID Level Step 1
- 2. Select a **RAID Level** from the drop-down list.
- 3. Please select disks for pool. The maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64. Select an **Enclosure ID** from the drop-down list to select disks from expansion enclosures.
- 4. Click the **OK** button to execute migration.
- 5. Migration starts. The status of the **Disks**, **Pools** and **Volumes** are changing. The complete percentage of migration is displayed in the **Status**.
- 6. It's done when the complete percentage reaches 100%.



The capacity after migration must be larger than the current capacity.





TIP:

A traditional RAID level can be migrated to RAID EE level, but RAID EE level can be migrated to RAID EE level only.



TIP:

Thin provisioning pool cannot execute the **Migrate Disk Group** option; it uses the **Add Disk Group** option to enlarge the capacity. For more information, please refer to the chapter 9, Thin Provisioning.

Operation Limitations during Migration

There are some operation limitations when a pool is being migrated. The System would reject these operations:

- Add dedicated spare.
- Remove a dedicated spare.
- Create a new volume.
- Delete a volume.
- Extend a volume.
- Scrub a volume.
- Perform another migration operation.
- Scrub entire pool.
- Take a snapshot.
- Delete a snapshot.
- Expose a snapshot.
- Rollback to a snapshot.

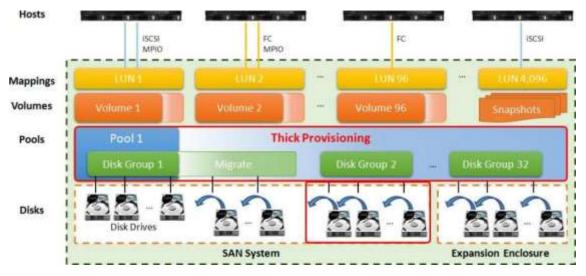


TIP:

Pool migration cannot be executed during rebuilding or volume extension.



8.4.5. Add a Disk Group in a Thick Provisioning Pool



The **Add Disk Group** function adds a disk group to a pool to increase the capacity.

Figure 105: Add a Disk Group in a Thick Provisioning Pool

Here is an example of adding a disk group into a thick provisioning pool with 2 disks configured in RAID 1.

1. Select a pool, click ▼ -> Add Disk Group to add a disk group in a thick provisioning pool.



	Provisioning :		Disable	i				
RAID	Level							
Pleas	e select a RAID I	level.	·					
RAID	Level		RAID (·	T			
ielec	t Disks		RAID					
	e select disks to sure ID :	add a dis	sk g RAID RAID RAID	i i iEE		disk in a disk group i	s 64.	
0	Enclosure ID	Slot	RAID (6EE		Туре	Manufacturer	Model
	0	1	RAID			SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
2	0	2	C RAID	10		SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
6.556) 68	0	3	RAID			SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
	0	4	C RAID	i0		SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
8	0	5	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	S630DC-800
8	0	6	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	S630DC-800
	0	7	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	S630DC-800
	0	8	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	S630DC-800
	0	13	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
	0	14	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
	0	15	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
0	0	16	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014

Figure 106: Add a Disk Group to a Thick Provisioning Pool

- 2. Select a **RAID Level** from the drop-down list and also select a **Quantity of Subgroups** if the combination RAID level is selected.
- 3. Select disks to add into a disk group. The maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64. Select an **Enclosure ID** from the drop-down list to select disks from expansion enclosures.
- 4. Click the **OK** button to add a disk group into the pool.



	Pool N	lame	Status	Health	Total	Free	Availab	e Thin Pro	ovisioning	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controller
•	Pinol 1		Colline	Gmd	4.00 TO	4.00 TB		in the second	d	Disabled	1	Controller 1
	oups				200							
	No	Status	Health	Total	_0	Free	RAID	Disks Used	RAIDE	E Spares		
•	1	Online	Good	3.27	B .:	.27 TB	RAID 5	4	NA			
	2	Drinne	Goot	744.9	a GB	44.90.68	RAID 0	2	NIA			
and so	02 0.00	and the second	1,222	1.00	100.00		-0-21		00.40	a na		
lisks												
ánem	are ID	Slot	Status	Health	Сарас	ity Disk	Туре	Manuf	acturer	Model	1	
Disks Enclosu 0	we ID	Slot	Status	Health	Capac 372.3	NUMBER OF STREET	Type I SSD 12.0	22/10/2010	2009/22/ 00	Model ST400FM0053		

Create Pool

Figure 107: A Disk Group is Added

5. A disk group has been added into the pool.



TIP:

If auto tiering license is enabled, the thick provisioning pool without disk group of mixed disk type can be transferred to the auto tiering pool by **Add Disk Group** option. Please refer to the chapter 11.6.1, Transfer from Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering section.

8.5. Configuring Volumes

Select the **Volumes** function submenu to create, modify, delete, or view the status of the volumes. The same as pool, we will describe thick provisioning volume in the following section and keep thin provisioning in the Thin Provisioning chapter and auto tiering in the Auto Tiering chapter.





8.5.1. Create a Volume

Here is an example of creating a volume in think provisioning Pool.

1. Select the **Volumes** function submenu, click the **Create Volume** button.

Create Volume				
General	Volume General Se	ttings		
Advanced	Please enter a volum	ne name and configure the	e volum	re general settings.
Summary	Volume Name	Vol-1		0
	Pool Name :	Pool-1	*	(Available : 2607 GB)
	Capacity :	100		C8 •
	Volume Type :	RAID Volume		
				Next Cancel

Figure 109: Create a Volume in Thick Provisioning Pool Step 1

- 2. Enter a **Volume Name** for the pool. The maximum length of the volume name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- 3. Select a **Pool Name** from the drop-down list. It will also display the available capacity of the pool.
- 4. Enter required **Capacity**. The unit can be selected from the drop-down list.
- 5. Select the **Volume Type**. The options are **RAID Volume** (for general RAID usage) and **Backup Volume** (for the target volume of local clone or remote replication).
- 6. Click the **Next** button to continue.



Create Volume				
General	Volume Advanced Set	nga		
Advanced	Please configure the vol-	ime advanced set	tings.	
Summary	Block Size :	512 Byte	*	
	Priority :	High	*	
	The priority is the com	parison with the o	ther volumes	
	Background I/O Priority	High	*	
	Background I/O priorit	y will influence vol	ume initilization, rebuild, and migration.	
	Erase Volume Data	Fast Eraso	*	
	 Enable Cache Mode Write back optimizes t short time interval. 		i) but comes with the risk which the data may be inconsis	tent between the cache and disks in a
	Enable Video Editing Please enable it when		in the video editing environment. It sacrifices a bit of pe	eformance but is stable
	Enable Read-ahead The system will identif buffer When the data Enable Fast RAID Re	to be transmitted	next, based on the content just retrieved from the disk, s continuous, this feature will improve performance	and then preload the data into the disk's
Back	π,			Next Cancel

Figure 110: Create a Volume in Thick Provisioning Pool Step 2

- 7. Volume advanced settings can also be configured optionally in this step:
 - Block Size: The options are 512 Bytes to 4,096 Bytes.
 - **Priority**: The options are High, Medium, and Low. The priority compares to other volumes. Set it as High if the volume has many I/O.
 - **Background I/O Priority**: The options are High, Medium, and Low. It will influence volume initialization, rebuild, and migration.
 - Erase Volume Data: This option is available when the pool is thick provisioning. This option will wipe out old data in volume to prevent that OS recognizes the old partition. The options are Do Not Erase, Fast Erase which will erase the first 1GB data of the volume, or Full Disk which will erase entire volume.
 - Enable Cache Mode (Write-back Cache): Check to enable cache mode function of volume. Write back optimizes the system speed but comes with the risk where the data may be inconsistent between cache and disks in one short time interval.
 - Enable Video Editing Mode: Check to enable video editing mode function. It is optimized for video editing usage. Please enable it when your application is in video editing environment. This option provides a more stable performance figure without high and low peaks but slower in average.
 - **Enable Read-ahead**: Check to enable the read ahead function of volume. The system will discern what data will be needed next based on what was just retrieved fromdisk and then preload this data into the disk's buffer. This feature will improve performance when the data being retrieved is sequential.
 - Enable Fast RAID Rebuild: This option is available when the pool is created in protection RAID level (e.g., RAID 1, 3, 5, 6, 0+1, 10, 30, 50, and 60). For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.5.5, Fast RAID Rebuild section.
- 8. Click the **Next** button to continue.



reate Volume			
General	Configure Volume General Se	ttings	
Advanced	Volume Name :	Vol-1	
Summary	Pool Name :	Pool-1	
	Capacity :	100 GB	
	Volume Type :	RAID Volume	
	Configure Volume Advanced	Settings	
	Block Size	512 Byte	
	Priority :	High	
	Background I/O Priority :	High	
	Erase Volume Data :	Fast Erase	
	Cache Mode :	Enabled	
	Video Editing Mode :	Disabled	
	Read-ahead :	Enabled	
	Fast RAID Rebuild	Disabled	
	8.		
Back			Finish Cancel

Figure 111: Create a Volume in Thick Provisioning Pool Step 3

- 9. After confirmation at summary page, click the **Finish** button to create a volume.
- 10. The volume has been created. It will be initialized in protection RAID level (e.g., RAID 1, 3, 5, 6, 0+1, 10, 30, 50, and 60).

	Volume Name	Status	Health	Capacity	Volume Type	SSD Cache	Snapshot Space	Snapshots	Clone	Write	Pool Name
۲	Vol-1	Initializing (0%)	Optimal	100 00 GB	RAID Volume	Disabled	0 MB / 0 MB	0	N/A	WB	Pool-1
test i c	any 1 outs	last.co									
denik ji s	priv 1 conto	hally:									

- 11. A volume has been created. If necessary, click **Create Volume** button to create another.



TIP:

ESOS supports instant RAID volume availability. The volume can be used immediately when it is initializing or rebuilding.



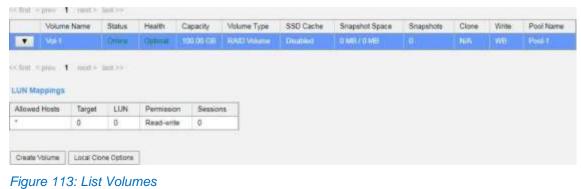
TIP:

If the pool contains some disk drives of 4Kn type, it is not available to set 512, 1024, or 2048 block size. When the case happens, it will pop up a warning message and suggest changing the block size to 4096.



List Volumes 8.5.2.

Select one of the volumes; it will display the related LUN Mappings if the volume is mapped. The volume properties can be configured by clicking the functions button ▼ to the left side of the specific volume.



This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 34: Vo	olume Column	Descriptions
--------------	--------------	--------------

Column Name	Description
Volume Name	The volume name.
Status	 The status of the volume: On-line: The volume is online. Offline: The volume is offline. Erasing: The volume is being erased if the Erase Volume Data option is set. Initiating: The volume is being initialized. Rebuilding: The volume is being rebuilt. Migrating: The volume is being migrated. Rollback: The volume is being rolled back. Parity Checking: The volume is being relocated. EE Rebuilding: The volume is being RAID EE rebuilt.
Health	 The health of the volume: Optimal: The volume is working well and there is no failed disk in the RG Failed: The pool disk of the volume has single or multiple failed disks than its RAID level can recover from data loss. Degraded: At least one disk from the pool of the volume is failed or plugged out. Non-optimal: The volume has experienced recoverable read errors. After passing parity check, the health will become Optimal.



Column Name	Description
Capacity	The capacity of the volume.
	The status of the SSD cache:
SSD Cache	 Enabled: The volume is enabled SSD cache.
	Disabled: The volume is disabled SSD cache.
	Used snapshot space / Total snapshot space. The first capacity is
Snapshot space	current used snapshot space, and the second capacity is reserved
	total snapshot space.
Snapshots	The quantity of the snapshot in the volume.
Clone	The target name of the clone volume.
	The access right of the volume:
Write	WT: Write Through.
WING	WB: Write Back.
	RO: Read Only.
Pool Name	Which pool the volume belongs to.

8.5.3. Operations on Volumes

The options available in this tab:

Setup Local Cloning Options

Click the **Local Cloning Options** button to set the clone options. For more information, please refer to the chapter 12.2.4, Local Cloning Options section in the Data Backup chapter.

Local Clone Options		
Automatic Snapshot Space Allocation Ratio: 🕕	2	Y
Automatic Snapshot Checkpoint Threshold: 🜖	50%	۷
Restart the task an hour later if it failed:	Enabled	ł

Figure 114: Local Cloning Options

LUN Mapping Operations

Click ▼ -> Map LUN to map a logical unit number to the volume. For more information about map and unmap LUN, please refer to the chapter 8.6, Configure LUN Mappings section.



Map a LUN (Logica	al Unit Number) to a vol	ume.	
Protocol:	ISCSI	(*)	
Volume Name:	Vol-1(100 GB)	(*)	
Allowed Hosts:	*	0	Add Host
Target:	0		
LUN:	LUN 0	٠	
Permission:	O Read-only • Re	ead-write	

Figure 115: Map a LUN of iSCSI Connectivity

Click ▼ -> **Unmap LUNs** to unmap logical unit numbers from the volume.

elec	ct the LUN(s) that yo	ou would like	e to unmap	from this volum	e and click OK	button.	
	Allowed Hosts	Target	LUN	Permission	Sessions	Volume Name	1
	*	0	0	Read-write	0	Vol-1	

Figure 116: Unmap LUNs

Snapshot Operations

Click $\mathbf{\nabla}$ -> **Set Snapshot Space** to set snapshot space for preparing to take snapshots. For more information about snapshot, please refer to the chapter 12.1, Managing Snapshots section in the Data Backup chapter.

Set Snapshot Space				
Volume Name:	Vol-1			
Capacity:	100	GB 🔻	Available: 2507GB Minimum: 6GB	
Free Capacity:	2507GB			

Figure 117: Set Snapshot Space



Click ▼ -> **Take Snapshot** to take a snapshot of the volume.

Click ▼ -> Schedule Snapshots to set the snapshots by schedule.

Click ▼ -> List Snapshots to list all snapshots of the volume.

Click $\mathbf{\nabla}$ -> **Cleanup Snapshots** to clean all snapshots of the volume and release the snapshot space.

Local Clone Operations

Click \blacksquare -> **Create Local Clone** to set the target volume for clone. For more information about local clone, please refer to the chapter 12.2, Managing Local Clones section in the Data Backup chapter.

Volume Name	Capacity	Status	Health	Pool Name	
Target-Vol-2	110.00 GB	Online	Optimal	Pool-1	

Figure 118: Create Local Clone

Click ▼ -> Clear Clone to clear the clone.

Click ▼ -> Start Clone to start the clone.

Click ▼ -> **Stop Clone** to stop the clone.

Click ▼ -> Schedule Clone to set the clone function by schedule.

Click ▼ -> Change Replication Options to change the clone to Replication relationship. For more information about remote replication, please refer to the chapter 12.3, Managing Remote Replications section in the Data Backup chapter.

SSD Cache Options

Click ▼ -> Enable SSD Cache to enable SSD cache for the volume. For more information about SSD cache, please refer to the chapter 10, SSD Cache chapter.

Click ▼ -> **Disable SSD Cache** to disable SSD cache for the volume.



Change Volume Properties

Click ▼ -> Change Volume Properties to change the volume properties of the volume.

Volume Name:	Vol-1	0		
Priority:	High O Medium	i O Low		
Background I/O Priority:	High			
Cache Mode:	🔍 Write-through Cache 🖲 Write-back Cache 🔍 Read-Only 🕚			-Only 🚺
Video Editing Mode:	Disabled	• 🕕		
Read-ahead:	Enabled			
Volume Type:	RAID Volume	v 🕕		

Figure 119: Change Volume Properties

Reclaim Space with Thin Provisioning Pool

Click $\mathbf{\nabla} \rightarrow$ **Space Reclamation** to reclaim space from the pool when the volume is in a thin provisioning pool. For more information about space reclamation, please refer to the chapter 9.2.1, Space Reclamation section in the Thin Provisioning chapter.

Verify Parity of the Volume

Click $\mathbf{\nabla} \rightarrow$ Verify Parity to execute parity check for the volume which is created by the pool in parity RAID level (e.g., RAID 3, 5, 6, 30, 50, and 60). This volume can either be verified and repaired or only verified for data inconsistencies. This process usually takes a long time to complete.

Ver	ify the parity for volume Volume Vol-1
	s volume can either be verified and repaired or only verified for data inconsistencies. The verify and air process will take longer.
۲	Verify and repair data inconsistencies.
0	Only verify for data inconsistencies.
	Stop verifying when the following number of inconsistencies have been found. 1

Figure 120: Verify Parity



Extend Volume Capacity

Click ▼ -> Extend Volume to extend the volume capacity. For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.5.4, Extend Volume Capacity section.

Delete Volume

Click ▼ -> **Delete** to delete the volume. The related LUN mappings will also be deleted.

More Information of the Volume

Click ▼ -> More Information to show the detail information of the volume.

8.5.4. Extend Volume Capacity

Extend Volume function extends the capacity of the volume if there is enough free space.

Here's how to extend a volume:

- 1. Select the **Volumes** function submenu, select a volume, and then click **▼** -> **Extend Volume**.
- 2. Change the volume capacity. The capacity must be larger than the current, and then click the **OK** button to start extension.

Enter a capacity that y current.	ou would like to extend. The	capacity must be larger than	the
Capacity:	150	GB 🔻	
Free Space:	2397 GB		

Figure 121: Extend Volume Capacity

- 3. If the volume needs initialization, it will display the status **Initiating** and the complete percentage of initialization in **Status**.
- 4. It's done when the complete percentage reaches 100%.





TIP:

The extension capacity must be larger than the current capacity.



TIP:

Extension cannot be executed during rebuilding or migration.

8.5.5. Fast RAID Rebuild

When executing rebuild, the Fast RAID Rebuild feature skips any partition of the volume where no write changes have occurred, it will focus only on the parts that have changed. This mechanism may reduce the amount of time needed for the rebuild task. It also reduces the risk of RAID failure cause of reducing the time required for the RAID status from degraded mode to healthy. At the same time, it frees up CPU resources more quickly to be available for another I/O and demands. For more information, please refer to the Fast Rebuild White Paper.

Enable Fast RAID Rebuild

Here is an example of enabling the Fast RAID Rebuild function when creating a volume.

Create Volume						
General	Volume Advanced Setti	ogs				
Advanced	Please configure the volu	me advanced set	tings.			
Summary	Block Size	512 Byte	*			
	Priority :	High	*			
	The priority is the com	parison with the o	ther volumes.			
	Background I/O Priority :	High				
	Background I/O priority will influence volume initilization, rebuild, and migration,					
	Erase Volume Data :	Fast Erase				
	Enable Cache Mode (Write-back Cache) Write back optimizes the system speed but comes with the risk which the data may be inconsistent between the cache and disks in a short time interval. Enable Video Editing Mode					
	Please enable it when	the application is	in the video editing environment. It sacrifices a bit of performance but is stable.			
		o be transmitted i	next, based on the content just retrieved from the disk, and then preload the data into the disk is continuous, this feature will improve performance.			
Back			Next Cancel			

Figure 122: Enable Fast RAID Rebuild When Creating a Volume



Fast RAID Rebuild Notices

Here are some notices about Fast RAID Rebuild.

- Only a thick provisioning pool supports enabling/disabling this feature, a thin provisioning pool has included this feature and set as enabled by default.
- When a rebuild occurs in a fast rebuild volume, clean partitions are not rebuilt since there are no data saved there. Though clean partitions are never rebuilt, their health status is good.
- If all partitions of the fast rebuild volume are clean, then no rebuild would happen and no event would be sent.
- The RAID stacks could not use optimize algorithm to compute parities of a partition which is not rebuilt. Thus, the performance of random write in a clean partition would be worse.



CAUTION:

Disabling Fast RAID Rebuild function is recommended when the access pattern to the volume is random write.

8.6. Configure LUN Mappings

Select the **LUN Mappings** function submenu to map, unmap or view the status of LUN (Logical Unit Number) for each volume.



Figure 123: Pools Function Submenu



8.6.1. Map a LUN of iSCSI Connectivity

Here's an example of mapping a LUN of iSCSI connectivity.

1. Select the LUN Mappings function submenu, click the Map LUN button.

Map a LON (Logica	al Unit Number) to a vol	ume.	
Protocol:	ISCSI	¥	
Volume Name:	Vol-1(100 GB)		
Allowed Hosts:	* 1	0	Add Host
Target:	0		
LUN:	LUN 0	٠	
Permission:	O Read-only Read-write		

Figure 124: Map a LUN of iSCSI Connectivity

- 2. Select the **Protocol** as iSCSI.
- 3. Select a **Volume** from the drop-down list.
- 4. Enter the **Allowed Hosts** with semicolons (;) or click the **Add Host** button to add one by one. Fill-in wildcard (*) for access by all hosts.
- 5. Select a **Target** from the drop-down list.
- 6. Select a **LUN** from the drop-down list.
- 7. Select a Permission level, normally set it as Read-write.
- 8. Click the **OK** button to map a LUN.

The matching rules of access control are followed from created time of the LUNs. The earlier created LUN is prior to the matching rules. For example: there are two LUN rules which are set to the same volume:

- 1. Allow Hosts sets *, LUN is LUN 0
- 2. Allow Hosts sets iqn.host1, LUN is LUN 1

The host *iqn.host2* can login successfully because it matches the rule 1.



Wildcard * and ? are allowed in this field.

- Wildcard * can replace any word.
- Wildcard ?: can replace only one character.

For example:

- iqn.host? -> iqn.host1 and iqn.host2 are accepted.
- iqn.host* -> iqn.host1 and iqn.host12345 are accepted.

This field cannot accept comma, so *iqn.host1, iqn.host2* stands a long string, not two iqn's.

8.6.2. Map a LUN of Fibre Channel Connectivity

Here's an example of mapping a LUN of fibre channel connectivity.

1. Select the LUN Mappings function submenu, click the Map LUN button.

Protocol:	FCP	*	
Volume Name:	Vol-1(100 GB)	*	
Allowed Hosts:	•	0	Add Host
Target:	2000001378FF88	• 00	
LUN:	LUN 0	*	
Permission:	🕗 Read-only 🖲 R	ead-write	
Link Reset:	🔍 Yes 🖲 No		

Figure 125: Map a LUN of FC Connectivity

- 2. Select the **Protocol** as FCP (Fibre Channel Protocol).
- 3. Select a Volume from the drop-down list.
- 4. Enter the **Allowed Hosts** with semicolons (;) or click the **Add Host** button to add one by one. Fill-in wildcard (*) for access by all hosts.
- 5. Select a **Target** from the drop-down list.
- 6. Select a LUN from the drop-down list.



- 7. Select a **Permission** level. Normally set it as **Read-write**.
- 8. Set Link Reset to Yes if the fibre channel needs to reset when it is connected.
- 9. Click the **OK** button to map a LUN.

8.6.3. List LUN Mappings

List all LUN mappings in this page. The LUN properties can be configured by clicking the functions button to the left side of the specific LUN.

Allo	wed Hosts	Target	LUN	Permission	Sessions	Volume Name
*		0	0	Read-write	0	Vol-1

Figure 126: List LUN Mappings

This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 35: LUN Mapping Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Allowed Hosts	The target of FC / iSCSI for access control or a wildcard (*) for access by all hosts.
Target	The target numbers.
LUN	The logical unit number which is mapped.
	The permission level:
Permission	Read-write
	Read-only
Sessions	The quantity of the active iSCSI connection linked to the logical unit.
362210112	Show N/A if the protocol is FCP.
Volume Name	The name of the volume assigned to this LUN.



8.6.4. Operations on LUN Mappings

The options are available on this tab:

Unmap a LUN

Click ▼ -> **Unmap LUN** to unmap a logical unit number from the volume.

8.7. Connect by Host Initiator

After map a LUN to a volume, the host can connect the volume by initiator program. We provide some documents of host connections for reference. The documents are available at the website:

- How to Configure iSCSI Initiator in Microsoft Windows
- How to Configure iSCSI Initiator in ESXi 6.x
- Implement iSCSI Multipath in RHEL 6.5

8.8. Disk Roaming

Disks can be re-sequenced in the same system or move all member disks in the same pool from system-1 to system-2. This is called disk roaming. System can execute disk roaming online. Please follow these steps.

- 1. Select the **Pools** function submenu, selects a pool. And then click **▼** -> **Deactivate**.
- 2. Click the **OK** button to apply. The Status changes to **Offline**.
- 3. Move all member disks of the pool to another system.
- 4. In Volumes tab, select the **pool**. And then click ▼ -> Activate.
- 5. Click the **OK** button to apply. The Status changes to **Online**.

Disk roaming has some constraints as described in the following.

- 1. Check the firmware version of two systems first. It is better for both systems to have the same firmware version or the firmware version of the system-2 is newer.
- 2. All physical disks of the pool should be moved from system-1 to system-2 together. The configuration of both pool and volume will be kept but LUN configuration will be cleared to avoid conflict with the current setting of the system-2.



9. Thin Provisioning

This chapter describes an overview and operations of thin provisioning.

9.1. Overview

Nowadays, thin provisioning is a hot topic people talk about in IT management and storage industry circles. To contrast thin provisioning, it naturally comes to mind with the opposite term – thick or fat provisioning, which is the traditional way IT administrators allocate storage space to each logical volume that is used by an application or a group of users. When it comes to the point of deciding how much space a logical volume requires for three years or for the lifetime of an application, it's hard to make the prediction correctly and precisely. To avoid the complexity of adding more space to the volumes frequently, IT administrators might as well allocate more storage space to each logical volume than it needs in the beginning. Therefore, it's called thick or fat provisioning. Usually it turns out that a lot of free disk space is sitting around idle. This stranded capacity is wasted, which equals to waste of investment in drives, energy usage, and general inefficiency. Various studies indicate that as much as 75% of the storage capacity in small and medium enterprises or large data centers is allocated but unused. And this is where thin provisioning kicks in.

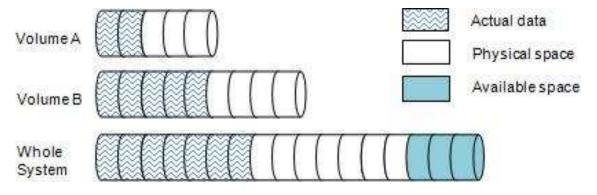


Figure 127: Traditional Thick Provisioning



Thin provisioning sometimes is known as just-in-time capacity or over allocation. As the term explains itself, it provides storage space dynamically on demand. Thin provisioning presents more storage space to the hosts or servers connecting to the storage system than is physically available on the storage system. To put it in another way, thin provisioning allocates storage space that may or may not exist. The whole idea is another way of virtualization. Virtualization is always about a logical pool of physical assets and provides better utilization over those assets. Here the virtualization mechanism behind thin provisioning is storage pool. The capacity of the storage pool is shared by all volumes. When write requests come in, the space will be drawn dynamically from this storage pool to meet the needs.

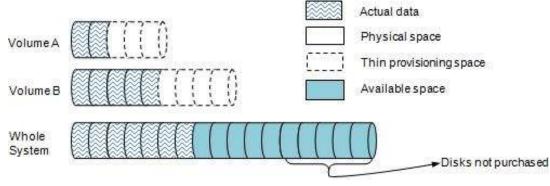


Figure 128: Thin Provisioning

9.1.1. Thick Provisioning vs. Thin Provisioning

The efficiency of thin or thick provisioning is a function of the use case, not of the technology. Thick provisioning is typically more efficient when the amount of resource used very closely approximates to the amount of resource allocated. Thin provisioning offers more efficiency where the amount of resource used is much smaller than allocated, so that the benefit of providing only the resource needed exceeds the cost of the virtualization technology used.

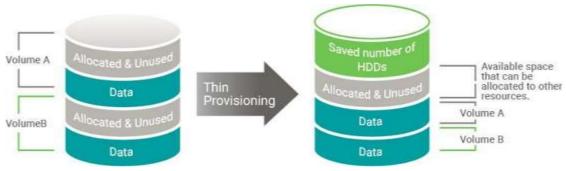


Figure 129: Benefits of Thin Provisioning



9.2. Theory of Operation

Thin provisioning, in a shared-storage environment, provides a method for optimizing utilization of available storage. It relies on on-demand allocation of blocks of data versus the traditional method of allocating all the blocks up front. This methodology eliminates almost all whitespace which helps avoid poor utilization rates.

With thin provisioning, storage capacity utilization efficiency can be automatically driven up towards 100% with very little administrative overhead. Organizations can purchase less storage capacity up front, defer storage capacity upgrades in line with actual business growth, and save the operating costs (electricity and floor space) associated with keeping unused disk capacity spinning.

9.2.1. Thin Provisioning Architecture

A thin provisioning pool is a collection of disk groups which contain disk drives and made up a RAID. Similarly, a storage pool is grouped to provide capacity for volumes. Volumes are then allocated out of the storage pool and are mapped to LUN which can be accessed by a host system. The following is the storage architecture of a thin provisioning pool.

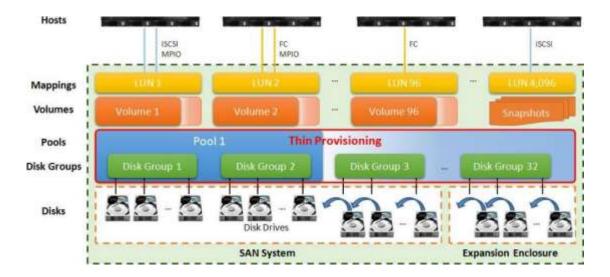


Figure 130: Storage Architecture of Thin Provisioning Pool



Disk groups which contain disk drives can be added to a thin provisioning pool at any time to increase the capacity of the pool. A thin provisioning pool can have up to 32 disk groups with each disk group containing up to 64 disk drives. And the maximum disk drive quantity in a pool is 256. The maximum addressable capacity of each disk group is 64TB. So, the maximum capacity in a system is 256TB. For more information about pool operation, please refer to the chapter 9.3, Configuring Thin Provisioning Pools section.

Table 36: Thin Provisioning Pool Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum disk group quantity in a pool	32
Maximum disk drive quantity in a disk group (include dedicated spares)	64
Maximum RAID EE spare quantity in a disk group	8
Maximum disk drive quantity in a pool (include dedicated spares)	256
Maximum pool quantity per system	64
Maximum dedicated spare quantity in a pool	8
Maximum addressable capacity of a disk group	64TB
Maximum addressable capacity of a thin provisioning pool	256TB
Maximum addressable capacity of total thin provisioning Pools (include auto tiering pools)	1,024TB
Provisioning granularity	1GB

9.2.2. Space Reclamation

Previously allocated, but currently unused volume space can be reclaimed in disk pools after all data within a granularity have been deleted from volumes by hosts. Data must be permanently deleted to be considered as unused space. The unused space is returned to the pool.

Like the manual operation of reclaiming volume pace is the auto-reclamation process, which is the continual process of automatically reclaiming spaces that are "not in use" or "zeroed-out" and returning them to the pool without user intervention. The auto-reclamation process has some benefits over running the manual operation. For more information about the operation, refer to the chapter 9.4.1, Create a Volume in a Thin Provisioning Pool section.



9.2.3. Thin Provisioning Policies

Because thin provisioning is just-in-time capacity or over allocation, thin provisioning polices have been designed to warn in advance. There are 6 levels of threshold percentage and the default values defined as the following table.

No.	Threshold	Level	Action
1	60%	Information	Take no Action
2	70%	Information	Take no Action
3	80%	Information	Take no Action
4	85%	Warning	Reclaim Space
5	90%	Warning	Delete Snapshots
6	95%	Warning	De-activate Pool

Table 37: Thin Provisioning Policies and Default Values

When the used capacity of the thin provisioning pool reaches 60%, the system will send an event with information level to inform users. This is the same as 70% and 80%. To 85%, in addition to the system issued an event with warning level, but also began to implement space reclamation. After reaching 90%, it starts deleting the snapshot to keep the incoming data space. If it reaches 95%, the pool will be deactivated to avoid data loss.

The event log levels and actions can be changed when the usage of the pool capacity reaches the threshold. For more information about the operation, refer to the chapter 9.3.3, Operations on Thin Provisioning Pools section.



CAUTION:

Please always watch the system logs of thin provisioning pool. If the used capacity of the thin provisioning pool reaches 95%, the system will deactivate the pool to avoid data loss. So, the host cannot access the pool at this time. You must expand the pool capacity, and then activate the pool to resolve the issue.



9.3. Configure Thin Provisioning Pools

This section will describe the operations of configuring thin provisioning pool.



9.3.1. Create a Thin Provisioning Pool

Here is an example of creating a thin provisioning pool with 4 disks configured in RAID 5. At the first time of creating a thin provisioning pool, it contains a disk group and the maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64.

1. Select the **Pools** function submenu, click the **Create Pool** button. It will scan available disks first.



TIP:

It may take 20 ~ 30 seconds to scan disks if your system has more than 200 disk drives. Please wait patiently.



eate Pool			
General Disk Selection RAID Configuration Disk Properties Summary	Pool Type Please select a pool by Thick Provisioning Thin Provisioning Pool Properties Please enter a pool na	ed controller setting.	
	SED Pool	e preferred controller w	SEDs are not supported in a pool.
30		 	Next

Figure 132: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 1

- 2. Select the **Pool Type** as Thin Provisioning.
- 3. Enter a **Pool Name** for the pool. The maximum length of the pool name is 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- 4. Select a **Preferred Controller** from the drop-down list. The backend I/O resources in this pool will be processed by the preferred controller which you specified. This option is available when dual controllers are installed.
- 5. Check the **Enable SED Pool** checkbox. Enabling SED pool will use the secure SEDs to create a pool. Intermixing SEDs and non-SEDs are not supported in a pool.
- 6. Click the **Next** button to continue.

RAID Configuration					a cumulateria	and the second second second second	tity of disk in a dis	0.0010000000000000000000000000000000000
and and another months.	Enclosure	ID C	(Head	d Unit: 4	224L)			
Disk Properties	Er Er	N envestor	Slot	Health	Cepiacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
Summary	88 0		1	Good	372.36 GB	SAS \$5D 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	\$T400FM0053
	100 0		2	Good	372.56 GB	SAS SSD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
			3	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	8T400FM0053
	. 0 0		4	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.00b/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
	13 0		5	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12 00b/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
	- BBS (0		6	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12 0Gb/s	MICRON	56300C-800
	60 63		7	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$6300C-800
	0 100		8	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12 0Gb/s	MICRON	\$63000-800
	0 %		9	Good	1.09.78	SAS HOD 12.0Gb/4	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088
	0 20		10	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088
	0 %		11.	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088
	90 04		12	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	8T1200MM0088
	(B) 0		13	Good	5.45.78	NL-SAS HOD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
	153.0 0		14	Good	5 46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
	0 63		16	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0034

Figure 133: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 2



- 7. Please select disks for pool. The maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64. Select an **Enclosure ID** from the drop-down list to select disks from expansion enclosures.
- 8. Click the **Next** button to continue.

Create Pool			
General Disk Solection RAID Configuration Disk Properties Summary	RAID Configuration Please select a RAID level RAID Level Quantity of SAS Diaka	RAID 5. * RAID 6 RAID 1 RAID 3 RAID 3 RAID 3 RAID 5 RAID	
Васн			Next Cancel

Figure 134: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 3

- 9. Select a **RAID Level** from the drop-down list which lists available RAID level only according to the disk selection. And select a **Quantity of Subgroups** if the combination RAID level is selected.
- 10. Click the **Next** button to continue.

sale Pool	
tanent Dat Selector RAD Configuration One Properties Sermery	Deals Properties Please configure the disk properties Please configure the disk properties Please configure the disk properties Please class three Cache Control of the disk and the cache Please class three class Please class three disks to the based on previously retreased data. This feature set efficiently reprive the performance of segmental data retreased. Please Cost Command Caseding Please Cost Cost Command Caseding Please Cost Cost Command Caseding Please Cost Cost Cost Cost Cost Cost Cost Cost
	Bend Institute commands to a data at once to improve performance. Enable Data Standby The data will open down for power salving when they are idle for a period of time according to the setting Data Mandby Charlender F
Back	Next Cancel

Figure 135: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 4

- 11. Disk properties can also be configured optionally in this step:
 - Enable Disk Write Cache: Check to enable the write cache option of disks. Enabling disk write cache will improve write I/O performance but have a risk of losing data when power failure.
 - Enable Disk Read-ahead: Check to enable the read-ahead function of disks. System will preload data to disk buffer based on previously retrieved data. This feature will efficiently improve the performance of sequential data retrieved.



- Enable Disk Command Queuing: Check to enable the command queue function of disks. Send multiple commands to a disk at once to improve performance.
- **Enable Disk Standby**: Check to enable the auto spin down function of disks. The disks will be spun down for power saving when they are idle for the period specified.
- 12. Click the **Next** button to continue.

General	Pool Properties		
Disk Selection	Pool Type	Thin Provisioning	
RAID Configuration	Pool Name	Pool-2	
Disk Properties	Preferred Controller :	Controller 1.	
Summary	RAO Configuration		
	RADLevel	RAD 5	
	Quantity of SAS Disks	412.	
2	Oak Properties		
	Disk Write Cache .	Enabled	
	Disk Read-ahead	Enabled	
	Disk Command Queuing	Enabled	
	Disk Standby	Disabled	
j			
			Second Second

Figure 136: Create a Thin Provisioning Pool Step 5

13. After confirmation of info on the summary page, click the **Finish** button to create a pool.

	Status	Health	Total	Free	Available	Thin Provisioning	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controlle
Pool-2	Online	Good	3 27 TB	3.27 TB	3.27 TB	Enabled	Disabled	0	Controller 1
hool-	2	2 Online	2 Online Good	2 Online Good 3.27 TB	2 Online Good 3.27 TB 3.27 TB	2 Online Good 3.27 TB 3.27 TB 3.27 TB	2 Online Good 3.27 TB 3.27 TB 3.27 TB Enabled	2 Online Good 3:27 TB 3:27 TB 3:27 TB Enabled Disabled	2 Online Good 3:27 TB 3:27 TB 3:27 TB Enabled Disabled 0

A pool has been created. If necessary, click the Create Pool button again to create others.

9.3.2. List Thin Provisioning Pools

Click a pool; it will display the related disk groups. Similarly, click a disk group; it will display the related disk drives. The pool properties can be configured by clicking the functions button $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to the left side of the specific pool.



	Pool	Vame	Status	Health	Total	Free	Available	Thin Provisioning	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controller
	Pool		Online	Sant	127 18	127 18	127 18	Enabled	Deschiod	0	Cont. der 1
Disk Gr	roups										
	No	Status	Health	Total	Free	RAID	Disks Use	d RAID EE Sp	are6		
	1	Orime	Gomt	3.27 10	312771	RAID 5	4	NIA			
-											
	ure ID	Slot	Status	Health	Canacity	Disk Tet	64	Manufacturer	Model		
Enclosu	ure ID	Slot	Status	Health	Capacity	Disk Typ	pe)D 12 0Gb/s	Manufacturer	Model ST1200MM0088	3	
Enclosu 0	ure ID	Slot 9 10	Status Online Online	Health Good Good	Capacity 1.09 TB 1.09 TB	SAS HD			10.0150		
Drsks Enclosu 0 0	ure ID	9	Online	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HD SAS HD	DD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088		

Figure 138: List Thin Provisioning Pools

This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 38: Pool Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Pool Name	The pool names.
	The status of the pool:
	On-line: The pool is online.
	Offline: The pool is offline.
Status	Rebuilding: The pool is being rebuilt.
	 Migrating: The pool is being migrated.
	 Relocating: The pool is being relocated.
	• EE Rebuilding: The pool is being RAID EE rebuilt.
	The health of the pool:
	Good: The pool is good.
Health	• Failed: The pool is failed.
	Degraded: The pool is not healthy and not complete. The reason actively be missing on follow
Total	could be missing or failed disks.
Free	Total capacity of the pool.
Available	Free capacity of the pool. Available capacity of the pool.
Available	The status of Thin provisioning:
Thin Provisioning	 Disabled.
Thirt Tovisioning	Enabled.
	The Data Secure Mode:
Encryption	 Disabled: The pool is not encrypted.
51	Enabled: The pool is encrypted.
Volumes	The quantity of volumes in the pool.
Current Controller	The current running controller of the pool.
(This option is only	
visible when dual	
controllers are	
installed.)	



Table 39: Disk Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Enclosure ID	The enclosure ID.
Slot	The position of the disk drive.
Status	 The status of the disk drive: On-line: The disk drive is online. Missing: The disk drive is missing in the pool. Rebuilding: The disk drive is being rebuilt. Transitioning: The disk drive is being migrated or is replaced by another disk when rebuilding occurs. Scrubbing: The disk drive is being scrubbed. Check Done: The disk drive has been checked the disk health Copying Back: The disk drive is being copied back.
Health	 The health of the disk drive: Good: The disk drive is good. Failed: The disk drive is failed. Error Alert: S.M.A.R.T. error alerts. Read Errors: The disk drive has unrecoverable read errors.
Capacity	The capacity of the disk drive.
Disk Type	The type of the disk drive: • [SAS HDD NL-SAS HDD SAS SSD SATA SSD] • [12.0Gb/s 6.0Gb/s 3.0Gb/s 1.5Gb/s]
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the disk drive.
Model	The model name of disk drive.

9.3.3. Operations on Thin Provisioning Pools

Most operations are described in the Configuring Storage Pools section. For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.4.3, Operations on Thick Provisioning Pools section. We describe the operations about thin provisioning in the following.

Change Thin Provisioning Policy of the Pool

Click \vee -> **Change Thin Provisioning Policy** in pools to change the policies of the thin provisioning pool. There are 6 levels of threshold percentage and the default values defined. The event log levels and actions can be changed when the usage of the pool capacity reaches the threshold. For more information, please refer to the chapter 9.2.3, Thin Provisioning Policies section



No	Threshold	Level	Action	
1	60%	Information •	Take no Action	¥
2	70%	Information *	Take no Action	*
3	80%	Information *	Take no Action	Ŧ
4	85%	Warning *	Reclaim Space	۷
5	90%	Warning •	Delete Snapshots	۲
6	95%	Warning *	De-activate Pool	۷

Figure 139: Change Thin Provisioning Policy

Table 40: Thin Provisioning Policy Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Threshold	The threshold of the pool.
Level	Define the event log level when the usage of the pool reaches the threshold. The options are: Information Warning Error
Action	 Action to take on the system when the usage of the pool reaches the threshold. The options are: Take no Action Reclaim Space Delete Snapshots De-activate Pool

Add a Disk Group into the Pool

Click \blacksquare -> Add Disk Group in one of pools to add another disk group into the pool. For more information, please refer to the chapter 9.3.4, Add a Disk Group in a Thin Provisioning Pool section.

If the auto tiering license is enabled, you can click $\nabla \rightarrow \text{Add Disk Group}$ in one of pools to transfer from the thin provisioning pool to auto tiering pool. For more information, please refer to the chapter 11.7, Transfer to Auto Tiering Pool section.



Auto	Provisioning : Fiering : Level		Enabled Disable	ed • O			
RAID	e select a RAID Level	ievel.	(MAD)		v		
Pleas	t Disks e select disks to sure ID	add a di	2 V 8. S. L.	e maximum qua Id Unit: 4224L	nitty of disk in a disk group	is 64.	
8	Enclosure ID	Slot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
6	0	1	Good	372.36 GB	SAS 550 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
()	0	2	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
協	0	3	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
10	0	4	Good	372,36 GB	SAS SSD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
*	0	6	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-600
8	0	6	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12 0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
12	0	T	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
	0	8	Glood	744.96 GB	5A5 550 12.00b/s	MICRON	5630D/C-600
靡	0	13	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
	0	14	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
8	Ð	15	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
10	0	16	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014

Figure 140: Transfer Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering

CAUTION:

The action of transferring from the thin provisioning pool to auto tiering is irreversible. Carefully consider the consequences before making this change.

Move Disk Group Member Disks

Click ▼ -> **Move Disk Group** in disk group to move the member disks of disk group to other disk drives. Select disks and then click the **OK** button.



E.	Enclosure ID	Slot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
B	. 0	1	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
i.	0	2	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
8	0	3	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
10	0	4	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
1	Ö	5	Good	744.96 GB	SAS 55D 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
6	0	6	Good	744 96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
F	0	7	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
	0	8	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
6	0	13	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
	0	14	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
8	0	15	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
1	0	16	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014

Figure 141: Move Disk Group



TIP:

The capacity after moving must be larger than the current capacity.

9.3.4. Add a Disk Group in a Thin Provisioning Pool

The Add Disk Group function adds a disk group to a pool to increase the capacity.

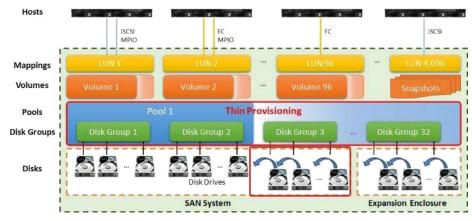


Figure 142: Add a Disk Group in a Thin Provisioning Pool



Here is an example of adding a disk group into a thin provisioning pool with 2 disks configured in RAID 1.

	Provisioning : Level		Enabled	E.				
Pleas	e select a RAID I	evel.						
RAID	Level		RAID	1				
Solor	t Disks		RAID					
Pleas	e select disks to sure ID	add a dis	RAID	3 5 SEE		disk in a disk group i	s 64.	
0	Enclosure ID	Slot	RAID		1000	Type	Manufacturer	Model
	0	1	RAID			SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
2	0	2	C RAID	30		SSD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
	0	3	RAID	50 50EE	10.000	SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
12	0	4	C RAID	60		SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
6	0	5	Good	60EE 744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
	0	6	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
	8	7	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
6	0	8	Good	744.96 GB	SAS	SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800
<u>8</u>	0	13	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
0	0	14	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
0	0	15	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
U.	0	16	Good	5.46 TB	NL-S	AS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014
			- 5000A		1	оо - нылыли	eas de rue	

1. Select a pool, click ▼ -> Add Disk Group to add a disk group in a thin provisioning pool.

Figure 143: Add a Disk Group to a Thin Provisioning Pool

- 2. Select a **RAID Level** from the drop-down list and select a **Quantity of Subgroups** if the combination RAID level is selected.
- 3. Select disks to add into a disk group. The maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64. Select an **Enclosure ID** from the drop-down list to select disks from expansion enclosures.
- 4. Click the **OK** button to add a disk group into the pool.



	Pool I	Name	Status	Health	Total	Free	Availab	le i	Thin Pro	risioning	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controlle
•	Pool	ł	Online	Good	3.64 T	8 3.64 TB	3.64 TE	F	Enabled		Disabled	0	Controller 1
Disk Gr													
	No	Status	A CONTRACT NO.	h Total	1	Free	RAID	Disk	s Used	RAID E	E Spares		
	4	Online	Good	3.27	TB	3.27 TB	RAID 5	4		NIA	C.		
	2	Ones	Gaso	01110	10 665	171 00 681	RMD 1			NIA			
10000		A PROPERTY OF	and the state of the						11				
Disks													
Disks Enclose	-	Slot	Status	Health	Capa	city Disk	Туре		Manufa	cluier	Model	r	
	-	Slot	Status Online	Health Good	Capa 372.3		Type SSD 12.0	Gb/s	Manufa SEAGA		Model ST400FM9053	90 44	

Create Pool

Figure 144: A Disk Group is Added

5. A disk group has been added into the pool.



TIP:

If auto tiering license is enabled, the thin provisioning pool without disk group of mixed disk type can be transferred to the auto tiering pool by **Add Disk Group** option. Please refer to the chapter 11.6.2, Transfer from Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering section.

9.4. Configure Volumes

This section will describe the operations of configuring volume in a thin provisioning pool.

9.4.1. Create a Volume in a Thin Provisioning Pool

Here is an example of creating a volume of thin provisioning pool.

1. Select the **Volumes** function submenu, click the **Create Volume** button.



General	Volume General Se	ttings		
Advanced	Please enter a volum	ne name and configure th	e volum	e general settings.
Summary	Volume Name :	Vol-2		2. O
	Pool Name :	Pool-2		(Available 262144 GB)
	Capacity :	100		GB *
	Volume Type :	RAID Volume	*	
	Select RAID Volu replication	ime for general RAID usa	ige or Bi	ackup Volume for backup usage such as the target volume of local clone or remo

Figure 145: Create a Volume in Thin Provisioning Pool Step 1

- 2. Enter a **Volume Name** for the pool. The maximum length of the volume name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- 3. Select a **Pool Name** from the drop-down list. It will also display the available capacity of the pool.
- 4. Enter required **Capacity**. The unit can be selected from the drop-down list.
- 5. Select **Volume Type**. The options are RAID Volume (for general RAID usage) and **Backup Volume** (for the target volume of local clone or remote replication).
- 6. Click the **Next** button to continue.

Treate Volume			
General	Volume Advanced Sett	ings	
Advanced	Please configure the voli	me advanced se	tings.
Summary	Block Size :	512 Byte	*
	Priority	High	*
	The priority is the com	parison with the c	ther volumes
	Background I/O Priority :	High	*
	Background I/O priorit	y will influence vo	lume initilization, rebuild, and migration.
	short time interval.	he system speed Mode	but comes with the risk which the data may be inconsistent between the cache and disks in a
	Enable Read-ahead The system will identif	y what is needed to be transmitted	in the video editing environment. It sacrifices a bit of performance but is stable. next, based on the content just retrieved from the disk, and then preload the data into the disk is continuous, this feature will improve performance.
Back			Next Cancel

Figure 146: Create a Volume in Thin Provisioning Pool Step 2



- 7. Volume advanced settings can also be configured optionally in this step:
 - Block Size: The options are 512 Bytes to 4,096 Bytes.
 - **Priority**: The options are High, Medium, and Low. The priority compares to other volumes. Set it as High if the volume has many I/O.
 - **Background I/O Priority**: The options are High, Medium, and Low. It will influence volume initialization, rebuild, and migration.
 - Enable Cache Mode (Write-back Cache): Check to enable cache mode function of volume. Write back optimizes the system speed but comes with the risk where the data may be inconsistent between cache and disks in one short time interval.
 - Enable Video Editing Mode: Check to enable video editing mode function. It is optimized for video editing usage. Please enable it when your application is in video editing environment. This option provides a more stable performance figure without high and low peaks but slower in average.
 - **Enable Read-ahead**: Check to enable the read ahead function of volume. The system will discern what data will be needed next based on what was just retrieved from disk and then preload this data into the disk's buffer. This feature will improve performance when the data being retrieved is sequential.
 - Enable Space Reclamation: Check to enable the space reclamation function of the volume when the pool is thin provisioning. For more information about space reclamation, please refer to the chapter 9.2.2, Space Reclamation section.
- 8. Click the **Next** button to continue.

General	Configure Volume General Se	ttings	
Advanced	Volume Name :	Vol-2	
Summary	Pool Name :	Pool-2	
	Capacity :	100 GB	
	Volume Type :	RAID Volume	
	Configure Volume Advanced	Settings	
	Block Size :	512 Byte	
	Priority :	High	
	Background I/O Priority :	High	
	Cache Mode :	Enabled	
	Video Editing Mode :	Disabled	
	Read-ahead :	Enabled	
	Space Reclamation :	Enabled	

Figure 147: Create a Volume in Thin Provisioning Pool Step 3

- 9. After confirmation at summary page, click the **Finish** button to create a volume.
- 10. The volume has been created. It will be initialized in protection RAID level (e.g., RAID 1, 3, 5, 6, 0+1, 10, 30, 50, and 60).



		Satis	Health	Capacity	Volume Type	SSD Cache	Snapshilt Space	Snapshots	Cigine	Write	Pool Name
. 34	564-2	Châte	Optimus	100-00 GB	RAID Volume	Disabled	8 MB / 0 MB	0	NIA.	WB	Pool-2

Figure 148: A Volume in Thin Provisioning Pool is Created

11. A volume has been created. If necessary, click the **Create Volume** button again to create others.



TIP:

ESOS supports instant RAID volume availability. The volume can be used immediately when it is initializing or rebuilding.



TIP:

If the pool contains some disk drives of 4Kn type, it is not available to set 512, 1024, or 2048 block size. When the case happens, it will pop up a warning message and suggest changing the block size to 4096.

9.4.2. List Volumes and Operations on Volumes

Most operations are described in the chapter 8.5, Configuring Volumes section. For more information about list volume, please refer to the chapter 8.5.2, List Volumes section. For more information about operations on volumes, please refer to the chapter 8.5.3, Operations on Volumes section. We describe the operations about thin provisioning in the following.

Change Volume Properties

Click ▼ -> Change Volume Properties to change the volume properties of the volume.



Volume Name:	Vol-2	1	
riority:	🖲 High 🔾 Mediun	n © Low	
ackground I/O Priority:	High	*	
Cache Mode:	O Write-through	ı Cache 🖲 Write-back Cache 🔾 Read-Only	Ð
/ideo Editing Mode:	Disabled	× 0	
Read-ahead:	Enabled	*	
Space Reclamation:	Enabled		
Volume Type:	RAID Volume	• 1	

Figure 149: Change Volume Properties

Reclaim Space with Thin Provisioning Pool

Click $\mathbf{\nabla}$ -> **Space Reclamation** to reclaim space from the volume when the volume is in a thin provisioning pool. For more information about space reclamation, please refer to the chapter 9.2.2, Space Reclamation section.

9.5. Configure LUN Mappings and Connect by Host Initiator

Next step, you can configure LUN mapping and connect by host initiator. For more information about LUN mapping, please refer to the chapter 8.6, Configure LUN Mappings section. For more information about host initiator, please refer to the chapter 8.7, Connect by Host Initiator section.



10. SSD Cache

This chapter describes an overview and operations of SSD cache. Now we provide two cache types, SSD read cache and read-write cache.

10.1. Overview

Traditionally, data has been stored on traditional rotating memory, or HDDs (Hard Disk Drives) and SSDs (Solid-State Drives) are mainly used for mission-critical applications that demand high-speed storage systems, however, tend to be costly. In recent years, the capacity of HDDs has increased, but their random I/O (Input / Output) has not kept pace. For some applications such as web commerce, clouds, and virtualization that require both high capacity and performance, HDDs, though capacious, simply are not fast enough and SSDs have increased capacity and have declined in cost, making them more attractive for caching in SAN storage networks.

Smart Response Technology (also known as SSD cache technology) leverages the strengths of both HDDs and SSDs, to cost-effectively meet the capacity and performance requirements of enterprise applications. Data is primarily stored on HDDs while SSDs serve as an extended HDD memory cache for many I/O operations. One of the major benefits of using SSD cache is the improved application performance, especially for workloads with frequent I/O activity. The read data of an application that is frequently accessed is copied to the SSD cache; the write data is stored to the SSD cache temporary and then flush to HDDs in bulk. So the application receives an immediate performance boost. Eterio SSD cache enables applications to deliver consistent performance by absorbing bursts of read/write loads at SSD speeds.

Another important benefit is improved TCO (Total Cost of Ownership) of the system. SSD cache copies the hot or frequency of data to SSDs in chunks. By offloading many if not most of the remaining IOPS after SSD cache, the user can fill the remainder of their storage needs with low cost, high capacity HDDs. This ratio of a small amount of SSD paired with a lot of HDD offers the best performance at the lowest cost with optimal power efficiency.

Generally, SSD read cache is particularly effective when:

- Reads are far more common than writes in the production environment, common in live database or web service applications.
- The inferior speeds of HDD read cause performance bottlenecks.
- The amount of repeatedly accessed data is smaller than the capacity of the SSD cache.



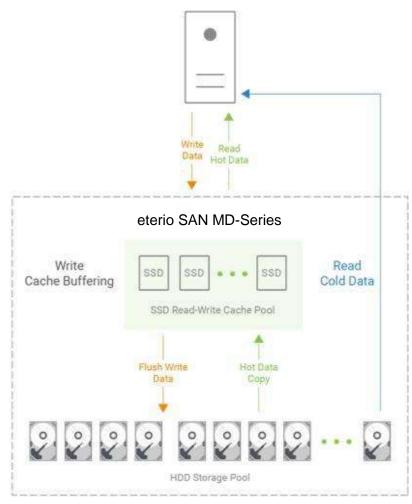


Figure 150: SSD Read and Write Cache

SSD read-write cache is particularly effective when:

- Reads and writes mix in the production environment, common in file service applications.
- The inferior speeds of HDD read and write cause performance bottlenecks.
- Same as SSD read cache case; the size of repeatedly accessed data is smaller than the capacity of the SSD cache.
- Willing to take a little risk to increase write performance because it's write cache buffering at SSD cache pool. Of course, these write data in SSD cache can be used at the next read.



10.2. Theory of Operation

SSD cache allows an SSD to function as read cache or write buffer for a HDD volume. In SSD read cache, it is a secondary cache that improves performance by keeping frequently accessed data on SSDs where they are read far more quickly than from the HDD volume. When reads or writes are performed, the data from the HDDs are copied into the SSD cache. Although the data is duplicated to SSD cache pool, it does not matter if the read cache pool is corrupted.

In SSD write cache, SSDs are a write buffering storage that improves performance by storing the write data in SSDs temporary where they are write far more quickly than to the HDD volume. And then the write data will be flushed to the HDD volume at the appropriate time. It may take risk of losing data during the period that the write data is stored in SSD cache if the SSD cache pool is corrupted. The write data has not yet written back to the HDD volume. So, the read-write cache pool needs data protection to protect the write data.



CAUTION:

Using SSD read-write cache may take risk of losing data if the SSD cache pool is corrupted. User must monitor the health of the SSD cache pool carefully.

10.2.1. System Memory and SSD Cache Capacity

SSD cache function needs system memory to store metadata. The usable capacity of SSD cache is in proportion to the size of the controller system memory. The following table is the relationship between the system memory per controller and the maximum SSD cache capacity.

System Memory per Controller	Maximum SSD Cache Capacity per System
4GB	X (Not Support)
8GB ~ 15GB	2TB
16GB ~ 31GB	4TB
32GB ~ 63GB	8TB
64GB ~ 127GB	16TB
128GB	32TB

Table 41: The Relationship between System Memory and SSD Cache Capacity





CAUTION:

SSD cache function is not supported when the system memory is under 8GB per controller.

10.2.2. SSD Cache Pool Architecture

A SSD cache pool is grouped to provide capacity for SSD cache usage of a dedicated storage pool. The maximum SSD cache pool quantity per system (either dual controller or single controller) is 4. The following is the storage architecture of SSD cache pool.

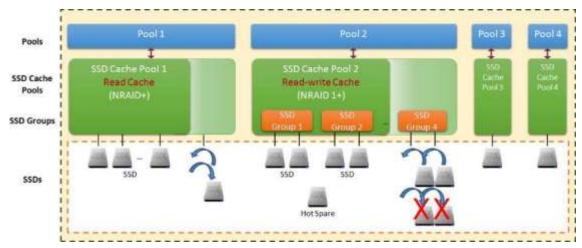


Figure 151: Storage Architecture of SSD Cache Pool

Take an example of SSD read cache; one or more SSDs with NRAID+ (which is described in the next section) are grouped into the "SSD Cache Pool 1" and assigned to the "Pool 1" for use. The maximum SSD quantity in an SSD cache pool is 8. When the SSD read cache is performing, the capacity of the SSD cache can be increased by adding an SSD or decreased by removing an SSD.

Another example of SSD read-write cache; two SSDs with NRAID 1+ (which is also described in the next section) are grouped into an SSD group. One or more SSD groups combine to the "SSD Cache Pool 2" and assigned to the "Pool 2" for use. When the SSD read-write cache is performing, the capacity of the SSD cache can be increased only by adding an SSD group with two SSDs at a time. The SSD read-write cache pool can set SSDs as dedicated hot spares. The maximum dedicated spare SSD quantity in an SSD cache pool is 4. The following table is the summary of the SSD cache parameters.



Table 42: SSD Cache Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum SSD cache pool quantity per system (either dual controller or single controller)	4
Maximum SSD quantity in an SSD cache pool	8
Maximum addressable capacity of an SSD cache pool	32TB
Maximum quantity of volume shared in an SSD cache pool	32
Maximum dedicated spare SSD quantity in an SSD cache pool	4



TIP:

Note that the capacity allocated to the SSD cache pool is not counted in the regular data storage.

The volumes in pool can be selected to enable SSD cache function. The following is the relationship between SSD cache pool and storage pool.

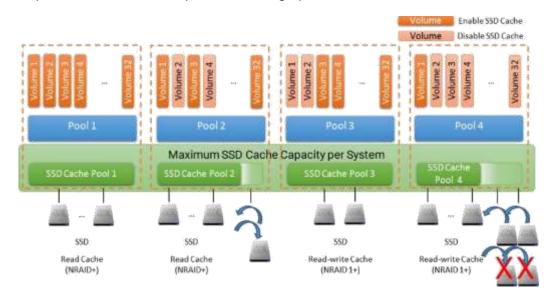


Figure 152: The Relationship between SSD Cache Pool and Storage Pool

The volumes enabled SSD cache with hot data will consume the capacity of the SSD cache pool. Users must consider which volumes are enabled according to the SSD cache resources. When the SSD cache is performing, you can enable or disable the volume. The maximum quantity of volume shared in an SSD cache pool is 32.



10.2.3. RAID Level of SSD Cache Pool

SSD read cache with NRAID+

Generally, SSD read cache uses NRAID (Non-RAID) or RAID 0 without data protection to create the SSD cache storage space. Our SSD read cache technology uses NRAID+ which is parallel NRAID without striping.

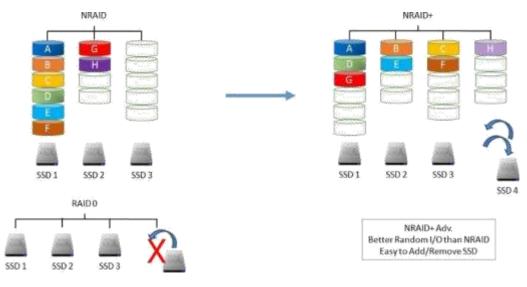


Figure 153: SSD Read Cache with NRAID+

NRAID is a method of combining the free space on multiple disk drives to create a spanned capacity. A NRAID is generally a spanned volume only, as it can contain disk drives of various types and various sizes. RAID 0 consists of striping, without mirroring or parity. Adding a disk drive into RAID 0 needs to re-stripe the data. For SSD cache, it will have terrible performance when performing SSD cache and migrating RAID 0 at the same time. Let alone remove a disk drive.

Compare to the NRAID or RAID 0, NRAID+ distributes cache data over all SSDs. This NRAID+ technology combines with the advantages of NRAID and has better random I/O than NRAID. It also has the advantage of easy to add/remove SSDs from the SSD cache pool to increase/decrease the capacity.

Although the SSD read cache is a technique of duplicating data. If the SSD cache pool corrupts, the original data will be safe but stop SSD read cache.



SSD read-write cache with NRAID 1+

SSD read-write cache needs data protection, so it usually uses RAID 1 or RAID 10 level to create the SSD cache storage space. Our SSD read-write cache technology uses NRAID 1+ which is parallel NRAID with mirror.

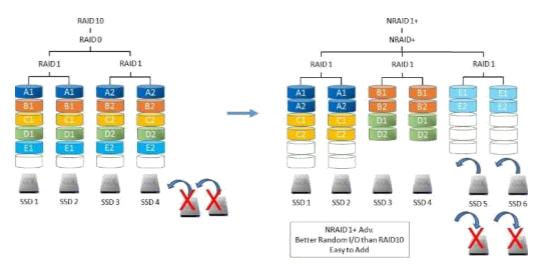


Figure 154: SSD Read-write Cache with NRAID 1+

RAID 10 creates a striped set from a series of mirrored drives. The same, adding pair disk drives into RAID 10 needs to re-stripe the data. So, it is hard to add SSDs into SSD cache pool.

Compare to the RAID 10, NRAID 1+ distributes cache data over all mirrored SSDs. This NRAID 1+ technology has the data protection and better random I/O than RAID 10. It also has the advantage of easy to add SSDs into the SSD cache pool to increase the capacity. In this case, we disallow the SSDs to be removed from the SSD cache pool because it has the risk of losing write cache data.

If one SSD failure occurs in the SSD cache pool, the status of the SSD cache pool will be changed to degrade. It will stop write cache and start flushing write cache data into HDDs. At this time, read cache data is still working but no more new read cache data will be added into SSD cache pool. The SSD read-write cache pool can set SSDs as dedicated hot spares to prevent SSD cache pool failure. After inserting an SSD as a hot spare, the SSD read-write cache pool will be rebuilt until it is completed. And then it reverts to SSD read-write cache service.



10.2.4. Read/Write Cache Cases

The following describes the cases of read/write cache. In SSD read cache, the processes of read/write data will be disassembled to the following cases.

- Read Data with Cache Miss
- Read Data with Cache Hit
- Write Data in SSD Read Cache

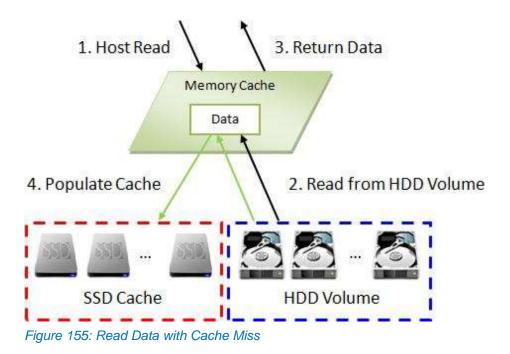
Besides, in SSD read-write cache, the processes of read data are the same as above. But the write data is different. The processes of write data will be described on following case.

• Write Data in SSD Read-write Cache

Each case will be described below.

Read Data with Cache Miss

The following figure shows how the controller handles a host read request when some or all the data are not in the SSD cache.





These steps are:

- 1. A host requests to read data. The system will check if the requested data is in memory cache or SSD cache. If not, it is called cache miss.
- 2. Data is read from the HDD volume because of cache miss.
- 3. The requested data is returned to the host. And the system will check whether the requested data is hot data.
- 4. If it is, the SSD cache is populated.

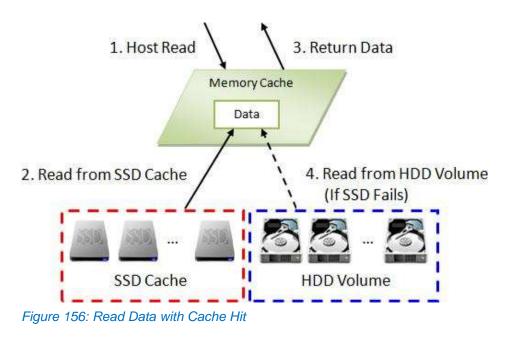


INFORMATION:

The actions that read data from the HDD and then write to the SSD are called populating the cache. For more information, please refer to the chapter 10.2.5, Populating the Cache in the next section.

Read Data with Cache Hit

The following figure shows how the controller handles a host read request when the data is in the SSD cache.



These steps are:

- 1. A host requests a read data. The system finds that the data is in SSD cache, so it is called cache hit.
- 2. Data is read from the SSD cache.
- 3. The requested data is returned to the host.
- 4. If there is an SSD cache error, data is read from the HDD volume.



Write Data in SSD Read Cache

The following figure shows how the controller handles a host write request in SSD read cache. The write data can also be frequently accessed data and populated into SSD cache for next read.

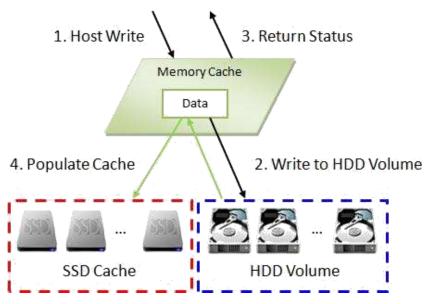


Figure 157: Write Data in SSD Read Cache

These steps are:

- 1. A host requests to write data.
- 2. Data is written to the HDD volume.
- 3. The status is returned to the host.
- 4. The SSD cache is populated if the write threshold is reached.

Write Data in SSD Read-write Cache

The following figure shows how the controller handles a host write request in SSD read-write cache. The write data stays in the SSD cache for a while and will be flushed to the HDD volume at the appropriate time.



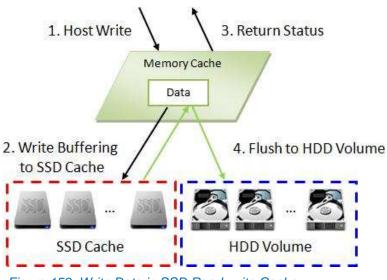


Figure 158: Write Data in SSD Read-write Cache

These steps are:

- 1. A host requests to write data.
- 2. Data is written to the SSD cache.
- 3. The status is returned to the host.
- 4. Data will be flushed to the HDD volume at the appropriate time.

Flush Write Data to HDD Volume

In SSD read-write cache, the write data will be flushed to the HDD volume in the following situations.

- Flush data to the HDD volumes before the SSD cache pool is deleted.
- Flush data to the HDD volumes before the related volume is disabled.
- Flush data when the system is idle.



CAUTION:

It will take times to flush data from SSD cache to HDD volumes. Please do not remove SSDs before complete flushing; otherwise it may take risk of losing data.

In addition, to avoid taking a long time to complete flushing, please make sure the front I/O traffic is not heavy when deleting SSD cache pool.



TIP:

It won't flush data to the HDD volumes when system goes shutdown or reboots.



10.2.5. Populating the Cache

The actions that read data from the HDD and then write to the SSD are called populating the cache. Typically, this is a background operation that immediately follows a host read or write operation. As the goal of the cache is to store frequently accessed data, not every I/O operation should trigger a cache population, but only ones that pass a certain threshold, implemented as a counter. There are both a populate-on-read threshold, and a populate-on-write threshold.

Populate-on-read Threshold

When the same data block to be read over the threshold, it is called hot data and populated to the SSD cache. The threshold must be greater than or equal to 1 in SSD read cache or SSD read-write cache. The value is forbidden to set 0 because of no action in read cache. The maximum of the threshold is 4. If larger than 4, the frequently accessed data is hard into SSD cache, so there is no obvious effect.

Populate-on-write Threshold

When the same data block to be written over the threshold, it is called hot data and populated to the SSD cache. The threshold must be greater than or equal to 0. If it is set to 0, no action is performed for a write cache. The value must be greater than or equal to 1 in SSD read-write cache. The value is forbidden to set 0 because of no action in write cache. The same as above, the maximum of the threshold is 4. If larger than 4, there is no obvious effect.

Operation Process

Each cache block on HDD volume has a read and write counter associated. When a host requests to read data located in that cache block, the read count is increased. If the data is not found in the cache and the read count is greater than or equal to the populate-on-read threshold, then a cache-populate operation is performed concurrently with the host read operation. If a cache hit occurs, the data is immediately returned from the SSD cache and a populate operation is not performed. If the read count is smaller than the threshold, a populate operation is not performed.

Write cases are the same scenario as read.



10.2.6. SSD Cache Tuning

The SSD cache can be tuned to maximize its efficiency base on application usage. Cache block size, populate-on-read threshold and populate-on-write-threshold are the main parameters.

Cache Block Size

A large cache block suits applications where frequently accessed data is close to each other, known as a high locality of reference. A large cache block will also fill up the SSD cache quickly - this is known as the warm-up time. After the cache is warmed up, the performance would be quite good for applications with high locality of reference. Such as the file system or web service usage, the frequently accessed data are based on some concentrated files which are usually in large block size. However large cache blocks will also generate larger I/O overhead, increasing response time, especially for cache misses.

A smaller cache block size suits application with data that is less localized, meaning the data is accessed more randomly, such as database usage. The SSD cache will fill up slower, but with more cache blocks, there is greater chance of a cache hit, especially for data with less locality of reference. With a smaller cache block size, cache usage is usually less than with a larger cache block size, but overhead is less, so the penalty for cache misses is less severe.

Population Threshold

The population threshold is the quantity of accesses at which point that cache block is copied to the SSD Cache. A higher number ensures that the cache only stores frequently accessed data so there will not be much cache turnover however it also means the cache will take longer to warm up and be fully effective. A lower number means the cache is warmed up quickly but may cause excessive cache populations. A populate on read threshold of 2 is sufficient for many applications. Populate-on-write is useful when data that is written to is often read soon after. This is often the case in file systems. Other applications, such as database software, does not have this tendency so populate on write may sometimes even be disabled.

I/О Туре	Block Size (Sectors)	Populate-on-Read Threshold	Populate-on-Write Threshold
Database	1MB (2,048)	2	0
File System	2MB (4,096)	2	2
Web Service	4MB (8,192)	2	0
Customization	1MB/2MB/4MB	≥ 1 and ≤ 4	≥ 0 and ≤ 4

Table 43: I/O Type Table for SSD Read Cache



Table 44: I/C	Type Table	for SSD	Read-write Cache
---------------	------------	---------	------------------

I/О Туре	Block Size (Sectors)	Populate-on-Read Threshold	Populate-on-Write Threshold
Database	1MB (2,048)	2	1
File System	2MB (4,096)	2	1
Web Service	4MB (8,192)	2	1
Customization	1MB/2MB/4MB	≥ 1 and ≤ 4	≥ 1 and ≤ 4

As you can see, there are tradeoffs for increasing or decreasing each parameter. Understanding the data locality of the application is essential and it can be useful to do some field testing to see what works best.

10.3. Configure SSD Cache

The **SSD Cache** provides **SSD Cache Pools** and **SSD Cache Statistics** function tabs to configure and monitor SSD cache. This section will describe the operations of configuring SSD cache.



10.3.1. Enable SSD Cache License

The SSD cache function is optional. Before using it, you have to enable SSD cache license. Select the **Update** function tab in the **Maintenance** function submenu, download **Request License** file and send to your local sales to obtain a License Key. After getting the license key, click the **Choose File** button to select it, and then click the **Apply** button to enable. When the license is enabled, please reboot the system. Each license key is unique and dedicated to a specific system. If you have already enabled, this option will be invisible.



ocal sales to get a License Key.	
Choose File No file chosen	
4 <u></u>	
	ocal sales to get a License Key.

Figure 160: Enable SSD Cache License

10.3.2. Create an SSD Cache Pool

Here is an example of creating an SSD cache pool with 2 SSDs configured in SSD read cache.

1. Select the **SSD Cache** function submenu; click the Create **SSD Cache Pool** button. It will scan available SSDs first.

Germani	\$50	Cache Proc							
Enable SSD Cashe	Pisso	wase enter a pool name and select the cache type.							
Summary	SSD Cache Pool Name			REPAR	RCPuel-1				
	Cache Type : I/O Type :			* Rea	d Cashe (NRAI)	(H)	Read-write Cache (NRAID 1+)		
				Distati	Database +				
	Car	Cache Block Size :				÷			
	Pop	ulate-on-read Th	blorker	2		*			
	1.1	ulate on read Th ulate on write Th		2		* *			
	Pop	ulate-on-write Th				•			
	Pop	ulale-on-arite Di 1 55709	reshold		14)	•			
	Pop	ulale-on-arite Di 1 55709	reshold	u	(d) Capacity	* * Disk Type	Manufacturer	Mader	
	Papa Salar Enclo	ulale on-write Th 1 55De ouro 10	biodeen	0 UNI: 1512		* * Dak Type SAS SSD 12.0Gols	Manufacturer SEAGATE	Nipder \$7400PM0063	
	Pape Salar Enclo	ulate on write Th 1 557% ours 0. Enclosure 0.	biodeen	e Unit: XSY2 Health	Capacity		Contraction of the second	A DECEMBER OF A	

Figure 161: Create an SSD Cache Pool Step 1

- 2. Enter an **SSD Cache Pool Name** for the pool. Maximum length of the pool name is 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- 3. Select the **Cache Type** as Read Cache (NRAID+)1.
- 4. Select an **I/O Type** from the drop-down list according to your application.
- 5. Please select SSDs for SSD cache pool. Maximum quantity of disk is 8. Select an **Enclosure** from the drop-down list to select SSDs from expansion enclosures.
- 6. Click the **Next** button to continue.



General Enable SSD Cache		ct a Pool	nable SSD	cache. The r	ool can not be change	a after selection			
Summary	Please select a pool to enable SSD cache. The pool can not be change after selection. Pool Name: Pool-1 *								
		ct Volumes	olumee to or	nabla SSD es	iche, uncheck volume	e to disable			
		Volume Name	Status	Health	Capacity	a to disable.			
	1	Vol-1	Online	Optimal	100.00 GB				
		Vol-2	Online	Optimal	100.00 GB				

Figure 162: Create an SSD Cache Pool Step 2

- 7. Select a **Pool Name** from the drop-down list which lists available pools to be assigned to.
- 8. Within the pool, check **Volumes** to enable SSD cache, uncheck **Volumes** to disable.
- 9. Click the **Next** button to continue.

Create SSD Cache Pool			
General General Enable SSD Cache Summary	SSD Cache Pool Properties SSD Cache Pool Name Cache Type : Quantity of SSD : Capacity I/O Type : Enabled Pool and Volumes	RCPool-1 Read Cache (NRAID+) 2 744.72 GB Database	
	Pool Name : Quantity of Enabled Volume :	Pool-1 2	
Back			Finish Cancel

Figure 163: Create an SSD Cache Pool Step 3

10. After confirmation at summary page, click the **Finish** button to create a pool.



	SSD Cache Pool Name	Status	Health	Total	Cache Type	RAID	Pool Name	VO Type
Ŧ	RCPool-1	Online	Good	744.72 GB	Read Cache	NRAID+	Pool-1	Database

Figure 164: An SSD Cache Pool is Created

- 11. An SSD cache pool has been created.
- 12. Follow the step 1 to 11 to create another SSD cache pool with Read-write Cache (NRAID 1+) and set the I/O type as File System.

	SSD Cache Pool Name	Status	Health	Total	Cache Type	RAID	Pool Name	I/O Type
T	RCPool-1	Online	Good	744.72 GB	Read Cache	NRAID+	Pool-1	Database
T	RWCPool-2	Online	Good	372.36 GB	Read Write Cache	NRAID 1+	Pool-2	File System

Create SSD Cache Pool

Figure 165: Another SSD Cache Pool is Created



TIP:

The Create SSD Cache Pool button will be grayed out when meet the following conditions.

- There are no available SSDs to create an SSD cache pool.
- There are no available pools which can be assigned to the SSD cache pool including the status of the pool is Migrating, Moving, Offline or the health of the pool is Failed.

10.3.3. List SSD Cache Pools

Select one of the SSD cache pools, it will display the related SSDs and enabled volumes. The pool properties can be configured by clicking the functions button ▼ to the left side of the specific pool.



Second	SSD Cache Pool Name	Status	Health	Total	Cache Type	RAID	Pool Name	PO Type
	TERMI 1	Otina	Gaild	744 72 (38)				
	RWCPool-2	Online	Good	372.36 GB	Read Write Cache	NRAID 1+	Pool-2	File System

S SDs

No.	Enclosure ID	Slot	Status	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
1	0	1	Online	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
2	0	2	Online	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0063

Enabled Volumers

Volume Name	Status	Health	Capacity	Total Cache Used	Read Cache Used	Write Cache Used
V64-2	Onine	Optimal	100.00 GB	0 MB	0 MB	0 MB
Vol-1	Online	Optimal	100.00 GB	0 MB	0 MB	0 MB

Create SSO Cache Pool

Figure 166: List SSD Cache Pools

This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 45: SSD Cache Pool Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
SSD Cache Pool Name	The SSD Cache pool names.
Status	 The status of the SSD Cache pool: On-line: The SSD Cache pool is online. Offline: The SSD Cache pool is offline. Rebuilding: The SSD Cache pool is being rebuilt. Flushing: The SSD Cache pool is being flushed.
Health	 The health of the SSD Cache pool: Good: The SSD Cache pool is good. Failed: The SSD Cache pool is failed. Degraded: The SSD Cache pool is not healthy and not complete. The reason could be missing or failed SSDs.
Total	Total capacity of the SSD Cache pool.
Cache Type	The SSD Cache type:Disabled.Enabled.
RAID	 The RAID level of the SSD cache pool: NRAID+: SSD read cache. NRAID 1+: SSD read-write cache.
Pool Name	Which pool the SSD cache pool assigns to.
І/О Туре	 The I/O type of the SSD cache pool: Database. File System. Web Service. Customization.



Table 46: SSDs Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
	The number of the SSD or SSD group:
No.	 SSD Read Cache: The number of the SSD.
	 SSD Read-write Cache: The number of the SSD group.
Enclosure ID	The enclosure ID.
Slot	The position of the SSD.
	The status of the SSD:
	On-line: The SSD is online.
Status	 Missing: The SSD is missing in the pool.
	Rebuilding: The SSD is being rebuilt.
	Flushing: The SSD is being flushed.
	The health of the SSD:
	Good: The SSD is good.
Health	Failed: The SSD is failed.
	Error Alert: S.M.A.R.T. error alerts.
	Read Errors: The SSD has unrecoverable read errors.
Capacity	The capacity of the SSD.
	The type of the disk drive:
Disk Type	• [SAS SSD SATA SSD]
	• [12.0Gb/s 6.0Gb/s 3.0Gb/s 1.5Gb/s]
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the SSD.
Model	The model name of SSD.

Table 47: Enabled Volume Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Volume Name	The volume is enabled SSD cache.
Status	 The status of the volume: On-line: The volume is online. Offline: The volume is offline. Rebuilding: The volume is being rebuilt. Flushing: The volume is being flushed.
Health	 The health of the volume: Optimal: The volume is working well and there is no failed disk in the RG. Failed: The pool disk of the volume has single or multiple failed disks than its RAID level can recover from data loss. Degraded: At least one disk from the pool of the volume is failed or plugged out. Partially optimal: The volume has experienced recoverable read errors. After passing parity check, the health will become Optimal.
Capacity	The capacity of the volume.
Total Cache Used	The capacity of total cache used.
Write Cache Used	The capacity of write cache used.



10.3.4. Operations on SSD Cache Pools

The options available in this tab:

Add or Remove SSDs

For an SSD read cache, click \vee -> Add / Remove SSDs to add into or remove SSDs from the SSD cache pool. Check SSDs to add into the SSD cache pool and uncheck SSDs to remove from the SSD cache pool.

ŝ	Cache Pool Name	65	RCPuel-1					
ch.	e Type :		Read Cat	he (NRAID+)				
Tapacity 744.72 GB			1					
ŝ	C SMDs							
	and the second			2				
-	k SSDs to add int	o the SSC	cache pool	and uncheck 3	SSDs to remove from th	e SSD cache pool		
	In a gallande							
968	eure 🗊 🛛 (He	ead Uni	t: 4224L)					
8	Enclosure ID	Slot	Heath	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model	
	the second s	1	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
8	8		distantion-	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12 006/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0083	
98 98		2	Good	218.00.000				
	0	2	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12 6Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-805	
8	0				SAS SSD 12 SGb/s SAS SSD 12 SGb/s	MICRON MICRON	5630DC-800 5630DC-800	
8 8	0 0	5	Good	744.96 GB			and a transmission	
18 年 18 日	0 0 0	5	Good Good	744.96 GB 744.96 GB	5AS 5SD 12 5Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800	

Figure 167: Add / Remove SSDs from the SSD Cache Pool

For an SSD read-write cache, click ▼ -> Add SSDs to add SSDs into the SSD cache pool. Please select two SSDs at a time to add into the SSD cache pool.

SD (Cache Pool Name	ĕ	RWCPool	2						
ache	е Туре		Read-write Cache (NRAID 1+)							
Capacity 372.36 GB										
elec	T SSDs									
22	e select two SSD			4. 665	53376					
	e serent one dates	a de la terra		and some search						
	sure ID: 0 (He									
nclo					r Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model			
nclo K	sure ID 0 (He Enclosure ID	ead Uni	t: 4224L))	* Disk Type	Manufacturer MICRON	Model \$630DC-800			
nclo R R	sure ID 0 (He Enclosure ID	ead Uni	t: 4224L) Health	Capacity 744.96 GB	* Disk Type	C. C				

Figure 168: Add SSDs into the SSD Cache Pool



Delete an SSD Cache Pool

Click $\mathbf{\nabla} \rightarrow \mathbf{Delete}$ to delete the SSD cache pool. If deleting an SSD read-write cache pool, it will take times to flush data from SSDs to HDDs. The SSD cache pool will be deleted after flushed, otherwise the data may be corrupt.

More Information of the SSD Cache Pool

Click ▼ -> More Information to show the detail information of the SSD cache pool.

10.4. Monitor SSD Cache Statistics

This section will describe the monitoring of SSD cache statistics.



Select the **SSD Cache Statistics** function tab in the **SSD Cache** function submenu to monitor the SSD cache statistics. Here is an example of monitoring the volume of the SSD read-write cache pool.

1. Select an **SSD Cache Pool Name** and select an **Enabled Volumes** which you want to monitor.



SSD Cache F	Pool Name :	RWCPool-2	Ψ.
SSD Cache 1	Type :	Read Cache (I	NRAID+)
SSD Cache F	Pool Capacity :	744.72 GB	
Pool Name :		Pool-2	
Enabled Volu	imes :	Vol-3	٠
Cache Used			
Current	Avg. 1 Day	Avg. 1 Week	Avg. 1 Month
100.00 GB	99.99 GB	99.99 GB	99.99 GB
125000			
100000			
Cache Used (MB) 00005			
පී ද 50000 —			
25000			



Cache Hits

Current	Avg. 1 Day	Avg. 1 Week	Avg. 1 Month
133145	9003 k	0 k	0 k



Cache Hit Ratio

Current	Avg. 1 Day	Avg. 1 Week	Avg. 1 Month
100.00 %	88.24 %	0.00 %	0.00 %







2. The SSD cache statistics include **Cache Used**, **Cache Hits**, and **Cache Hit Ratio**. Each item has current value, average 1-day value, average 1 week value, and average 1 month value. The diagram displays the current value with 30 seconds refresh and total 4 hours.

Column Name	Description					
Cache Used	How much capacity of the SSD cache pool is used by the volume? Unit is MB, GB, or TB.					
Cache Hits	How many cache hits occurred by the volume? Unit is the number of times					
Cache Hit Ratio	How many caches hit ratio occurred by the volume? Unit is percentage.					

Table 48: SSD Cache Statistics Descriptions

10.5. SSD Cache Notices

The following are some notices about SSD cache.

- To support SSD cache 2.0, the resources will be redistributed. So, executing COLD REBOOT is necessary after upgrade from firmware 1.0.x to 1.1.0.
- The SSD cache is optional; the SSD cache license can be extended to SSD cache 2.0 with read and write cache.
- The data structure of the SSD cache 2.0 is re-designed from the previous SSD cache. After upgrade to firmware 1.1.0 with SSD cache 2.0, you must configure SSD cache again if you have already enabled SSD cache in firmware 1.0.x.



11. Auto Tiering

This chapter describes an overview and operations of auto tiering.

11.1. Overview

From the perspective of storage features, the performance of SSD is high, but the cost is also high per GB. Relatively speaking, the cost of traditional hard drive is low, so as performance is relatively poor. If we follow the 80/20 rule to configure storage systems, all-SSD configuration is unreasonable for all but the most intensive applications. In fact, SSD will be needed in only a small part for most typical applications, regardless of whether a critical application, thus giving SSD resources for general storage needs is hugely cost-prohibitive. Although traditional hard disk performance is enough for general applications which I/O requirements are not high, the traditional all-hard-drive configuration is also gradually being inadequate.

On the other hand, the data itself has a lifecycle. Since the data during its life cycle, it has experienced different levels of activity. In common usage, when creating the data, it is usually used. As the age of the data increases, it is accessed less often.

The Solution

Therefore, to balance performance and cost factors, adapting hybrid storage architecture with a mixture of SSD and traditional HDD seems to be the most reasonable approach for modern IT environments. Generally, SSD-based storage capacity in 10 to 15% of the total storage capacity should be enough to fulfill the requirements of critical high I/O applications. An automated tiering pool is a simple and elegant solution for dynamically matching storage requirements with changes in the frequency of data access.



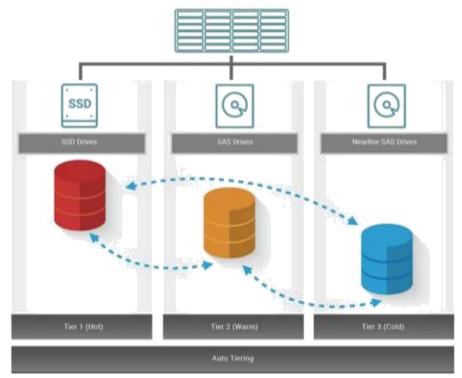


Figure 172: Auto Tiering Pool

11.1.1. Tier Categories

As the name suggestion, auto tiering must have two tiers at least. Automated tiering pool segregated disk drives into three categories for dual controllers and four for single controller.

- Tier 1: SSD drives for extreme performance tier
- Tier 2: SAS drives (15K or 10K RPM SAS HDD) for performance tier
- Tier 3: Nearline SAS drives (7.2K or lower RPM SAS HDD) for capacity tier
- Tier 4: SATA drives for capacity tier (for single controller only, not recommended)



Figure 173: 3 Levels of Tiered Storage



Tier 1 / SSD Tier / Extreme Performance Tier

Use the SSD tier when response time and performance are the most important criteria for storage. This tier uses flash technology that does not contain moving parts. This revolutionary technology eliminates the rotation latencies and can improve performance and save energy significantly.

Compared to traditional spinning drives, SSD drives have higher cost per gigabyte, but lower per IO cost. For the best practice, use the SSD drive to get data that requires fast response time and high IOPS. Auto tiering enables you to optimize the use of these high-performance resources because it automatically relocates "hot" data to the SSD tier.

Tier 2 / SAS HDD Tier / Performance Tier

Use the SAS HDD tier to achieve a combination of performance and capacity. The SAS HDD tier provides high levels of performance, reliability, and capacity. SAS HDD stores data on a series of fast rotating disks based on mechanical hard disk drive technology.

This tier includes 15K and 10K RPM spinning drives, which are valuable because it provides a high-level performance with consistent response time, high throughput and good bandwidth at moderate price.

Tier 3 / NL-SAS HDD Tier / Capacity Tier

Use the NL-SAS HDD tier to reduce the cost per GB of data. This tier consists of 7.2K or lower RPM SAS HDD which is designed to achieve the maximum capacity at an appropriate performance level. While NL-SAS HDDs have slower speeds than SAS HDDs, NL-SAS HDDs can significantly reduce power consumption and extend capacity in more expensive and higher performance storage tiers.

In a typical system, most of the application data has very little I/O activity. Because NL-SAS HDDs cost less per GB, they are the most appropriate media type for the "cold" data. NL-SAS HDDs consume less power than SAS HDDs and provide total cost of ownership improvement that take into purchase cost.



11.1.2. Flexible RAID and Disk Configurations

Auto Tiering 2.0 supports flexible RAID and disk configurations. You can create each tier (disk group) with different RAID level and different quantity of disk. For example, SSD tier uses 4 disks with RAID 10 for extreme performance, SAS tier uses 6 disks with RAID 6, and NL-SAS tier uses 8 disks with RAID 5 for capacity. This feature is very important for IT administrator to arrange storage plan flexibly.

RAID Configuration		
Please select RAID levels.		
SSD Tier		
RAID Level :	RAID 10	Ŧ
Quantity of Subgroups :	2	٣
Quantity of SSD Disks :	4	
SAS Tier		
RAID Level :	RAID 6	۲
Quantity of SAS Disks :	6	
NL-SAS Tier		
RAID Level :	RAID 5	٣
Quantity of NL-SAS Disks :	8	

Figure 174: Flexible RAID and Disk Configurations

11.2. Theory of Operation

Auto tiering is the automated progression or demotion of data across different tiers (types) of storage devices and media. The movement of data takes place in an automated way with the help of software and is assigned to the ideal storage media according to performance and capacity requirements. It also includes the ability to define rules and policies that dictate if and when data can be moved between the tiers, and in many cases provides the ability to pin data to tiers permanently or for specific periods of time.



11.2.1. Auto Tiering Architecture

A newly created auto tiering pool is based on thin provisioning technology. Each tier works based on one or more disk groups. The following is the storage architecture of an auto tiering pool.

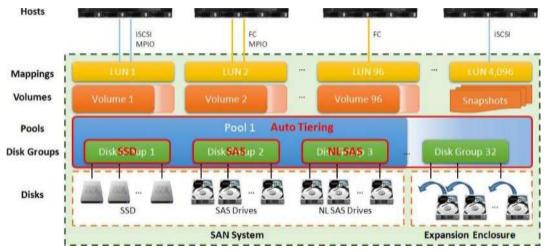


Figure 175: Storage Architecture of Auto Tiering Pool

To increase the capacity of an auto tiering pool, any tier (disk group) which contains either one tier of SSDs, SAS HDDs, or NL-SAS HDDs can be added to the pool any time. An auto tiering pool can have up to 32 disk groups with each disk group contains up to 64 disk drives. And the maximum disk drive quantity in a pool is 256. The maximum addressable capacity of each disk group is 64TB. So, the maximum capacity in a system is 256TB. For more information about pool operation, please refer to the chapter 11.3, Configuring Auto Tiering Pools section.



Table 49: Auto Tiering Pool Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum disk group quantity in a pool	32
Maximum disk drive quantity in a disk group	64
Maximum RAID EE spare quantity in a disk group	8
Maximum disk drive quantity in a pool (include dedicated spares)	256
Maximum pool quantity per system	64
Maximum dedicated spare quantity in a pool	8
Maximum tiers (include SSD, SAS HDD, NL-SAS HDD)	3
Maximum addressable capacity of a disk group	64TB
Maximum addressable capacity of an auto tiering pool	256TB
Maximum addressable capacity of total auto tiering pools (include thin provisioning pools)	1,024TB
Provisioning granularity	1GB

By design, the auto tiering feature allows selecting policies that define how data are moved between different tiers, and in many cases provides the ability to pin data to tiers permanently or for specific periods of time.

Auto tiering storage is the assignment of different categories of data to different disk types. It operates based on relocating the most active data up to the highest available tier and the least active data down to the lowest tier. Auto tiering works based on an allocation unit (granularity) of 1GB and relocates data by moving the entire unit to the appropriate tier, depending on the tiering policy selected for that particular volume.

To ensure sufficient space in the higher tiers, 10% of the space is reserved in each higher tier to prepare for the data allocation for those tiering policies which would allocate initial space in highest available tiers. By reclaiming this 10% headroom, the least active units within each tier move to lower tiers. The whole mechanism of auto tiering contains three steps, statistic collection by accessed counts, ranking hotness data by the statistic collection, and then relocation data via ranking.



11.2.2. Intelligent Auto Tiering Mechanism

Auto tiering storage management system manages the data relocation and monitors the data hotness ratio using half-life coefficient and advanced ranking algorithm. It operates on three major functions.

Statistics Collection

The volume space is divided into units of equal size in which the hotness is collected and analyzed per hour. Activity level of a sub LUN is determined by counting the quantity of read and write access on the sub LUN. Logical volume manager maintains a cumulative I/O count and weights each I/O by how recently it arrived. The new coming I/O is given a full weight. After approximately 24 hours, the weight of this IO is nearly cut in half and continues to decrease. The reduction weight is processing per hour by our precision algorism. This statistics collection occurs continuously in the background for auto tiering pool.

Ranking

This analysis produces a rank ordering of each sub LUN within the pool. Note that the policies of volumes would affect how sub LUNs are ranked.

After analysis, the system would generate following information for each tier:

- The amount of data to be moved up
- The amount of data to be moved down
- The amount of data to be moved into a tier.



TIP:

The hotness analysis process which includes statistics collection and ranking may take minutes to complete.

Relocation

According to the hotness analysis, relocation is processed during the user-defined relocation window, which is the number of minutes given to the relocation process. When the window closes, the relocation process would stop relocating data. The other parameter is relocation rate which controls speed of the relocation process. Valid value of relocation rate is Fast, Medium, and Slow.

Auto tiering promotes sub LUNs according to the candidate list that it created in the analysis stage. During relocation, it prioritizes relocating sub LUNs to higher tiers. At the same time, sub LUNs are only relocated to higher tiers if the space they occupy is required for a higher priority. Using the mechanism, auto tiering makes sure that the higher performing drives are always used.



During I/O, as data is written to a pool, auto tiering attempts to move it to the higher tiers if space is available and the tiering policy allows for it. As we describe before, the relocation process will keep 10% of the free space in all tiers. This space is reserved for any new allocations of higher priority sub LUNs before the next relocation. Lower tiers are used for capacity when needed. The entire relocation process is complete automatically based on the user-defined relocation schedule, or manually if user triggers by himself. The following figure provides an illustration of how auto tiering can improve sub LUN placement in a pool.

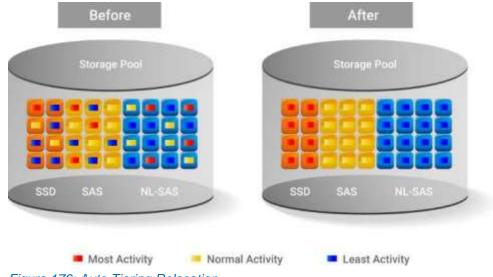


Figure 176: Auto Tiering Relocation

11.2.3. Tiering Policies

For a best performance in various environments, auto tiering has a completely automated feature that implements a set of tiering polices. Tiering policies determine how new allocations and ongoing relocations should apply within a volume for those requirements. Auto tiering uses an algorithm to make data relocation decisions based on the activity level of each unit. It ranks the order of data relocation across all volumes within each separate pool. The system uses this information in combination with the tiering policy per volume to create a candidate list for data movement. The following volume policies are available:

Auto Tiering (Default)

It allows moving a small percentage of the "hot" data to higher tiers while maintaining the rest of the data in the lower tiers. This policy automatically relocates data to the most appropriate tier based on the activity level of each data. Sub LUNs are relocated based on the highest performance disk drives available and its hotness. Although this setting relocates data based on the performance statistics of the volume, the volume sets with "Highest available Tier" take precedence. Initial space is allocated in the tier which is healthier and has more free capacity than other tiers, then relocated according to hotness of the data. This is the recommended policy and it is the default policy for each newly created volume.



Start Highest then Auto Tiering

This takes advantage of the both "Highest Available Tier" and "Auto Tiering" policies. "Start Highest then Auto Tiering" sets the preferred tier for initial data allocation to the highest performing disks with available space, and then it relocates the volume's data based on the performance statistics and the auto-tiering algorithm. With this tiering policy, less active data is moved to lower tiers, making room for more active data in the higher tiers. Initial space is allocated in highest available tier first, then relocated according to hotness of the data.

Highest Available Tier

Use this policy when quick response times are a priority. This tier is effective for volumes which require high levels of performance whenever they are accessed. The policy starts with the "hottest" first and places them in the highest available tier until the tier's capacity or performance capability limit is hit. Then it places the sub LUNs into the second higher tier. Initial space is allocated in highest available tier. Auto tiering would prioritize sub LUNs with highest available tier selected above all other settings.

Lowest Tier

Use this policy when cost effectiveness is the highest priority. With this policy, data is initially placed on the lowest available tier with capacity. Select this policy for volumes that are not performance sensitive or response-time sensitive. Regardless of their activity level, all sub LUN of these volumes will remain on the lowest storage tier available in their pool. Data of volumes with "Lowest tier" policy would always reside in the lowest tier. Changing policy of a volume with data in higher tiers to "Lowest tier" would cause all its data in higher tier to be relocated down to the lowest tier.

No Data Movement

If a volume is configured with this policy, no sub LUN provisioned to the volumes is relocated across tiers. Data remains in its current position but can still be relocated within the tier. The system still collects statistics on these sub LUNs after the tiering policy is changed. Initial space is allocated in the tier which is healthier and has more free capacity than other tiers. No relocation would be performed in a volume which selects "No data movement" tiering policy.



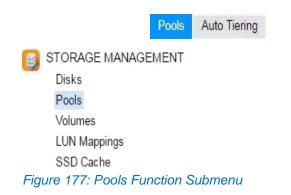
The following table summarizes the tiering policies.

Tiering Policy	Description
Auto Tiering	Sets the initial data placement to the optimized tier (disk group) and then relocates the data based on the statistics such that data is relocated among tiers according to the I/O activity.
Start Highest then Auto Tiering	First sets the preferred tier for the initial data placement to the highest tiers with available space, then relocates the data based on the statistics and the auto tiering algorithm.
Highest Available Tier	Sets the preferred tier for the initial data placement to the highest tiers with available space, and so as the succeeding data relocation.
Lowest Tier	Sets the preferred tier for the initial data placement to the lowest tiers with available space, and so as the succeeding data relocation.
No Data Movement	Sets the preferred tier for the initial data to the optimized tier and retain the data without movement.

Table 50: Summary of Tiering Policies

11.3. Configure Auto Tiering Pools

This section will describe the operations of configuring auto tiering pool.





11.3.1. Enable Auto Tiering License

The auto tiering function is optional. Before using it, you have to enable auto tiering license. Select the **Update** function tab in the **Maintenance** function submenu, download **Request License** file and send to your local sales to obtain a License Key. After getting the license key, click the **Choose File** button to select it, and then click the **Apply** button to enable. When the license is enabled, please reboot the system. Each license key is unique and dedicated to a specific system. If you have already enabled, this option will be invisible.

Figure 178: Enable Auto Tiering License

11.3.2. Create an Auto Tiering Pool

Here is an example of creating an auto tiering pool with 3 tiers, each tier has 3 disks configured in RAID 5. At the first time of creating an auto tiering pool, it may contain at least 2 tiers (disk groups) and the maximum quantity of disk in a tier (disk group) is 64.

1. Select the **Pools** function submenu, click the **Create Pool** button. It will scan available disks first.



TIP:

It may take 20 ~ 30 seconds to scan disks if your system has more than 200 disk drives. Please wait patiently.



General	Pool Type									
Disk Selection	Please select a pool typ									
RAID Configuration	Thick Provisioning									
Disk Properties	 Thick Provisioning Thin Provisioning 									
Summary										
	Auto Tiering (Thin P	rovisioning Enabled)								
	Pool Properties									
	Please enter a pool nan	ne and select preferre	controller setting.							
	Pool Name :	Pool-3	0							
	Preferred Controller :	Controller 1	*							
	The I/O resources will be managed by the preferred controller which you specified.									
	SED Pool									
	Enable SED Pool									
	Enabling SED pool	will use the secure SE	Os to create a pool. Intermixing SEDs and non-SEDs are not suppor	rted in a pool.						
			e							
1										
			N	Vext Cancel						

Figure 179: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Step 1

- 2. Select the **Pool Type** as Auto Tiering (Thin Provisioning Enabled). This option is available when auto-tiering license is enabled.
- 3. Enter a **Pool Name** for the pool. The maximum length of the pool name is 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- 4. Select a **Preferred Controller** from the drop-down list. The backend I/O resources in this pool will be processed by the preferred controller which you specified. This option is available when dual controllers are installed.
- 5. Check the **Enable SED Pool** checkbox. Enabling SED pool will use the secure SEDs to create a pool. Intermixing SEDs and non-SEDs are not supported in a pool.
- 6. Click the **Next** button to continue.



Disk Selection	Pleas	nt Disks e select at least t troup is 64.	two disk	types of disk	is to add tiers a	n auto tiering pool. Each tier	r is a disk group. T	he maximum quantity of	áisk in
RAID Configuration	Contractor of A								
Disk Properties	Enclo	isure ID: () (Head	Unit: 4224	IL)	*			
Summary	0	Enclosure ID	Slot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model	
	2	0	1	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
		0	2	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
	6	0	3	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
	日	0	4	Good	372.36 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
	0	0	5	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800	
	B	0	6	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800	
	8	0	7	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	\$630DC-800	
	8	0	8	Good	744.96 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	MICRON	S630DC-800	
	8	0	9	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
		0	10	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
	8	0	11	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
	2	0	12	Good	1.09 TB	SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088	
	8	0	13	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014	
		0	14	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014	
		0	15	Good	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	SEAGATE	ST6000NM0014	

Figure 180: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Step 2

- Please select disks for pool and select at least two disk types of disks to add tiers an auto tiering pool. Each tier is a disk group. The maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64. Select an Enclosure ID from the drop-down list to select disks from expansion enclosures.
- 8. Click the **Next** button to continue.



Seneral	RAID Configuration			
lisk Selection	Please select RAID levels.			
AID Configuration	SSD Tier			
lisk Properties	RAID Level :	RAID 1	*	
C. ALL MARKET AND CONTRACT OF A DECISION OF A DECISIONO OF	Quantity of SSD Disks :	2		
lummary	SAS Tier			
	RAID Level :	RAID 6		
	Quantity of SAS Disks :	4		
	NL-SAS Tier			
	RAID Level :	RAID 0	•	
	Quantity of NL-SAS Disks :	RAID 0 RAID 1		
		RAID 3	1	
		RAID 5 RAID SEE	n de la companya de l	
		RAID 6		
		RAID 0+1 RAID 10		
		SAID 10		
3.				

Figure 181: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Step 3

- 9. Select a **RAID Level** from the drop-down list which lists available RAID level only according to the disk selection for each tier. And select a **Quantity of Subgroups** if the combination RAID level is selected.
- 10. Click the **Next** button to continue.



eate Pool									
General	Disk Properties								
Disk Selection	Please configure the disk properties.								
RAID Configuration Disk Properties	Enable Disk Write Cache Enabling disk write cache will improve write I/O performance but risking data loss when power failure.								
Summary	Enable Disk Read-ahead System will preload data to disk buffer based on previously retrieved data. This feature will efficiently improve the performance of sequential data retrieved.								
	Enable Disk Command Queuing Send multiple commands to a disk at once to improve performance.								
	 Enable Disk Standby The disks will spin down for power saving when they are idle for a period of time according to the setting. 								
	Disk Standby : 30 seconds *								
Back	Next Cancel								

Figure 182: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Step 4

- 11. Disk properties can also be configured optionally in this step:
 - Enable Disk Write Cache: Check to enable the write cache option of disks. Enabling disk write cache will improve write I/O performance but have a risk of losing data when power failure.
 - Enable Disk Read-ahead: Check to enable the read-ahead function of disks. System will preload data to disk buffer based on previously retrieved data. This feature will efficiently improve the performance of sequential data retrieved.
 - Enable Disk Command Queuing: Check to enable the command queue function of disks. Send multiple commands to a disk at once to improve performance.
 - Enable Disk Standby: Check to enable the auto spin down function of disks. The disks will be spun down for power saving when they are idle for the period of time specified.
- 12. Click the **Next** button to continue.



Create Pool				
General	Pool Properties		Schedule Relocation	
Disk Selection	Pool Type	Auto Tiering	Schedule Type ;	Daily
RAID Configuration	Pool Name	Pool-3	Relocation Start Time :	00:00
Disk Properties	Preferred Controller	Controller 1	Relocation Period	0 Hours
Summary	RAID Configuration			0 Minutes
Summery	SSD Tier		Relocation Rate :	Fast
	RAID Level	RAID 1		
	Quantity of SSD Disks :	2		
	SAS Tier RAID Level	RAID 6		
	Quantity of SAS Disks	4		
	NL-SAS Tier			
	RAID Level ;	RAID 5		
	Quantity of NL-SAS Disks :	4		
	Disk Properties			
	Disk Write Cache :	Enabled		
	Disk Read-ahead	Enabled		
	Disk Command Queuing :	Enabled		
	Disk Standby :	Disabled		
1				
1. was 1				Finish Cancel
Back				FERRE GALO

Figure 183: Create an Auto Tiering Pool Wizard Step 5

- 13. By default, we set relocation schedule at 00:00 daily, relocation period set to 00:00 which means let relocation process run until it finishes, and relocation rate to fast.
- 14. After confirmation at summary page, click the **Finish** button to create a pool.

P	Status	Health	Total	Free	Available	Thin Provisioning	Auto Tiering	Volumes	Current Controller
Y P	Online	Good	18.92 TB	18.92 TB	18.92 TB	Enabled	Enabled	0	Controller 1
P		1.00001					a second	Online Good 18.92 TB 18.92 TB 18.92 TB Enabled Enabled	

Figure 184: An Auto Tiering Pool is Created

15. The pool has been created. If necessary, click the **Create Pool** button again to create others.





TIP:

Auto Tiering 2.0 supports flexible RAID and disk configurations. You can create each tier (disk group) with different RAID level and different quantity of disk. For example, SSD tier uses 4 disks with RAID 10 for extreme performance, SAS tier uses 6 disks with RAID 6, and NL-SAS tier uses 8 disks with RAID 5 for capacity.



CAUTION:

Because the auto tiering pool is based on thin provisioning technology, please always watch the system logs of thin provisioning pool. If the used capacity of the thin provisioning pool reaches 95% (default thin provisioning policy), the system will deactivate the pool to avoid data loss. So, the host can't access the pool at this time. You must expand the pool capacity, and then activate the pool to resolve the issue.

11.3.3. List Auto Tiering Pools

Pool View

Click a pool; it will display the related disk groups. Similarly, click a disk group; it will display the related disk drives. The pool properties can be configured by clicking the functions button $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to the left side of the specific pool.

	Pool /	Name	Status	Heatti	Total	Free	Available	Thin	Provisioning	Auto Tiering	Encryption	Mulumes	Current Controlle
	Ped		CHRIst	Gost	16.52 10	1892.00	16.02.18	Enob	ist	Endered .	Disabled	0	Consider 1
Disk G	oups												
	No.	Status	Health	Total	Fre	e 1	fier Level	RAID	Diska Used	RAID EE Sp	8705		
	1	Chiltre	Good	16.37	16.	17.TB 9	L-SAS	RAID 5	4	NA			
	2	Ortine	Good	2.18 T	B 2.11	176 5	SAS .	RAID 6	4	NA			
	3	Drive	Good	371.90	198 171	00.68	190	RADIT	2	NUS			
Haka													
Enclose	In ID	Siot	Status	Health	Capacity	Disk 7	pe	Manuf	acturer N	lodel			
0		1	Online	Good	372.36 G	8 SAS 5	SD 12 0Gb/s	SEAG	ATE 5	T400FM0063			
0		2	Onine	Good	372.36 G	B SAS 5	SD 12.0Gb/6	SEAG	ATE 5	7400FM0063			

Figure 185: List Auto Tiering Pools



This table shows the column descriptions.

Column Name	Description
Pool Name	The pool names.
	The status of the pool:
	On-line: The pool is online.
	Offline: The pool is offline.
Status	Rebuilding: The pool is being rebuilt.
	 Migrating: The pool is being migrated.
	 Relocating: The pool is being relocated.
	EE Rebuilding: The pool is being RAID EE rebuilt.
	The health of the pool:
	Good: The pool is good.
Health	Failed: The pool is failed.
	 Degraded: The pool is not healthy and not complete. The
	reason could be missing or failed disks.
Total	Total capacity of the pool.
Free	Free capacity of the pool.
Available	Available capacity of the pool.
	The status of Thin provisioning:
Thin Provisioning	Disabled.
	Enabled.
	The status of Auto Tiering:
	Disabled.
Auto Tiering	Enabled.
	Not Supported: The pool contains the disk groups with mixed
	disk type.
	The Data Secure Mode:
Encryption	Disabled: The pool is not encrypted.
	Enabled: The pool is encrypted.
Volumes	The quantity of volumes in the pool.
Current Controller	
(This option is	The current running controller of the pool
only visible when dual controllers	The current running controller of the pool.
are installed.)	
are installeu.)	

Table 51: Pool Column Descriptions



Table 52: Disk Group Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
No.	The number of the disk group.
	The status of the disk group:On-line: The disk group is online.
	 Offline: The disk group is offline.
Status	Rebuilding: The disk group is being rebuilt.
	 Migrating: The disk group is being migrated.
	Relocating: The disk group is being relocated.
	• EE Rebuilding: The disk group is being RAID EE rebuilt.
	The health of the disk group:
	Good: The disk group is good.
Health	Failed: The disk group is failed.
	 Degraded: The disk group is not healthy and not complete. The reason could be lack od disk(s) or failed disk.
Total	Total capacity of the disk group.
Free	Free capacity of the disk group.
RAID	The RAID level of the disk group.
Disks Used	The quantity of disk drives in the disk group.
RAID EE Spare	The quantity of RAID EE spare disk drives in the disk group. Display N/A is the RAID level is traditional.

Table 53: Disk Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Enclosure ID	The enclosure ID.
Slot	The position of the disk drive.
Status	 The status of the disk drive: On-line: The disk drive is online. Missing: The disk drive is missing in the pool. Rebuilding: The disk drive is being rebuilt. Transitioning: The disk drive is being migrated or is replaced by another disk when rebuilding occurs. Scrubbing: The disk drive is being scrubbed. Check Done: The disk drive has been checked the disk health. Copying Back: The disk drive is being copied back.
Health	 The health of the disk drive: Good: The disk drive is good. Failed: The disk drive is failed. Error Alert: S.M.A.R.T. error alerts. Read Errors: The disk drive has unrecoverable read errors.
Capacity	The capacity of the disk drive.
Disk Type	The type of the disk drive: • [SAS HDD NL-SAS HDD SAS SSD SATA SSD] • [12.0Gb/s 6.0Gb/s 3.0Gb/s 1.5Gb/s]
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the disk drive.
Model	The model name of disk drive.



Auto Tiering View

The Auto Tiering function tab in the Pools function submenu is only visible when auto tiering license is enabled. Click a pool; it will display the related tiering status. The pool properties can be configured by clicking the functions button ▼ to the left side of the specific pool.

P	ool Name	Status	Health 1	otal	Free	Available	Volumes	Disks	Current Controller
¥ P	ool-3	Online	Good 1	9.26 TB	18.25 TB	18.25 TB	5	12	Controller 1
ool Tierin	g Status:								
Tier Level	Tier Cap	acity (GB)	Tier Used (G8	3) Mav	e Up (GB)	Move Down (Gi	5) Mov	e in (GB)	Tier Status
SSD	742		669	0		0	D		
SAS	2230		383	0		0	0		
NL-SAS	16765		2	0		0	Ð		

Figure 186: Auto Tiering Pools and Status

This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 54: Pool Tiering Status Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Tier Level	Tier categories, there are SSD, SAS, Nearline SAS, and SATA. The system will hide the tiers without any disk groups.
Tier Capacity	Total capacity of the tier.
Tier Used	Used capacity of the tier.
Move Up	The capacity prepares to move up to higher tier.
Move Down	The capacity prepares to move down to lower tier.
Move In	The capacity prepares to move in from other tiers.
	Bar chart to show the tier status:
Tier Status	Light Blue: Used capacity.
	Orange: The data will move in.
	Gray: Unallocated.



11.3.4. Operations on Auto Tiering Pools

Most operations are described in the Configuring Storage Pools section. For more information, please refer to the chapter 8.4.3, Operations on Thick Provisioning Pools section and the chapter 9.3.3, Operations on Thin Provisioning Pools section. We describe the operations about auto tiering in the following.

Schedule Relocation

Click ▼ -> Schedule Relocation to setup the relocation schedule in auto tiering pool. If the **Relocation Period** sets as 00:00, it will let relocation process run until it finishes.

Schedule Relocation		
Pool Name :	Pool-3	
Frequency :	Daily	
	Weekly	
	Repeat Every 12	• Hours
Relocation Start Time (hh:mm) :	00:00 🔻	
Relocation Period (hh:mm) :	00 • : 00	 (Set as 00:00 to let relocation process run until it finishes.)
Relocation Rate :	Fast	*
9 .		
		OK Cancel

Figure 187: Relocation Schedule



Relocate Now

Click ▼ -> **Relocate Now** to perform relocation right now in an auto tiering pool. Similarly, if **Relocation Period** sets as 00:00, it will let relocation process run until it finishes.

Pool-3	
00 • : 00	 (Set as 00:00 to let relocation process run until it finishes.)
Fast	*
Fast	*
	OK Cancel
	00 🔻 : 00

Figure 188: Relocate Now

Stop Relocation

Click $\mathbf{\nabla}$ -> **Stop Relocation** to stop relocation when there is a relocation process in an auto tiering pool. The task that is being relocated will stop until it completes.

11.3.5. Add a Tier (Disk Group) in an Auto Tiering Pool

The Add Disk Group function adds a disk group to a pool to increase the capacity.

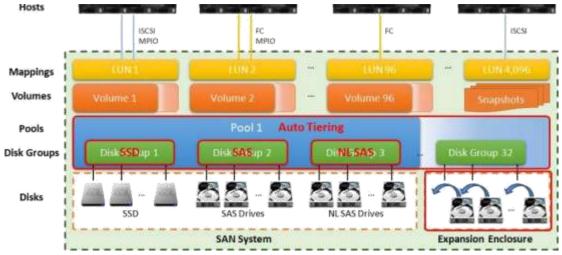


Figure 189: Add a Disk Group in an Auto Tiering Pool



Here is an example of adding a disk group in thin provisioning pool.

1. Select a pool, click ▼ -> Add Disk Group to add a disk group in the auto tiering pool.

Figure 190: Add Disk Group

- 2. Select a **RAID Level** from the drop-down list and select a **Quantity of Subgroups** if the combination RAID level is selected.
- Please select disks to add a disk group. The maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64. Select an **Enclosure** from the drop-down list to select disks from the expansion enclosures.
- 4. Click the **OK** button to add a disk group.



11.3.6. Hot Spares in an Auto Tiering Pool

In an auto tiering pool, hot spare drives can only replace the drives of the same disk type. For example, a SSD tier can only be assigned SSD type drives as hot spares drives.

	Shot	Status	Health	Encryption	BED / ISE Blatture	Capacity	Dink Type	Usage	Pool Name	Merufacturer	Model
•	1	Colleas	Good	None	140A	372.36 GB	5A5 550 12.0Gb/s	RAD	Pool-3	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
•	2	Civiere.	Good	None	NA	372.36 GB	ISAS SSD 12.0Gb/h	RAD	Pool-3	SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
•	3	Online	Goot	None	N/A	372.36.08	5AS 550 12.0Gb/s	Dedicated Spare	Pooi-3	BEAGATE	ST400FM0053
•	4	Online	Goot	None	NIA	372.36 GB	SAS 550 12.00b/s	Fran		SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
	8	Online	Good	None	NIA	744.96 GB	545 550 12 00b/s	RAID	Pool-3	MICRON	\$630DC-800
•	6	Orderer	Good	None	NA	744.96 GB	BAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	RAD	Pool-3	MICRON	\$6300C-800
•	1	Onima	Good	None	NA	744.96 GB	5AS 85D 12.0Gb/s	RAD	Pool-3	MICRON	\$630DC-000
•	8	Online	Good	None	NA	744.96 GB	545 550 12.0Gb/s	RAD	Pool-3	MCRON	9630DC-800
•	3	Drive	Goot	None	NA	1.09 TB	SAS HOD 12 0Gb/s	RAD	Pool-3	SEAGATE	3112001/0/00
•	10	Online	Goot	None	NIA	1.09 TB	SAS HOD 12.0Gb/b	RND	Pooi-3	SEAGATE	ST1200N#400
۲	11	Online	Goolt	None	NIA	1.09 TB	SAS HOD 12 0Gb/k	RAID	Poot-3	SEAGATE	ST1200MM00
•	12	Duline	Geot	None	NIA	1.09 TB	SAS HOD 12.006W	RAD	Pool-3	SEAGATE	ST120048400
	13	Online	Good	None	NA	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12,0Gb/s	RAD	PooF3	SEAGATE	ST6000NM001
•	34	Delina	Good	None	NA	5.45 15	NL-SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	RAD	Pool 3	SEAGATE	ST6000NM001
٠	15	OWINE	Good	Nona	NA	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	RAID	Pool-3	SEAGATE	STECCONMOON
•	:16	Online	Goot	None-	NA	5.46 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.008/s	RAD	Pool-3	BEAGATE	3TE000NM001

Figure 191: Hot Spares in Auto Tiering Pool

11.4. Configure Volumes

This section will describe the operations of configuring volume in auto tiering pool.

11.4.1. Create a Volume in an Auto Tiering Pool

Here is an example of creating a volume in an auto tiering pool.

1. Select the **Volumes** function submenu, click the **Create Volume** button.



Create Volume				
General	Volume General Se	things		
Advanced	1.1.1. AL 1.1.	e name and configure th	e volum	e general settings.
Summary	Volume Name :	Vol-3		0
	Pool Name :	Pool-3	. *	(Available : 262144 GB)
	Capacity	100		68 *
	Volume Type :	RAID Volume		ackup Volume for backup usage such as the target volume of local clone or remote
3				
				Not Carce

Figure 192: Create a Volume of Auto Tiering Pool Step 1

- 2. Enter a **Volume Name** for the pool. The maximum length of the volume name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- 3. Select a **Pool Name** from the drop-down list. It will also display the available capacity of the pool.
- 4. Enter required Capacity. The unit can be selected from the drop-down list.
- 5. Select **Volume Type**. The options are **RAID Volume** (for general RAID usage) and **Backup Volume** (for the target volume of local clone or remote replication).
- 6. Click the **Next** button to continue.



Volume Advanced Settle Please configure the volu Block Size Priority The priority is the comp Background I/O Priority	me advanced setti 512 Byte High sanson with the oth	*	
Block Size Priority The priority is the comp	512 Byte high sanson with the oth	*	
Priority The priority is the comp	High sanson with the oth	* * ver volumes.	
The priority is the comp	arison with the oth	* ter volumes	
		ver volumes.	
Background I/O Priority :			
	High	*	
Background I/O priority	will influence volu	me initilization, rebuild, and regration,	
Tiering Policy	Auto Tiering	T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T	
			between the cache and disks in a
		n the video editing environment. It sacrifices a bit of perform	nance but is stable.
buffer. When the data t	o be transmitted is		then preload the data into the disk
	 Enable Cache Mode () Write back optimizes 8 short time interval. Enable Video Editing 8 Please enable it when Please enable it when Enable Read-ahead The system will identify buffer. When the data 5 	 Enable Cache Mode (Write-back Cache) Write back optimizes the system speed b short time interval Enable Video Editing Mode Please enable it when the application is in Enable Read-ahead The system will identify what is needed in 	 Enable Cache Mode (Write-back Cache) While back optimizes the system speed but comes with the risk which the data may be inconsistent short time interval. Enable Video Editing Mode Please enable it when the application is in the video editing environment. It sacrifices a bit of perform Enable Read-shead The system will identify what is needed next, based on the content just retrieved from the data to be transmitted is continuous, this feature will improve performance.

Figure 193: Create a Volume of Auto Tiering Pool Step 2

- 7. Volume advanced settings can also be configured optionally in this step:
 - Block Size: The options are 512 Bytes to 4,096 Bytes.
 - **Priority**: The options are High, Medium, and Low. The priority compares to other volumes. Set it as High if the volume has many I/O.
 - **Background I/O Priority**: The options are High, Medium, and Low. It will influence volume initialization, rebuild, and migration.
 - **Tiering Policy**: The options are Auto Tiering, Start Highest then Auto Tiering, High Available Tier, Lowest Tier, and No Data Movement. Please refer to the chapter 11.2.3, Tiering Policies section for detail.
 - Enable Cache Mode (Write-back Cache): Check to enable cache mode function of volume. Write back optimizes the system speed but comes with the risk where the data may be inconsistent between cache and disks in one short time interval.
 - Enable Video Editing Mode: Check to enable video editing mode function. It is optimized for video editing usage. Please enable it when your application is in video editing environment. This option provides a more stable performance figure without high and low peaks but slower in average.
 - Enable Read-ahead: Check to enable the read ahead function of volume. The system will discern what data will be needed next based on what was just retrieved from disk and then preload this data into the disk's buffer. This feature will improve performance when the data being retrieved is sequential.
 - **Enable Space Reclamation**: Check to enable the space reclamation function of the volume when the pool is auto tiering.
- 8. Click the **Next** button to continue.



reate Volume			
General	Configure Volume General Se	ttings	
Advanced	Volume Name	Vol-3	
Summary	Pool Name	Pool-3	
	Capacity	100 GB	
	Volume Type ::	RAID Volume	
	Configure Volume Advanced	Settings	
	Block Size	512 Byte	
	Priority	High	
	Background I/O Priority	High	
	Tiering Policy	Auto Tiering	
	Cache Mode	Enabled	
	Video Editing Mode :	Disabled	
	Read-ahead	Enabled	
	Spece Reclamation :	Enabled	
3			
Back			Finish Canoel

Figure 194: Create a Volume of Auto Tiering Pool Step 3

- 9. After confirmation at summary page, click **Finish** button to create a volume.
- 10. The volume has been created. It will be initialized in protection RAID level (e.g., RAID 1, 3, 5, 6, 0+1, 10, 30, 50, and 60).

 Volume Name	Statum	Health	Capacity	Volume Type	SSD Cache	Snapshot Space	Snapshots	Clone	Write:	Pool Name
 Vol-3	Onine	Optimal	100.00 GE	RAID Volume	Disabled	D MB / D MB	0	1404	WB	Pock3

Figure 195: A Volume in Auto Tiering Pool is Created

11. A volume has been created. If necessary, click the **Create Volume** button to create another.

TIP:

ESOS supports instant RAID volume availability. The volume can be used immediately when it is initializing or rebuilding.

TIP:

If the pool contains some disk drives of 4Kn type, it is not available to set 512, 1024, or 2048 block size. When the case happens, it will pop up a warning message and suggest changing the block size to 4096.



11.4.2. List Volumes and Operations on Volumes

Most operations are described in the chapter 8.5, Configuring Volumes section. For more information about list volume, please refer to the chapter 8.5.2, List Volumes section. For more information about operations on volumes, please refer to the chapter 8.5.3, Operations on Volumes section. We describe auto tiering operations below.

Change Volume Properties

Click ▼ -> Change Volume Properties to change the volume properties of the volume.

Change Volume Properties			
Volume Name:	Vol-3	0	
Priority:	🖲 High 🔍 Mediur	n O Low	
Background I/O Priority:	» High		
Tiering Policy:	Auto Tiering	•	
Cache Mode:	🔍 Write-through	i Cache 🥺 Write-back Cache 🍚 Re	ad-Only 🚺
Video Editing Mode:	Disabled	• 0	
Read-ahead:	Enabled	• 0	
Space Reclamation:	Enabled	*	
Volume Type:	RAID Volume	× 0	

Figure 196: Change Volume Properties

Reclaim Space with Thin Provisioning Pool

Click $\mathbf{\nabla}$ -> **Space Reclamation** to reclaim space from the volume when the volume is in an auto tiering pool. For more information about space reclamation, please refer to the chapter 9.2.2, Space Reclamation section.

11.5. Configure LUN Mappings and Connect by Host Initiator

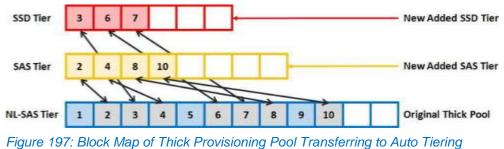
Next step you can configure LUN mapping and connect by host initiator. For more information about LUN mapping, please refer to the chapter 8.6, Configure LUN Mappings section for detail. For more information about host initiator, please refer to the chapter 8.7, Connect by Host Initiator section for detail.



11.6. Transfer to Auto Tiering Pool

This section describes thick provisioning pool or thin provisioning pool transfer to auto tiering one. If auto tiering license is enabled, the thick or thin provisioning pool without disk group of mixed disk type can be transferred to the auto tiering pool by **Add Disk Group** option.

Also note that the thick provisioning pool is preconfigured the space, after transferring to the auto tiering, the original disk group in the thick provisioning pool will be the lowest tier. When auto tiering mechanism is running, the hot data are copied to higher tier, but still occupy the space of the original block. If the data is cold, it will return to the original block space. So, the total capacity of the pool does not change even adding the capacity of higher tiers.



righte for. Block map of thick fromsioning foor transiening to Auto Hening

Thin provisioning is dynamic allocation of space, if the hot data is moved up to the higher tier; it will release the original block space. So the total capacity is the sum of all tiers.

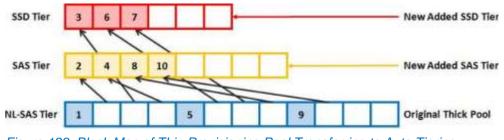


Figure 198: Block Map of Thin Provisioning Pool Transferring to Auto Tiering



CAUTION:

The action of transferring to auto tiering is irreversible. Consider all possible consequences before making this change.



11.6.1. Transfer from Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering

First, make sure the auto tiering license is enabled. For more information about enabling license operation, please refer to the chapter 11.3.1, Enable Auto Tiering License section. And then use **Add Disk Group** function to add another tier (disk group). Here is an example of transfer thick provisioning pool to auto tiering one.

1. Create a thick provisioning pool with SAS disk drives. Auto Tiering status is Disabled.

	Pool	Vame	Status	Health	Total	Free	Available	Thin Provisionin	ng Auto Tiering	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controlle
•	Pool		Online	Good			3.27 TB	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled		Controller 1
	Pool-2	2	Online	Good	16.37 TB	16.37 TB	16.37 TB	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	0	Controller 1
)isk Gr	oups											
	No.	Status	Health	Total	Free	RAID	Disks Used	RAID 2.0 Sp	are			
n Tan		Online	Good	3.27 1	B 3.27 TB							
(and a set of the set	1	Online	Good	32711	8 3.27 18	RAID 5	4	N/A				
Disks	are ID	Online	Good	Health	B 327418 Capacity	Disk Type	That is	N/A Manufacturer	Model			
Disks Enclosu	1 ure ID			Transar		Disk Type	6		Model ST1200MM0088			
Disks Enclosu D	1 are ID	Slot	Status	Health	Capacity	Disk Type SAS HDI	e D 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer				
Visks Enclosu 0 0	are ID	Slot 9	Status Online	Health Good	Capacity 1.09 TB	Disk Type SAS HDI SAS HDI	e D 12.0Gb/s D 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE	ST1200MM0088			

Figure 199: Transfer Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 1

Click ▼ -> Add Disk Group to transfer from a thick provisioning pool to an auto tiering pool. Select Enabled from the Auto Tiering drop-down list. The tier (disk group) must be added one at a time. Select the RAID Level and Select Disks, and then click the OK button.



	All the beauties as a .			6				
	Provisioning :		Disabled	19 - 19 State (1987) (1987)				
	Tiering :		Disable					
0IAS	Level		Enable					
leas	e select a RAID	evel.						
CIAS	Level		RAID 1		*			
ielec	t Disks							
Naga	a salast disks to	add a die	k nearm. The	a maximum nuis	antity of disk in a disk area	un in Ed		
		add a dis	0.2 1 2 1 2 2	0.0103/000200446603	antity of disk in a disk grou	up is 64.		
Inclo	sure ID :	r 1630 m (23)	0 (Head	Unit: 4224L)	•	1011113(2019) 	W relation of only	
inclo		add a dis Slot	0.2 1 2 1 2 2	0.0103/000200446503	antity of disk in a disk grou Disk Type	up is 64. Manufacturer	Model	
inclo	sure ID :	r 1630 m (23)	0 (Head	Unit: 4224L)	•	1011113(2019) 	Model ST400FM0053	
inclo	sure ID : Enclosure ID	Slot	0 (Head Health	Unit: 4224L) Capacity	* Disk Type	Manufacturer	3	
inclo	sure ID : Enclosure ID 0	Slot 1	0 (Head Health Good	Unit: 4224L) Capacity 372:36 GB	Disk Type SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE	ST400FM0053	
Enclo	sure ID : Enclosure ID 0 0	Slot 1 2	0 (Head Health Good Good	Unit: 4224L) Capacity 372.36 GB 372.36 GB	Disk Type SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE SEAGATE	ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053	
Enclo	sure ID : Enclosure ID 0 0 0	Slot 1 2 3	0 (Head Health Good Good Good	Unit: 4224L) Capacity 372.36 GB 372.36 GB 372.36 GB	Disk Type SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE SEAGATE SEAGATE	ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053	
Enclo	sure ID : Enclosure ID 0 0 0 0	Slot 1 2 3 4	0 (Head Health Good Good Good	Unit: 4224L) Capacity 372.36 GB 372.36 GB 372.36 GB 372.36 GB	Visk Type SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE SEAGATE SEAGATE SEAGATE	ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053	
Enclo	sure ID : Enclosure ID 0 0 0 0 0 0	Slot 1 2 3 4 5	0 (Head Health Good Good Good Good	Unit: 4224L) Capacity 372.36 GB 372.36 GB 372.36 GB 372.36 GB 744.96 GB	Visk Type SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE SEAGATE SEAGATE SEAGATE MICRON	ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053 S630DC-800	

Figure 200: Transfer Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 2

3. Use the same procedure to add another tier if necessary.

	Pool N	атне	Status	hieaith	Total	Free	Available	. Jhn i	Provisioning	Auto Tiering	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controller
	1001	ta net in the	Contrast	Gened	327 18	3.27 10	3.27 18	Unat		Looked	Dutter	0	Controller 1
	Pool 2		Onine	Good	16.37 TB	16.37.18	16.37 TB	Enab	ied .	Disabled	Disabled	0	Controller 1
Nek G	DMps	• Elsinei	100		P.	14	200		NSSE NORTHER A	rh ipien(3		1974 - 1975 Concerne	
149.02	No	Status	Health	Total	Free		Tier Level	RAID	Disks Used	RAID 2.0 Spi	eei l		
۲	1	Online	Good	3.27 T	18 3.27	TB	SAS	RAID 5	4	NIA	-		
	12	Ordere	Gant	372.00	1.60 312	00 GIU	8110	RAD 1		NU0			
10000													
Hana:													
Enclos	-	Slot	Status	Health	Capacity	Disk 7	Type	Manufi	acturer Mo	del			
Disks Enclos 0 0	-	Sbi 1			Capacity 372.36 GB		fype 85D 12 0Gb/s	- Contractor (State	acturer Mo	del 400FM0053			

Figure 201: Transfer Thick Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 3

4. **Auto Tiering** status is **Enabled**. The thick provisioning pool has been transferred to auto tiering.





TIP:

The total capacity of the pool does not change even adding the capacity of higher tiers.

CAUTION:

The action of transferring from the thick provisioning pool to auto tiering is irreversible. Please consider carefully all possible consequences before taking this step.

11.6.2. Transfer from Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering

First, make sure the auto tiering license is enabled. For more information about enabling license operation, please refer to the chapter 11.3.1, Enable Auto Tiering License section. And then use **Add Disk Group** function to add another tier (disk group). Here is an example of transfer thin provisioning pool to auto tiering one.

1. Create a thin provisioning pool with NL-SAS disk drives. Auto Tiering status is Disabled.

P00	Name	Status	Health	Total	Free	Available	Thin Provisioning	Auto Tiering	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controlle
Pool	-1	Online	Good	3.27 TB	3.27 TB	3.27 TB	Disabled	Enabled	Disabled	0	Controller 1
Pad		Online		16:37/18	16:37 18		Enabled	Disabled	Deabled	0	Controller-1
Disk Groups								5594 38			
No.	Status	Health	Total	Free	RAID	Disks Used	RAID 2.0 Spa	re			
7 1	Online	Good	16137-1		TB RAID						
		and					100				
Disks Enclosure ID	Slot	Status	Health	Capacity	Disk Typ		Manufacturer	Model			
Disks	_				Disk Typ						
Disks Enclosure ID 0	Slot	Status	Health	Capacity	Disk Typ NL-SAS		Manufacturer	Nodel			
Disks Enclosure (D	Slot 13	Status Online	Health Good	Capacity 5,46 TB	Disk Typ NL-SAS NL-SAS	e HDD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE	Model ST6000NM0014	6 S		

Create Pool

Figure 202: Transfer Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 1

Click ▼ -> Add Disk Group to transfer from a thin provisioning pool to an auto tiering pool. Select Enabled from the Auto Tiering drop-down list. The tier (disk group) must be added one at a time. Select the RAID Level and Select Disks, and then click the OK button.



Ē	Provisioning :		Enabled				
	Tiering :		Disable				
			Disable	a second as			
AID	Level		Enable				
eas	e select a RAID I	level.	1 1				
AID	Level :		RAID 1				
Jac	t Disks						
		add a dir	sk group. Th	o maximum our	antity of dick in a dick arou	in is 64	
easi	e select disks to	add a di			antity of disk in a disk grou	up is 64.	
easi nclos	e select disks to sure ID :	022 0742=	0 (Head	l Unit: 4224L)	•		1.
easi nclo:	e select disks to sure ID Enclosure ID	Slot	0 (Head Health	I Unit: 4224L) Capacity	* Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
easi nclo:	e select disks to sure ID :	022 0742=	0 (Head	l Unit: 4224L)	•		Model ST400FM0053
easi nclo:	e select disks to sure ID Enclosure ID	Slot	0 (Head Health	I Unit: 4224L) Capacity	* Disk Type	Manufacturer	
easi nclo:	e select disks to sure ID Enclosure ID 0	Slot 3	0 (Head Health Good	Unit: 4224L) Capacity 372.36 GB	Disk Type SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE	ST400FM0053
easi nclo: D	e select disks to sure ID Enclosure ID 0 0	Slot 3 4	0 (Head Health Good Good	Unit: 4224L) Capacity 372.36 GB 372.36 GB	Disk Type SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE SEAGATE	ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053
easi nclo:	e select disks to sure ID : Enclosure ID 0 0 0	Slot 3 4 5	0 (Head Health Good Good Good	Unit: 4224L) Capacity 372.36 GB 372.36 GB 744.96 GB	Disk Type SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer SEAGATE SEAGATE MICRON	ST400FM0053 ST400FM0053 S630DC-800

Figure 203: Transfer Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 2

3. Use the same procedure to add another tier if necessary.

	Pool I	Name	Status	Health	Total	Free	Available	Than	Provisioning	Auto Tiering	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controlle
	Pool	1	Online	Good	3.27 16	3.27 T	8 3.27 78	Disat	bled	Enabled	Disabled	0	Controller 1
	Paol		Otton	0=	9677A-TE	16174	TER THE TER	final	nort	Endled	Descent	6	Canadas 1
	reups	Terrer 1				Live -		197	2.5			al de la companya de	24
R. 994	No.	Status	Healt	h	Fr	i6	Tier Level	RAID	Disks Use	RAID 20 Sp	are		
٠	1	Online	Good	16.37	TB 16	37 TB	NL-SAS	RAID 5	4	NIA			
		Ordere		371.0	0 CB 37	1.00 (50)	510	RAID 1	8.	NUX.			
Disks													
Enclos		Sict	Status	Health	Capacit	Dist	сТуре	Manuf		todel			
8		3	Online	Soci	372.36	18 SAS	8 55D 12.0Gb/s	SEAG	ATE	\$T400FM0053			
0		4	Online	Good	372.361	B SAS	SSD 12 0Gb/s	SEAG	ATE	3T400FM0063			

Create Pool

Figure 204: Transfer Thin Provisioning Pool to Auto Tiering Step 3

4. **Auto Tiering** status is **Enabled**. The thin provisioning pool has been transferred to auto tiering.





TIP:

The total capacity of the pool is the sum of all tiers.

CAUTION:

The action of transferring from the thin provisioning pool to auto tiering is irreversible. Please consider carefully all possible consequences before taking this step.

11.7. SSD Cache vs. Auto Tiering

The SSD cache and auto tiering solutions can work together and complement each other. A key difference between tiering and cache is that tiering moves data to SSD instead of simply caching it. Tiering can also move data both from slower storage to faster storage and vice versa. But SSD cache is essentially a one-way transaction. When the cache is done with the data it was accelerating it simply nullifies it instead of copying it back to HDD. The important difference between moves and copies is that a cache does not need to have the redundancy that tiering does. Tiering stores the only copy of data for potentially a considerable period, so it needs to have full data redundancy like RAID or mirroring.

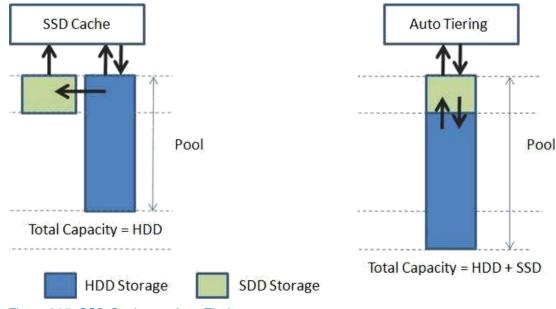


Figure 205: SSD Cache vs. Auto Tiering



Total storage capacity in auto tiering is a sum of all individual tier capacities whereas in cache, the cache capacity does not add to the overall slower storage capacity. This is one of the key differences. In addition, SSD cache affects rapider than auto tiering because auto tiering will be affected by relocation the data in a period. So SSD cache warm-up timeframe is usually minutes/hours whereas tiering warm-up is usually in days.

SSD cache is used for highly frequent data access environment and is effective in a short term such as virtualization or video editing applications. However, auto tiering is used for predictable I/O workloads and is effective in a long term. It's suitable for web, file, or email server applications.

	SSD Cache	Auto Tiering
Total Capacity	HDD	HDD + SSD
When SSD is Damaged	Pool Works Fine	Pool Fails
Performance	Effective in Short Term	Effective in Long Term

Table 55: SSD Cache vs. Auto Tiering



12. Data Backup

This chapter describes an overview and operations of data backup options in ESOS. ESOS provides built-in data backup services for protecting data from most unpredictable accidents including:

- Volume snapshot which is described in the Managing Snapshots section.
- Local volume cloning which is described in the Manage Local Clones section.
- Remote replication to have data duplicated to the remote sites, the function is described in the Managing Remote Replications section.

The **DATA BACKUP** function menu provides submenus of **Snapshots** and **Replications**. Clone function is built in the **Volumes** function tab of the **Volumes** function submenu.

12.1. Managing Snapshots

volume snapshot is based on copy-on-write technology. It's a block-based and differential backup mechanism. Snapshot functionality is designed to be highly efficient, it keeps a point in time record of block-level, incremental data changes of the target LUN volume. Snapshot can help recover a LUN volume to a previous state quickly to meet enterprise SLA (Service Level Agreement) requirements of RPO (Recovery Point Objectives) and RTO (Recovery Time Objective).

Snapshot is the easiest and most effective measure to protect against ransomware attacks, virus attacks, accidental file deletion, accidental file modification, or unstable system hardware caused by a bad I/O cable connection, unstable power supply... etc.

12.1.1. Theory of Operation

Snapshot-on-the-box captures the instant state of data in the target volume in a logical sense. The underlying logic is copy-on-write, moving out the data which would be written to certain location where a write action occurs since the time of data capture. The certain location, named as "Snapshot Volume", is essentially a new volume which can be attached to a LUN provisioned to a host as a disk like other ordinary volumes in the system.



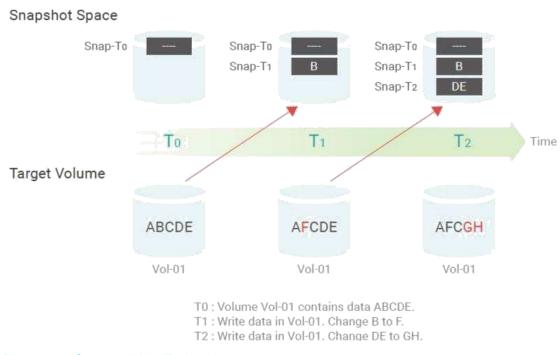


Figure 206: Copy-on-Write Technology

Snapshot Rollback

Rollback restores the data back to the state of any time which was previously captured in case for any unfortunate reason it might be. Snapshot volume is allocated within the same pool in which the snapshot is taken, we suggest reserving 20% of the pool capacity or more for snapshot space.

Writable Snapshot

Apart from the rollback function, snapshot allows direct access to the snapshot content with read or read/write permissions. There are two benefits: One is that it will not consume the free capacity of the storage pool. The other one is that it will not affect the content of the target volume. Before attaching a LUN to the snapshot, the snapshot needs to be exposed to be prepared for accessing. An example of these benefits would be, programmers or developers can easily test a previous version of their compiled codes simply by mounting an older snapshot version onto a LUN instead of rolling back the snapshot and overwriting the existing source codes.



Integration with Windows VSS (Volume Shadow Copy Services)

Snapshot is fully compatible with Windows VSS (Volume Shadow Copy Services). VSS is a host memory flush mechanism for creating consistent point in time copies of data known as "shadow copies". A Windows agent utility is provided to bridge and synchronize the information between the SAN system and Windows operating system. After implementation, you can trigger a snapshot directly from the Windows operating system without any data consistency issues.

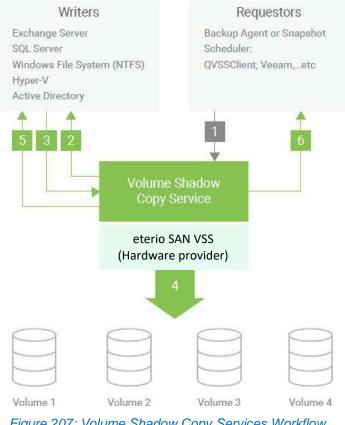


Figure 207: Volume Shadow Copy Services Workflow

Select Snapshots function submenu to setup snapshot space, take snapshots, list snapshots, setup snapshot schedule, and delete snapshots.

		Snapshots
0 C	ATA BACKUP	
	Snapshots	
	Remote Replication	S
	13-15134/34249/050/025042/9/199	S

Figure 208: Snapshot Function Submenu



The maximum snapshot quantity per volume is 64, and the maximum volume quantity for snapshot is also 64. So, a system can have 4,096 snapshots.

Table 56: Snapshot Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum snapshot quantity per volume	64
Maximum volume quantity for snapshot	64
Maximum snapshot quantity per system	4,096 (= 64 x 64)

12.1.2. Configure Snapshot

Set Snapshot Space

Before taking a snapshot, ESOS must reserve some storage space for saving variant data. Here's an example of setting snapshot space.

There are two methods to set snapshot space. Select the Snapshots function submenu, click the Set Snapshot Space button. Or select the Volumes function submenu, selects a volume, then click ▼ -> Set Snapshot Space.

Volume Name:	Vol-1			
Capacity:	100	GB 🔻	Available: 1925GB Minimum: 5GB	
Free Capacity:	1925GB			

Figure 209: Set Snapshot Space

2. Enter a **Capacity** which is reserved for the snapshot space, and then click the **OK** button. The minimum capacity is suggested to set 20% of the volume. Now there are two capacities in **Snapshot Space** column in the **Volumes** function tab. The first capacity is current used snapshot space, and the second capacity is reserved total snapshot space.



Take a Snapshot

Here's an example of taking a snapshot of the volume.

 There are two methods to take snapshot. Select the Snapshots function submenu, click Take Snapshot button. Or select the Volumes function submenu, selects a volume, then click ▼ -> Take Snapshot.

Volume Name: Vol-1 🔻	
Snapshot Name: Snap-Vol-1	



- 2. Enter a **Snapshot Name**. The maximum length of the snapshot name is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- 3. Click the **OK** button. The snapshot is taken.

List Snapshots

Select the **Snapshots** function submenu, the drop-down lists at the top enable you to switch the volumes.

	Snapshot Name	Status	Health	Used	Exposure	Permission	LUN	Time Created
•	Snap-Vol-1	N/A	Good	0 MB	No	N/A	None	Wed Jul 12 13:24:46 2017

Figure 211: List Snapshots 1



This table shows the column descriptions.

Column Name	Description
Snapshot Name	The snapshot names.
Status	 The status of the snapshot: N/A: The snapshot is normal. Replicated: The snapshot is for clone or replication usage. Undeletable: The snapshot is undeletable. Aborted: The snapshot is over space and abort.
Health	The health of the snapshot:Good: The snapshot is good.Failed: The snapshot fails.
Used	The amount of the snapshot space that has been used.
Exposure	The snapshot is exposed or not.
Permission	 The permission of the snapshot: N/A: Unknown when the snapshot is unexposed. Read-write: The snapshot can be read / write. Read-only: The snapshot is read only.
LUN	The LUN status of the snapshot:None: The snapshot is not mapped any LUN.Mapped: The snapshot is mapped a LUN.
Time Created	The created time of the snapshot.

Table 57: Snapshot Column Descriptions

Select the **Volumes** function submenu, selects a volume, then click **▼** -> **List Snapshots**.

Snapshot Name	Status	Health	Used	Exposure	Permission	LUN	Time Created
Snap-Vol-1	N/A	Good	0 MB	No	N/A	None	Wed Jul 12 13:24:46 2017



Expose Snapshot

Here's an example of exposing a snapshot.

1. Select the **Snapshots** function submenu, click **▼** -> **Expose Snapshot** to set writable snapshot capacity to expose the snapshot.



Capacity:	50	GB 🔻 🕕
Available Space:	95 GB	
ble Space:	95 GB	

Figure 213: Set Writable Snapshot Capacity to Expose Snapshot

- 2. Enter a **Capacity** which is reserved for the snapshot. If the size is 0, the exposed snapshot will be read only. Otherwise, the exposed snapshot can be read / written, and the size will be the maximum capacity for writing.
- 3. Click the **OK** button.
- 4. Click ▼ -> Map LUN to map a LUN to the snapshot. Please refer to the chapter 8.6, Configure LUN Mappings section for detail.
- 5. Done. The Snapshot can be used as a volume.



TIP:

If the capacity of exposed snapshot is set to 0, the snapshot is read only. If it is not 0, the snapshot can be writable, and it becomes writable snapshot.

Unexpose Snapshot

Here's an example of unexposing a snapshot.

- Select the Snapshots function submenu, click ▼ -> Unexpose Snapshot to unexposed snapshot
- 2. Click **OK** button.

Configure LUN Mappings

- 1. Select the Snapshots function submenu, click ▼ -> Map LUN to map a LUN to the snapshot. Please refer to the chapter 8.6, Configure LUN Mappings section for detail.
- 2. Click ▼ -> List LUNs to list all LUNs of the snapshot.
- 3. Click **▼** -> **Unmap LUNs** to unmap LUNs from the snapshot.



Delete One Snapshot

Select **Snapshots** function submenu, click ▼ -> **Delete** to delete the snapshot. All snapshots after deleted one will be deleted.



CAUTION:

If a snapshot has been deleted, the other snapshots which are earlier than it will also be deleted. The space occupied by these snapshots will be released after deleting.

Delete All Snapshots

To clean up all the snapshots, please follow these steps.

- There are two methods to cleanup snapshots. Select the Snapshots function submenu, click Delete Snapshots button. Of select the Volumes function submenu, selects a volume. And then click ▼ -> Delete Snapshots.
- 2. Click the **OK** to apply. It will delete all snapshots of the volume and release the snapshot space.

12.1.3. Configure Rollback Snapshot

Rollback Snapshot

The data in snapshot can roll back to the original volume. Please follow the procedures.

- Select the Snapshots function submenu, selects a snapshot. And then click ▼ -> Rollback Snapshot to roll back the snapshot to the volume.
- 2. Click the **OK** to apply.



CAUTION:

Before executing rollback, it is better that the disk is unmounted on the host computer for flushing data from cache.

When a snapshot has been rolled-back, the related snapshots which are earlier than it will also be removed. But the rest snapshots will be kept after rollback.



12.1.4. Configure Schedule Snapshots

The snapshots can be taken by schedule such as hourly or daily. Please follow the procedures.

 There are two methods to set schedule snapshots. Select the Snapshots function submenu, click the Schedule Snapshots button. Or select the Volumes function submenu, selects a volume. And then click ▼ -> Schedule Snapshots.

Schedule Snapshots			
Vol-1			
Months to Take Snapshots:	All 01 02 03 05 06 07 09 10 11	08	
Weeks to Take Snapshots:	All 1 2 3 3 4 5		
Days to Take Snapshots:	 ✓ All ✓ Sun ✓ Mon ✓ Thu ✓ Fri ✓ Sat 		
Hours to Take Snapshots:	All 00 01 02 04 05 06 08 09 10 12 13 14 16 17 18 20 21 22	07 11 15 19	
Minutes to Take Snapshots:	All 00 00 15 0 30 0	45	
Auto Mapping:	0		
	Allowed Hosts:	8	
			OK Cancel

Figure 214: Schedule Snapshots

- 2. Check the schedules you want to set. They can be set by monthly, weekly, daily, or hourly. Check the **Auto Mapping** box to map a LUN automatically when the snapshot is taken. And the LUN can access by the **Allowed Hosts** column.
- 3. Click the **OK** to apply.



INFORMATION:

Daily snapshot will be taken at 00:00 daily.

Weekly snapshot will be taken every Sunday at 00:00.

Monthly snapshot will be taken every first day of the month at 00:00.



12.1.5. Snapshot Notices

Snapshot function applies copy-on-write technique on volume and provides a quick and efficient backup methodology. When taking a snapshot, it does not copy any data at first time until a request of data modification comes in. The snapshot copies the original data to snapshot space and then overwrites the original data with new changes. With this technique, snapshot only copies the changed data instead of copying whole data. It will save a lot of disk space.

Data Consistent Snapshot

Before using snapshot, users should understand why sometimes the data becomes corrupted after rollback of snapshot. Please refer to the following diagram.

When the data is modified from the host computer, the data will pass through file system and memory of the host (write cache). Then the host will flush the data from memory to physical disks, no matter the disk is local disk (IDE or SATA), DAS (SCSI or SAS), or SAN (fibre or iSCSI). From the viewpoint of the storage device, it cannot control the behavior of the host side. It sometimes happens that when a snapshot is taken, some data is still in memory and did not flush to disk. Then the snapshot may have an incomplete image of the original data. The problem does not belong to the storage device. To avoid this data inconsistency issue between a snapshot and original data, the user must make the operating system flushes the data from memory of the host (write cache) into disk before taking snapshot.

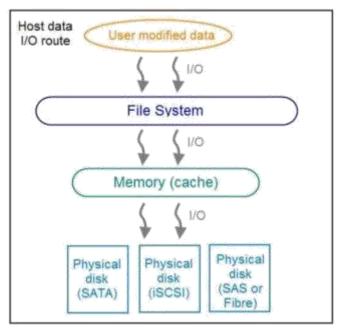


Figure 215: Host data I/O Route



On Linux and UNIX platforms, a command named **sync** can be used to make the operating system flush data from write cache to disk. For the Windows platform, Microsoft also provides a tool – **sync**, which does exactly the same thing as the **sync** command in Linux/UNIX. It will tell the OS to flush the data on demand. For more information about **sync** tool, please refer to <u>http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/sysinternals/bb897438.aspx</u>

Besides the sync tool, Microsoft developed VSS (volume shadow copy service) to prevent this issue. VSS is a mechanism for creating consistent "point-in-time" copies of data known as shadow copies. It is a coordinator between backup software, application (SQL or Exchange...) and storage systems to make sure snapshots can occur without the problem of data-irregularities. For more information about the VSS, please refer to http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc785914.aspx. eterio SAN storage systems fully support Microsoft VSS.

Run Out of Snapshot Space

Before using snapshot, a snapshot space is needed from pool capacity. After a period of working snapshot, what if the snapshot size over the snapshot space of user defined? There are two different situations:

- 1. If there are two or more snapshots existed, the system will try to remove the oldest snapshots (to release more space for the latest snapshot) until enough space is released.
- 2. If there is only one snapshot existed, the snapshot will fail. Because the snapshot space is run out.

For example, there are two or more snapshots existed on a volume and the latest snapshot keeps growing. When it comes to the moment that the snapshot space is run out, the system will try to remove the oldest snapshot to release more space for the latest snapshot usage. As the latest snapshot is growing, the system keeps removing the old snapshots. When it comes that the latest snapshot is the only one in system, there is no more snapshot space which can be released for incoming changes, then snapshot will fail.

Maximum Snapshot Quantity per Volume

There are up to 64 snapshots can be created per volume. What if the 65th snapshot has been taken? There are two different situations:

- 1. If the snapshot is configured as schedule snapshot, the latest one (the 65th snapshot) will replace the oldest one (the first snapshot) and so on.
- 2. If the snapshot is taken manually, when taking the 65th snapshot will fail, and a warning message will be showed on web user interface.

Rollback and Delete Snapshot

When a snapshot has been rolled back, the related snapshots which are earlier than it will also be removed. But the rest snapshots will be kept after rollback. If a snapshot has been deleted, the other snapshots which are earlier than it will also be deleted. The space occupied by these snapshots will be released after deleting.



12.2. Managing Local Clones

Local clone is used to make a duplicate copy of a volume in the same storage pool as well as in a separate storage pool within the same enclosure. In setting up local clone task, the first clone is a full copy. From now on, the cloning is a differential copy, created using snapshot functionality. Manual and scheduled tasks are available for management flexibility. In the event that the source volume is broken, and it fails, IT managers can quickly switch to the cloned volume and resume data services.



Figure 216: Local Clone Diagram

12.2.1. Theory of Operation

At the beginning, copy all data from the source volume to target. It is also called full copy. Afterwards, take a snapshot on source volume and then copy delta data to perform the incremental copy.



TIP:

Please be fully aware that the incremental copy needs to use snapshot to compare the data difference. Therefore, having enough snapshot space for the volume is very important.



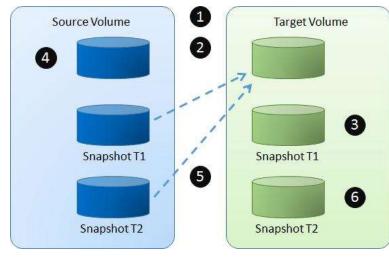


Figure 217: Local Clone Steps

In general, local clone operates as follows:

- 1. Create a local clone task, 2 snapshots are taken on the Source Volume.
- 2. Data from the Source Snapshot T1 is copied to the Target Volume.
- 3. The Target Snapshot T1 is refreshed and becomes the common base.
- 4. Host keeps writing new data to the Source Volume.
- 5. At next synchronization, the Source Snapshot T2 is refreshed and copies only the changes since the last synchronization.
- 6. The Target Snapshot T2 is refreshed and becomes the common base.

The local clone operations are under the Volumes function tab which provides to setup local clone task, start or stop the tasks, setup local clone schedule, and delete tasks. The maximum clone task quantity per volume is 1, and the maximum clone task quantity per system is 64.

Table 58: Local Clone Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum clone task quantity per volume (Maximum clone pairs per source volume)	1
Maximum clone task quantity per system	64

Rollback Local Clone

Rollback local clone operates are in the following:

- 1. After completing the local clone task, the data can be rolled-back.
- 2. Exchange the roles of source and target volume, follow the operations on local clone to create a local clone task. Notice that the data in original volume will be destroyed. You have to comprehensive consideration before doing.
- 3. Or create a new target volume to back-up to.



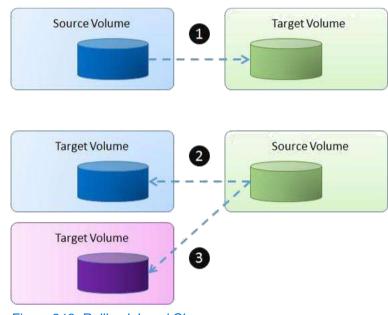


Figure 218: Rollback Local Clone

12.2.2. Configure Local Clone

Create a Local Clone Task

Here's an example of creating a local clone from source volume to target one. Assume that we define the name in the example.

- Source Volume Name: Source-Vol-1
- Target Volume: Name: Target-Vol-2
- 1. Before cloning, it must have a backup target volume. Select the **Volumes** function submenu, click the **Create Volume** button. And then select **Volume Type** to **Backup Volume**. Please refer to the chapter 8.5.1, Create a Volume section for detail.

General	Volume General Setting			
Advanced	Please enter a volume na	me and configure the	s volum	e general settings.
Summary	Volume Name :	Target-Vol-2		
	Pool Name :	Pool-1		(Available : 1107 GB)
	Capacity	11		G8 *
	Volume Type :	RAID Volume		
	Select RAID Volume to replication.	RAID volume Backup Volume	a.	sckup Volume for backup usage such as the target volume of local clone or remo

Figure 219: Create Target Volume



 Source 			Health	Capacity	Volume Type	\$80 Cathe	Snapshot Space	Snapahota	Glone	Write	Fooi Name
	Ince-Vol-1	Online	Cynnal	10.00 GB	RAID Volume	Disabled	0 MB / 0 MB	0	N/A	WE	Podi-t
• Target	pet-Vol-2	Chine	(Optimal	11.00-98	Backup Volume	Daabled	D MB / D MB	0	NOA.	WE	Posi-1

Figure 220: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone

- 2. Select the source volume, and then click **▼** -> **Create Local Clone**.
- 3. Select a target volume, and then click the **OK** button.

	Volume Name	Capacity	Status	Health	Pool Name
ľ	Target-Vol-2	11.00 GB	Online	Optimal	Pool-1

Figure 221: Create Local Clone



TIP:

The volume type of the target volume should be set as **Backup Volume**. Please refer to the chapter 8.5.1, Create a Volume in the Storage Management chapter.

- 4. At this time, if the source volume has no snapshot space, it will be allocated snapshot space for clone usage automatically. The capacity will depend on the parameter of **Cloning Options**.
- 5. Done, now ready to start cloning volumes.

RAID Volume Disabled 1.58 GB / 21.58 GB 0 Target-Vol-2 WB Pool-1	PRODUCTO			Health	Status	Volume Name	
	Disabled	RAID Volume	10.00 GB	Optimal	Online	Source-Vol-1	۷
Backup Volume Disabled 0 MB / 0 MB 0 N/A WB Pool-1	Disabled	Backup Volume	11.00 GB	Optimal	Online	Target-Vol-2	

Figure 222: List Source and Target Volumes



Start Local Clone Task

To start cloning, please follow the procedures.

- 1. Select the source volume, and then click **▼** -> **Start Local Clone**.
- 2. Click the **OK** button. The source volume will take a snapshot, and then start cloning.

Stop Local Clone Task

To stop cloning, please follow the procedures.

- 1. Select the source volume, and then click **▼** -> **Stop Local Clone**.
- 2. Click the **OK** button to stop cloning.

Delete Local Clone Task

To clear the clone task, please follow the procedures.

- 1. Select the source volume, and then click **▼** -> **Delete Local Clone**.
- 2. Click the **OK** button to clear clone task.

12.2.3. Configure Schedule Local Clone Tasks

The clone task can be set by schedule such as hourly or daily. Please follow the procedures.

1. Select the source volume, and then click ∇ -> Schedule Local Clone.

Schedule Local Clone		
Set Local Clone Schedule:	Source-Val-1	
Months in the Year:	01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12	
Weeks in the Honth:	0 Al 0 1 0 2 0 3 0 4 0 5	
Days of the Week:	에 All 에 Sun 에 Mon 에 Tue 에 Wed 에 Thu 에 Fri에 Sat	
Hours in the Day:	All 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23	
Minutes in the Hour:	5 AR 5 00 00 15 0 30 0 45	
		OK Carcel

Figure 223: Schedule Local Clone



2. Check the schedules which you want. They can be set by monthly, weekly, daily, or hourly. Click the **OK** button to apply.

INFORMATION:	
---------------------	--

Daily snapshot will be taken at 00:00 daily.

Weekly snapshot will be taken every Sunday at 00:00.

Monthly snapshot will be taken every first day of the month at 00:00.

12.2.4. Local Cloning Options

Select the **Volumes** function submenu, click the **Local Clone Options** button. There are three options, described in the following.

Local Clone Options		
Automatic Snapshot Space Allocation Ratio: 🕕	2	۷
Automatic Snapshot Checkpoint Threshold: 🕕	50%	٣
Restart the task an hour later if it failed:	Enabled	ł
<u>,</u>		
	OK C	ancel

Figure 224: Local Cloning Options

- Automatic Snapshot Space Allocation Ratio: This setting is the ratio of the source volume and snapshot space. If the ratio is set to 2, when there is no snapshot space assigned for the volume, the system will automatically reserve a free pool space to set as the snapshot space with twice capacity of the volume. The options are 0.5 ~ 3.
- Automatic Snapshot Checkpoint Threshold: The setting will be effective after enabling schedule clone. The threshold will monitor the usage amount of the snapshot space. When the used snapshot space achieves the threshold, system will take a snapshot and start clone process automatically. The purpose of threshold could prevent the incremental copy failure immediately when running out of the snapshot space. For example, the default threshold is 50%. The system will check the snapshot space every hour. When the snapshot space is used over 50%, the system will start clone task automatically. And then continue monitoring the snapshot space. When the rest snapshot space has been used 50%, in other words, the total snapshot space has been used 75%, the system will start clone task again.



• **Restart the task an hour later if failed**. The setting will be effective after enabling a scheduled clone. When running out of snapshot space, the volume clone process will be stopped because there is no more available snapshot space. If this option is checked, the system will clear the snapshots of clone in order to release snapshot space automatically, and the clone task will be restarted after an hour. This task will start a full copy.



CAUTION:

The default snapshot space allocated by the system is two times the capacity of source volume. That is the best value of our suggestion. If user sets snapshot space manually and lower than the default value, understand that if the snapshot space is not enough, the clone task will fail.

12.2.5. Local Clone Notices

While the clone is processing manually, the incremental data of the volume is over the snapshot space. The clone will complete the task, but the clone snapshot will fail. At the next time, when trying to start clone, it will get a warning message "There is not enough of snapshot space for the operation". The user needs to clean up the snapshot space in order to use the clone feature. Each time the clone snapshot failed, it means that the system loses the reference value of incremental data. So it will need to make a full copy the next time a clone task starts.

12.3. Managing Remote Replications

Remote replication is a block-level, asynchronous, differential remote volume backup function through LAN or WAN. It has many powerful capabilities such as unlimited bandwidth, traffic shaping, and multiple connections per replication task.



Figure 225: Remote Replication Diagram



Remote replication uses the iSCSI function to set up a replication connection. It can use the full bandwidth of the assigned network port to allow the best backup speed. However, in order to balance replication traffic and non-replication traffic, the traffic shaping function can help to reserve necessary bandwidth for non-replication I/O.

If the replication task requires more bandwidth, Remote replication allows multiple connections per task by intelligently balancing the backup task across multiple connections to enhance the bandwidth.

Both manual and scheduled replication tasks are supported for flexible management. To handle huge data remote replication, Remote replication allows transforming local cloning task into a remote replication task. You can perform the local clone first for the full copy. Then use disk roaming function to physically transport the disk drives that contain the cloned volume to the remote site. Lastly, use the function of transforming from the local clone task to the remote replication one.



Figure 226: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication

12.3.1. Remote Replication Topologies

Remote replication supports multiple topologies to suit various disaster recovery configurations. They are one-directional, bi-directional, one-to-many, many-to-one, and many-to-many. Both the source volume and destination volume in a replication connection are exclusive to the pair. Either one can NOT be served as the source or destination volume of a different replication connection. Each SAN storage system can support up to 32 replication tasks concurrently. Below are the supported topologies.



Figure 227: One-Directional Remote Replication

A Source Volume (S) in Site A is replicating to a Target Volume (T) in Site B. This is the most basic remote replication topology.



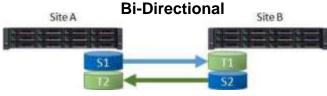


Figure 228: Bi-Directional Remote Replication

Each system in a two system topology acts as a replication target for the other's production data. A Source Volume (S1) in Site A is replicating to a Target Volume (T1) in Site B. And a Source Volume (S2) in Site B is replicating to a Target Volume (T2) in Site A.

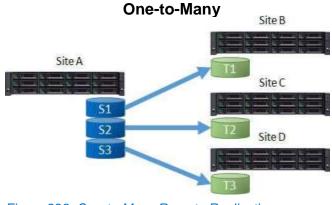


Figure 229: One-to-Many Remote Replication

A single source system replicates different storage resources to multiple target systems. A Source Volume (S1) in Site A is replicating to a Target Volume (T1) in Site B. At the same time, a Source Volume (S2) in Site A is replicating to a Target Volume (T2) in Site C. So, does S3 in Site A to T3 in Site D.

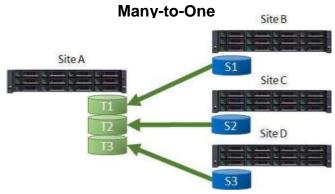


Figure 230: Many-to One Remote Replication

Multiple source systems replicate to a single target system. A Source Volume (S1) in Site B is replicating to a Target Volume (T1) in Site A. At the same time, a Source Volume (S2) in Site C is replicating to a Target Volume (T2) in Site A. So, does S3 in Site D to T3 in Site A.



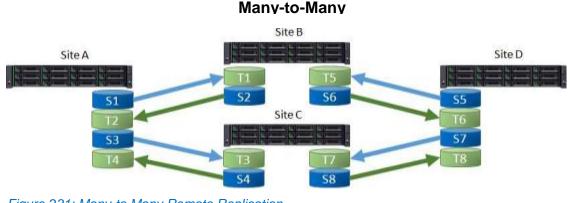


Figure 231: Many-to Many Remote Replication

Combination with bi-Directional, one-to-many, and many-to-one, remote replication also supports Many-to-Many topology. Multiple source systems replicate to multiple target systems. A Source Volume (S1) in Site A is replicating to a Target Volume (T1) in Site B. At the same time, a Source Volume (S2) in Site B is replicating to a Target Volume (T2) in Site A. And does S3 to T3, S4 to T4, ..., S8 to T8.



TIP:

Note that all supported topologies have a 1-to-1 configuration for each individual replication session in the topology.

The maximum replication task quantity per system is 32. It means that 32 systems are the maximum quantity of any many-to-one or one-to-many replication configuration.

12.3.2. Theory of Operation

At the beginning, replication will copy all data from the source volume to the target. It is also called a full copy. Afterwards, use snapshot technology to perform the incremental copy.



TIP:

Please be fully aware that the incremental copy needs to use snapshot to compare the data difference. Therefore, sufficient snapshot space for the volume is very important.



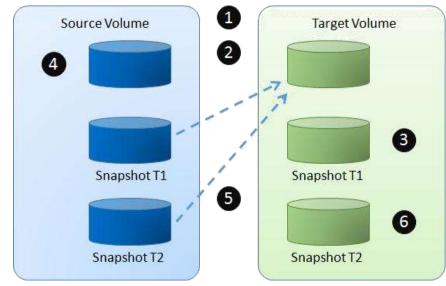


Figure 232: Remote Replication Steps

In general, remote replication operates in the following way.

- 1. Create a remote replication task, as the time going, two snapshots are taken on the Source Volume.
- 2. Data from the Source Snapshot T1 is copied to the Target Volume.
- 3. The Target Snapshot T1 is refreshed and becomes the common base.
- 4. Host keeps writing new data to the Source Volume.
- 5. At next synchronization, the Source Snapshot T2 is refreshed and copies only the changes since last synchronization.
- 6. The Target Snapshot T2 is refreshed and becomes the common base.

Select the Remote Replications function submenu to setup remote replication task, start, or stop tasks, setup remote replication schedule, delete tasks, and setup traffic shaping.



Figure 233: Snapshot Function Submenu

The maximum replication task quantity per volume is 1, and the maximum replication task quantity per system is 32, and the maximum traffic shaping quantity per system is 8.



Table 59: Remote Replication Parameters

Item	Value
Maximum remote replication task quantity per volume (Maximum remote replication pairs per source volume)	1
Maximum remote replication task quantity per system	32
Maximum traffic shaping quantity per system	8
Maximum iSCSI multi-path quantity in a remote replication task	2
Maximum iSCSI multiple connection quantity per remote replication task path	4

12.3.3. Configure Remote Replication

Create a Remote Replication Task

Here's an example of creating a remote replication task from source volume to target one. Assume that we define the name and the IP addresses in the example.



Figure 234: Example of Creating a Remote Replication Task

Site A Source Unit Configuration:

- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.1
- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.2
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.3
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.4
- Source Volume Name: Source-Vol-1

Site B Target Unit Configuration:

- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.101
- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.102
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.103
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.104
- Target Volume: Name: Target-Vol-2



Operate ESOS web UI of Site B target unit:

 Before replication, it must have a backup target volume. Select the Volumes function submenu, click the Create Volume button. And then select Volume Type to Backup Volume. Please refer to the chapter 8.5.1, Create a Volume section in the Storage Management chapter.

Create Volume				
General Advanced	Volume General Se Please enter a volum	mings re name and configure the	e volur	ne general settings
Summary	Volume Name :	Target-Vol-2		0
	Pool Name :	Pool-1		(Available : 1107 GB)
	Capacity :	11		G8. *
	Volume Type :	RAID Volume	. *	
	Select RAID Volu replication.	me fc RAID Volume Backup Volume		ackup Volume for backup usage such as the target volume of local clone or remote
				Next

Figure 235: Create Target Volume in Site B

2. After creating a target volume, please also setup snapshot space. So the snapshot of the source volume can replicate to the target volume. Please refer to the chapter 12.1.2, Configure Snapshot section.

				Capacity	Volume Type	BSD Cache	Snapshot Space	Snapshote	Cione	WYD6	Pool Nam
Target-Vo	Vei-3	Crime.	Optimal	11.00 GB	Backup Volume	Disabled	1.55 GB / 11.00 GB	8	NA	WB	Posl-1
	the second se										

Figure 236: List Target Volume in Site B

3. Map a LUN of the target volume. Please refer to the chapter 8.6, Configure LUN Mappings section in the Storage Management chapter.

Operate web UI of Site A source unit:

4. Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, click the **Create** button.



Source-Vol-1 10.00 GB Online None 0 Pool-1		Pool Na	Snapshots	LUN	Status	Capacity	Volume Name	
	ol-1	Pool-1	0	None	Online	10.00 GB	Source-Vol-1	۲
rst < prev 1 next> last>>			-			Det they dealer		10

Figure 237: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 1

5. Select a source volume, and then click the **Next** button.

Target IP Address: 10.10.1.101	

Figure 238: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 2

6. Select the **Source Port** and input the **Target IP Address**, and then click the **Next** button.



TIP:

Leave the setting of the **Source Port** to **Auto** if you don't want to assign a fixed one. The system will try to connect to the target IP address automatically.



oloct a	an Authent	ication Met	bod			
10 N	to Authenti	ication Met	hod			
() (HAP					
	CHAP Use	rname:	chap1		0	
	CHAP Pas	sword:			0	
elect a	a Target Na	ame Target	Name			
elect a	-55.4 	Target	Name 8.com.eterio :M D4224S-000d40000:de	v0.ctr1		
	No.	Target		v0.ctr1		
	No.	Target		v0.ctr1		

Figure 239: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 3

7. Select an Authentication Method and input the CHAP Username and CHAP Password if needed. Select a Target Name, and then click the Next button.



TIP:

This CHAP account is the iSCSI authentication of the Site B target unit. For more information about CHAP, please refer to the chapter 7.3.4, Configure iSCSI CHAP Accounts section in the Host Configuration chapter. Select **No Authentication Method** if there is no CHAP enabling in the Site B target unit.

	turer Model WWN
1 0 Target-Vol-2 11.00 GB eterio	MD4224S 205a0013780a21c0

Figure 240: Create a Remote Replication Task Step 4

8. Select a Target LUN in Site B target unit. Finally, click the **Finish** button.



	No	Bource Volume	Status	- %	Shaping	Speed	Target Volume	Capacity	Sch	ediate o 🖓	Dree Greated	Manufactorer	Model	WWN
۲	1	Biomen Val-1	Ontree		NUA	U MIS	Target Vol-2	11.00.08	NEA.	i la	790 Jul 13 17 56 14 3017	eterio	MD42245	205-0013700-01
ak Path	8													
nk Path		Rouma Post		ideasa	Taroat Na				1.04	Status				
ek Path	No.	Source Port	Target IP Ac 10.10.1.101		Target Na	me			LUN	Status Communit				

Figure 241: Remote Replication Task is Created

9. The replication task is created. At this time, if the source volume has no snapshot space, it will be allocated snapshot space for replication usage automatically. The size will depend on the parameter of replication options.

Start Remote Replication Task

To start the remote replication task, please follow the procedures.

Launch the ESOS web UI of Site A source unit:

- 1. Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, select the task, and then click ▼ -> **Start**.
- 2. Click the **OK** button. The source volume will take a snapshot, and then start remote replication.

Stop Remote Replication Task

To stop remote replication task, please follow the procedures.

Launch the ESOS web UI of Site A source unit:

- Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, select the task, and then click ▼ -> Stop.
- 2. Click the **OK** button to stop remote replication.

Delete Remote Replication Task

To delete the remote replication task, please follow the procedures.

Launch the ESOS web UI of Site A source unit:

- 1. Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, select the task, and then click ▼ -> **Delete**.
- 2. Click the **OK** button to delete the remote replication task.



12.3.4. Configure Traffic Shaping

The traffic shaping function can help to reserve necessary bandwidth for non-replication I/O operations. There are eight shaping groups which can be set. In each shaping group, peak and off-peak time slot are provided for different bandwidth. Here's an example of setting shaping group.

Configure Traffic Shaping

To configure traffic shaping groups, please follow the procedures.

Launch the ESOS web UI of Site A source unit:

1. Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, click the **Traffic Shaping Configuration** button.

ng Gr	oup	*							i an	Jupa	in the s	ans	100	0.16	1.01	-pe	anys	ENT (M)	6 2.						
							100							MB											
able (
Off-Pe	eak:					2	00						٩	1B											
	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	
Sun	1	1				1		1	1	1	1	1	1		1		8	1	1				1	1	
Mon	1					1			0	1	0	0						1	0	0			0	1	
Tue			1									0	60												
Wed	2	1			1	0			0		(2)	0							1				0	0	
Thu	1	1			0					(1)	圓								0						
Fri		8	(\mathbf{z})		0		1		1	(1)	1	1	1				0	1	뗿	1					
Sat	1	1			1			1	1	1	1		8			1	1	1	1						
inner (ř.	2							K.								5	9 ° °				

Figure 242: Shaping Setting Configuration

- 2. Select a Shaping Group to setup.
- 3. Input the bandwidth (MB) at the **Peak** time.
- 4. If needed, check the **Enable Off-Peak** box, and then input the bandwidth (MB) at **Off-Peak** time. And define the off-peak hour.
- 5. Click the **OK** button.



Set Traffic Shaping on Remote Replication Task

To set a shaping group on the remote replication task, please follow the procedures.

Operate web UI of Site A source unit:

1. Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, select the task, and then click ▼ -> **Set Traffic Shaping**.

Shaping Group:	Shaping Group1 (100MB) 🔻
	N/A
	Shaping Group1 (100MB)
	Shaping Group2 (100MB)
	Shaping Group3 (100MB)
	 Shaping Group4 (100MB) Shaping Group5 (100MB)
	Shaping Group6 (100MB)
	Shaping Group7 (100MB)
	Shaping Group8 (100MB)

Figure 243: Set Traffic Shaping

- 2. Select a Shaping Group from the drop-down list. And then click the **OK** button.
- 3. The shaping group is applied to the remote replication task.

12.3.5. Configure Schedule Remote Replication Tasks

The replication task can be set by schedule such as hourly or daily. Please follow the procedures.

Operate web UI of Site A source unit:

- 1. Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, select the task, and then click **▼** -> **Schedule**.
- 2. Check the schedules which you want. They can be set by monthly, weekly, daily, or hourly. Click the **OK** button to apply.



INFORMATION:

Daily snapshot will be taken at 00:00 daily.

Weekly snapshot will be taken every Sunday at 00:00.

Monthly snapshot will be taken every first day of the month at 00:00.



Remote Replication - Set Rem	ote Replication Schedule	
Set Remote Replication Sche	dule: Source-Vol-1	
Months in the Year:	All 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12	
Weeks in the Month:	All 1 2 3 4 5	
Days of the Week:	All Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat	
Hours in the Day:	 All 00 ≤ 01 ≤ 02 ≤ 03 04 ≤ 05 ≤ 06 ≤ 07 08 ≤ 09 ≤ 10 ≤ 11 12 ≤ 13 ≤ 14 ≤ 15 16 ≤ 17 ≤ 18 ≤ 19 20 ≤ 21 ≤ 22 ≤ 23 	
Minutes in the Hour:	☐ All 00 □ 15 □ 30 □ 45	
		OK Cancel

Figure 244: Schedule Remote Replication

12.3.6. Replication Options

Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, click the **Replications Options** button. There are three options, described in the following.

Remote Replication Options		
Automatic Snapshot Space Allocation Ratio: 🕕	2	٣
Automatic Snapshot Checkpoint Threshold: 🕕	50%	۲
Restart the task an hour later if it failed:	C Enabled	đ
	()(
	OKC	ancel

Figure 245: Replication Options



- Automatic Snapshot Space Allocation Ratio: This setting is the ratio of the source volume and snapshot space. If the ratio is set to 2, when there is no snapshot space assigned for the volume, the system will automatically reserve a free pool space to set as the snapshot space with twice capacity of the volume. The options are 0.5 ~ 3.
- Automatic Snapshot Checkpoint Threshold: The setting will be effective after enabling schedule replication. The threshold will monitor the usage amount of the snapshot space. When the used snapshot space achieves the threshold, system will take a snapshot and start replication process automatically. The purpose of threshold could prevent the incremental copy failure immediately when running out of the snapshot space. For example, the default threshold is 50%. The system will check the snapshot space every hour. When the snapshot space is used over 50%, the system will start replication task automatically. And then continue monitoring the snapshot space. When the rest snapshot space has been used 50%, in other words, the total snapshot space has been used 75%, the system will start replication task again.
- **Restart the task an hour later if failed**: The setting will be effective after enabling schedule replication. When running out of snapshot space, the volume replication process will be stopped because there is no more available snapshot space. If this option is checked, the system will clear the snapshots of replication in order to release snapshot space automatically, and the replication task will be restarted after an hour. This task will start a full copy.



CAUTION:

The default snapshot space allocated by the system is two times the capacity of source volume. That is the best value of our suggestion. If user sets snapshot space by manually and lower than the default value, user should take the risk if the snapshot space is not enough and the replication task will fail.

12.3.7. Configure MPIO in Remote Replication Task

In remote replication scenario, MPIO (Multi-Path I/O) are support for redundancy. Normally, the remote replication task is running on the master controller (usually is controller 1) of source unit. The data is replicated from the master controller of source unit to the controller of target unit which target IP Address sets in creating remote replication task (usually is also controller 1). The second path from source unit can be added to the controller 2 of target unit. The maximum MPIO in remote replication task is 2 paths. The following is the remote replication MPIO diagram.



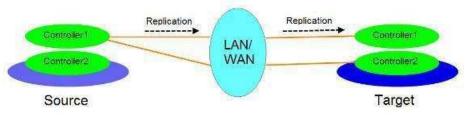


Figure 246: Remote Replication MPIO Diagram

How Redundancy Works with Remote Replication

If controller 1 fails on the source unit, the replication connection will be taken over by controller 2 and the replication task will continue running.

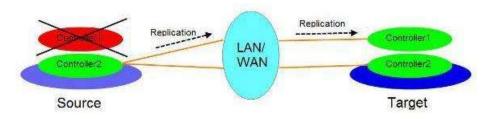


Figure 247: Remote Replication Source Controller Fail Diagram

In another scenario, when controller1 fails on the target unit, the replication connection will be failed over to the second path from the controller 1 of the source unit to controller 2 of target unit.

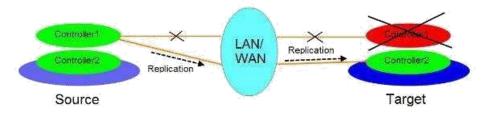


Figure 248: Remote Replication Target Controller Fail Diagram

Add Multipath in Remote Replication Task

Here's an example of adding the second path in the remote replication. Assume that we define the IP addresses in the example.



Site A Source Unit Configuration:

- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.1
- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.2
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.3
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.4
- Source Volume Name: Source-Vol-1

Site B Target Unit Configuration:

- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.101
- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.102
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.103
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.104
- Target Volume: Name: Target-Vol-2

Operate web UI of Site A source unit:

1. Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, select the task, and then click ▼ -> Add Multipath.

ource Port:	Auto	*	
arget IP Address:	10.10.1.103		
	22 - 700 - 076	12	
			Next

Figure 249: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 1

2. Select the **Source Port** and input the **Target IP Address**, and then click the **Next** button.



TIP:

Leave the setting of **Source Port** to **Auto** if you don't want to assign. The system will try to connect to the target IP address automatically.



	e Replication - Set Aut	thentication Method and Select a Target Name	
Select	an Authentication Me	ethod	
-0-1	No Authenticution Me	thod	
	СНАР		
	CHAP Username:	chap1 0	
	CHAP Password:		
		· · ·	
ielect i	a Target Name		
-	No. Targe	t Name	
۲	1 iqn.2018	8-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev0.ctr2	
۲	1 iqn.2018	8-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev0.ctr2	
۲	1 iqn.2018	8-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000::dev0.ctr2	
۲	1 iqn.2018	3-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev0.ctr2	
۲	1 iqn.2018	3-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev0.ctr2	
*	1 iqn.2018	3-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000:dev0.ctr2	
*	1 iqn.2016	9-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000::dev0.ctr2	
۲	1 iqn.2016	9-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000::dev0.ctr2	
۲	1 iqn.2016	9-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000d40000::dev0.ctr2	
*	1 iqn.2016	9-08.com.eterio:MD4224S-000040000::dev0.ctr2	

Figure 250: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 2

3. Select an Authentication Method and input the CHAP Username and CHAP Password if needed. Select a Target Name, and then click the Next button.



TIP:

This CHAP account is the iSCSI authentication of the Site B target unit. For more information about CHAP, please refer to the chapter 7.3.4, Configure iSCSI CHAP Accounts section in the Host Configuration chapter.

Select **No Authentication Method** if there is no CHAP enabled on the Site B target unit.



	No.	LUN.	Volume Name	Capacity	Manufacturer	Model	WWN
8	1	0	Target-Vol-2	11.00 GB	eterio	MD4224S	205a0013780a21c0
		di internetti					A second s

Figure 251: Add Multipath in Remote Replication Step 3

4. Select a **Target LUN** in Site B target unit. Finally, click **Finish** button.

	No	Source Volume	Status	.%	Shaping	Speed	Target Volume	Capacity	Sch	edule Ti
			Ottina			O ME	Earget1Vol-2			
Pet	ine .									
Pet	No	Source Port	Target IP Add	dress	Tarpet Na	718		_	LUN	Status
Pet		Source Port Auto	Target IP Add	dress	1		14224S-000d40000:dev0	l.ctr1	LUN	Status

Figure 252: List Multipath in Remote Replication Task

5. The second path in remote replication task is added.

Delete Multipath in Remote Replication Task

To delete multi path of the replication task, please follow the procedures.

Operate web UI of Site A source unit:

- Select the Remote Replications function submenu, select the task path, and then click
 ▼ -> Delete Path.
- 2. Click the **OK** button to delete the path.



12.3.8. Configure MC/S in Remote Replication Task Path

MC/S (Multiple Connections per Session) is another feature in remote replication. If there are more than one iSCSI ports available on source unit, and they can connect to the other iSCSI ports of the target unit, MC/S can be added for increasing the replicating speed. The maximum MC/S per task path is 4 connections.

Add Connections in Remote Replication Task Path

Here's an example of adding the second connection in the remote replication task. Assume that we define the IP addresses in the example.

Site A Source Unit Configuration:

- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.1
- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.2
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.3
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.4
- Source Volume Name: Source-Vol-1

Site B Target Unit Configuration:

- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.101
- Controller 1, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.102
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 1 IP Address: 10.10.1.103
- Controller 2, Onboard LAN 2 IP Address: 10.10.1.104
- Target Volume: Name: Target-Vol-2



Operate web UI of Site A source unit:

Select the Remote Replications function submenu, select the task path, and then click
 ▼ -> Add Connection.

Remote Replication - Ac	Id Path Connection	
Source Port:	Auto	٣
Farget IP Address:	10.10.1.102	
		OK Cancel

Figure 253: Add Path Connection

2. Select the **Source Port** and input the **Target IP Address**, and then click the **Next** button.



TIP:

Leave the setting of **Source Port** to **Auto** if you don't want to assign. The system will try to connect to the target IP address automatically.

	No:	Source Volume	Status	%	Shaping	Speed	Target Volume	Capacity	Sch	edule Tir
۳.		Source-Vol-1	Önline.		N/A	0 MB	Target-Vol-2	11.00 GB		
ik Pat	1	Source Port	Tarret IP Ad	dross	Target Na				LUN	Status
k Pat	hs No	Source Port	Target IP Ad	dress	Target Na	me			LUN	Status
ik Pat	1	Source Port	Target IP Ad				4224S-000d40000:dev0.c1		LUN 0	Status

Figure 254: List Multiple Connections in Remote Replication Task Path

3. The second connection in remote replication task path is added. If necessary, click ▼ -> Add Connection to add another.



Delete Connections in Remote Replication Task Path

To delete multi connections per session of the replication task path, please follow the procedures.

1. Operate Site A source unit. Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, select the **task path**, and then click **▼** -> **Delete Connection**.

			No.	Source Port	Target IP Address	Status
2 Auto 10.10.1.102 Connec	2 Auto 10.10.1.102 Connected)	1	Auto	10.10.1.101	Connected
		1	2	Auto	10.10.1.102	Connected

Figure 255: Delete Path Connection

- 2. Select the connection(s) which want to be deleted, and then click the **OK** button.
- 3. The multiple connection(s) are deleted.



TIP:

When deleting multiple connections, note that at least one connection must remain.

12.3.9. Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication

It is always being a problem that to do full copy over LAN or WAN when the replication task is executed at the first time. It may take days or weeks to replicate data from source to target within limited network bandwidth. We provide two methods to help users shorten the time of executing a full copy.

1. One is to skip full copy on a new, clean volume. The term "clean" means that the volume has never been written data since created. For a new created volume which has not been accessed, the system will recognize it and skip full copy automatically when the remote replication task is created on this volume at the first time.





TIP:

Any I/O access to the new created volume will make it as "not clean", even though executing "Erase" function when a volume is created. The full copy will take place in such a case.

2. The other way is to use local volume clone function, which is a local data copy function between volumes to execute full copy at the first time. Then carry all the physical disk drives of the target volume and move to the target unit. Finally, turn the local clone task into remote replication task with differential copy afterward.

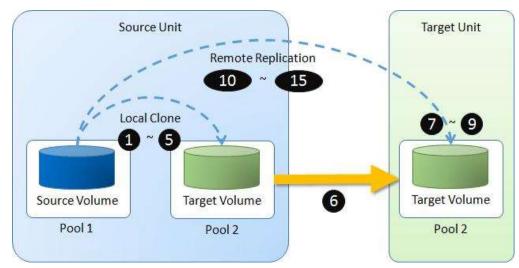


Figure 256: Local Clone Transfers to Remote Replication Diagram

To do that volume disk local clone transfers to remote replication, please follow the procedures.

Launch ESOS web UI of Site A source unit:

- Select the Volumes function submenu, select a source volume, and click ▼ -> Create Local Clone to create a local clone task. For more information about local clone, please refer to the chapter 12.2.2, Configure Local Clone section.
- 2. Click ▼ -> Start Local Clone to execute full copy the data from source volume to target one.
- 3. Click ▼ -> Covert to Remote Replication to change the local clone task to a remote replication task.



	Cione	Snapohoto	Snapshot Space	550 Cache	Volume Type	Capacity	Hoalth	Status	Volume Name	
WB Poo	QRep	-t	3.04 GB / 23.04 GB	Deatried	RAID Volume	10.00 GB	Cetmal	Online	Source-Vol-1	•
WB Poo	NSA :	0	OMB/OMB	Deathed	Backup Volume	11.00 GB	Optimal	- Ovine	Target-Vol-2	

Figure 257: List Source and Target Volumes for Local Clone

4. The **Clone** column of the source volume will be changed from the name of the target volume into **QRep**.



CAUTION:

Converting a local clone task to a remote replication one is only available when the clone task has been finished. This change is irreversible.

- 5. Select the **Pools** function submenu, select the pool, and click **▼** -> **Deactive**.
- 6. Plug out all the physical disk drives, and carry them to Site B, plug them into the target unit.

Operate web UI of Site B target unit:

- 7. Select the **Pools** function submenu, select the pool, and click **▼** -> **Active**.
- 8. Select the **Volumes** function submenu, please setup snapshot space. So, the snapshot of the source volume can replicate to the target volume. Please refer to the chapter 12.1.2, Configure Snapshot section.
- 9. Map a LUN of the target volume. Please refer to the chapter 8.6, Configure LUN Mappings section in the Storage Management chapter.

Launch ESOS web UI of Site A source unit:

10. Select the **Remote Replications** function submenu, click the **Rebuild** button to rebuild the remote replication task which is changed from a clone task formerly.

	Volume Name	Capacity	Status	LUN	Snapshots	Pool Name	
۲	Source-Vol-1	10.00 GB	Online	None	1	Pool-1	
- 186	st < prev 1 ne	nt < 1031 < <					

Figure 258: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 1



11. Select a **source volume**, and then click the **Next** button.

Source Port: Auto Target IP Address: 10.10.1.101	
Farget IP Address: 10.10.1.101	

Figure 259: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 2

12. Select the **Source Port** and input the **Target IP Address**, and then click the **Next** button.

TIP:

Leave the setting of **Source Port** to **Auto** if you don't want to assign a fixed one. The system will try to connect to the target IP address automatically.

		ition Method			
@ N	lo Authentica	tion Method			
@ c	HAP				
	CHAP Usern				
	CHAP Passv	vord:		0	
elect a	a Target Nam	e			
	No.	Target Name			
۲	1	iqn.2018-08.com.eterio:MD4224	4S-000d40000:dev0.ctr1		

Figure 260: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 3



13. Select an **Authentication Method** and input the **CHAP Username** and **CHAP Password** if needed. Select a **Target Name**, and then click the **Next** button.



TIP:

This CHAP account is the iSCSI authentication of the Site B target unit. For more information about CHAP, please refer to the chapter 7.3.4, Configure iSCSI CHAP Accounts section in the Host Configuration chapter.

Select **No Authentication Method** if there is no CHAP enabled on the Site B target unit.

LUN Volume Name Capacity Manufacturer Model WWN 0 Target-Vol-2 11.00 GB eterio MD4224S 205a0013780a21c0		ana caracta Ci		ne on the target sid			1.4.4.4	
U larget-Vol-2 11.00 GB eterio MD4224S 205a0013780a21c0		No.	LUN		Internet Constant		10020000	72121/154
		1	U	larget-vol-z	11.00 00	eteno	101042243	2008001010082100
	-						- La	

Figure 261: Rebuild Clone Relationship Step 4

14. Select a **Target LUN** in Site B target unit. Finally, click the **Finish** button.

	No	Source Volume	Statue	5	Shaping	Speed	Target Volume	Capacity	Schedu	ie Tre	e Created	Manufacturer.	Model	WHEN
			-									eterio	MD42245	
	No	Source Ptrf.	Target IF Add	3535	Target Nat	TE		24	UN 3	Status.				
•	No:	Source Ptril Auto	Target IP Ad	dens:	1.000000000		4224S-000d40000:dev0.		1011 A	Solus Connected	-			

Figure 262: Remote Replication Task is Created

15. The replication task from local clone is created.



13. Monitoring

The **MONITORING** function menu provides submenus of **Log Center**, **Enclosures**, and **Performance**.

13.1. Log Center

Select the **Event Logs** function tab in the **Log Center** function submenu to show event messages. Select or unselect the checkbox of **Information**, **Warning**, or **Error** levels to show or hide those events.



Figure 263: Log Center Function Submenu

Туре	Time	Content
Information	Tue, 05 Jun 2018 13:04:29	[CTR1] admin login from 109.190.253.11 via web UI.
Information	Tue, 05 Jun 2018 13:04:07	[CTR1] admin login from 109.190.253.11 via web UI.
Information	Tue, 05 Jun 2018 11:36:23	[CTR1] admin login from 192.168.30.120 via web UI.
Information	Tue, 05 Jun 2018 07:31:08	[CTR1] admin login from 180.218.151.119 via web UI.
Information	Tue, 05 Jun 2018 00:48:08	[CTR1] admin login from 94.254.230.1 via web UI.
Information	Mon, 04 Jun 2018 19:05:37	[CTR1] The volume 'test123' has been renamed to 'test1'.
Information	Mon, 04 Jun 2018 19:05:10	[CTR1] The volume 'test' has been renamed to 'test123'.
Information	Mon, 04 Jun 2018 15:43:59	[CTR2] The cache protection function is enabled.
Warning	Mon, 04 Jun 2018 15:43:04	[CTR1] Controller 1 was forced to become the master because of failover.
Information	Mon, 04 Jun 2018 15:42:59	[CTR1] All volumes in the controller 1 completed failover process.
Information	Mon, 04 Jun 2018 15:42:59	[CTR1] The controller 1 forced to adopt write-through mode on failover.

Figure 264: Event Logs



The event logs are displayed in reverse order which means the latest event log is on the first top page. They are actually saved in the first four disk drives of the head unit; each disk drive has one copy of event log. For one system, there are four copies of event logs to make sure users can check event log any time when there are failed disks. If there are no disk drives in the first four slots, the event logs will keep in memory temporary, and will disappear after system reboots.

The event logs record all system events. Each event has time frame that identifies the type of event that occurred, and has one of the following severities:

- **Error**: A failure occurred that may affect data integrity or system stability. Correct the problem as soon as possible.
- **Warning**: A problem occurred that may affect system stability, but not data integrity. Evaluate the problem and correct it if necessary.
- Information: An operation recorded that may help to debug.

13.1.1. Operations on Event Logs

The options are available on this tab:

Mute Buzzer

Click the **Mute Buzzer** button to stop alarm if the system alerts.

Download Event Logs

Click the **Download** button to save the event log as a file. It will pop up a filter dialog as the following. The default is "Download all event logs".

Download Event Logs	
 Download all event logs The latest 10% of the event logs The latest 20% of the event logs The last 24 hours event logs The last 7 days event logs The last 31 days event logs 	
	OK Cancel

Figure 265: Download Event Logs

Clear Event Logs

Click the Clear button to clear all event logs.





TIP:

Please plug-in any of the first four hard drives, then event logs can be saved and displayed in next system boot up. Otherwise, the event logs cannot be saved.

13.2. Monitoring Enclosures

The **Enclosures** function submenu provides **Hardware Monitoring** and **SES** tabs to show and monitor enclosure information.

		Hardware Monitoring	SES
	MONITORING		
0.000	Log Center		
	Enclosures		
	Performance		

13.2.1. Hardware Monitoring

Select the **Hardware Monitoring** function tab in the **Enclosures** function submenu shows the information of current voltages, temperatures, status of power supply's, and fan modules.



Endosure ID: 0 (Head Unit: 4224L)

Controller 1

Туре	Item	Value	Low Critical	Low Warning	High Warning	High Critical	Status
Voltage	+3.3V	+3.29 ∀	+3.04 V	+3.14 V	+3.47 V	+3.56 V	Good
Voltage	Standby +3.3V	+3.31 V	+3.04 V	+3.14 V	+3.47 V	+3.56 V	Good
Voltage	CPU 10G6E MAC	+1.05 V	+0.98 V	+1.02 V	+1.07 V	+1.12 V	Good
Voltage	CPU South Complex	+1.00 V	+0.90 V	+0.95 V	+1.05 V	+1.10 V	Good
Voltage	CPU KR/KX PHY	+1.29 V	+1.23 V	+1.24 V	+1.35 V	+1.37 V	Good
Voltage	SAS Expander	+0.89 V	+0.61 V	+0.85 V	+0.95 V	+0.99 V	Good
Voltage	SAS IOC	+0.95 V	+0.87 V	+0.92 V	+1.03 V	+1.08 V	Good
Voltage	Battery	+3.16 V	+2.00 V	+2.30 ∨	+3.47 V	+3.56 V	Good
Voltage	+1.2V	+1.25 V	+1.05 V	+1.13V	+1.28 V	+1.32 V	Good
Voltage	+8.82V	+0.82 V	+0.73 V	+0.77 V	+0.86 V	+0.90 V	Good
Voltage	VCore	+1.80 V	+1.40 V	+1.45 V	+1.97 V	+2.00 V	Good
Temperature	CPU	60.0°C / 140.0°F	0.0°C/32.0°F	5.0°C / 41.0°F	82.0°C / 179.6°F	95.0°C / 203.0°F	Good
Temperature	SLOT1	55.1°C7131.2°F	-20.0°C / -4.0°F	0.0°C / 32.0°F	80.0°C / 176.0°F	85.0°C / 185.0'F	Good
Temperature	SAS Expander	71.9°C / 161.4°F	0.0°C/32.0°F	5.0°C / 41.0°F	90.0°C / 194.0°F	95.0°C / 203.0°F	Good

Controller 2

Туре	item	Value	Low Critical	Low Warning	High Warning	High Critical	Status
Voltage	+3.3V	+3.26 V	+3.04 V	+3.14 V	+3.47 ∨	+3.56 V	Good
Voltage	Standby +3.3V	+3.34 V	+3.04 V	+3.14 V	+3.47 V	+3.56 V	Good
Voltage	CPU 100bE MAC	41.05 V	+0.98 V	+1.02 V	+1.07 V	+1.12 V	Good
Voltage	CPU South Complex	+1.00 V	+0.90 V	+0.95 V	+1.05 V	+1.10 V	Good
Voltage	CPU KRIKX PHY	41.28 V	+1.23 V	+1.24 V	+1.35 V	+1.37 V	Good
Voltage	SAS Expander	+0.89 V	+0.81 V	+0.85 V	+0.95 V	+0.99 V	Good
Voltage	SAS IOC	+0.95 V	+0.87 V	+0.92.V	+1.03.V	+1.08 V	Good
Voltage	Battery	+2.91 V	+2.00 V	+2.30 V	+3.47 V	+3.56 V	Good
Voltage	+1.2V	*1.25 V	+1.08 V	+1.13 V	+1.28 V	+1.32 V	Good
Voltage	+0.82V	+0.81 V	+0.73 V	+0.77 V	+0.86 V	+0.90 V	Good
Voltage	VCore	+1:79 V	+1.40 V	+1.45 V	*1.97 V	+2.00 V	Good
Temperature	CPU	62.0°C / 143.6°F	0.0°C / 32.0°F	5.0°C / 41.0°F	82.0°C / 179.6°F	95.0°C / 203.0°F	Good
Temperature	SLOT1	51.1°C / 124.0'F	-20.0°C / -4.0°F	0.0°C / 32.0°F	80.0°C / 176.0°F	85.0°C / 185.0°F	Good
Temperature	SAS Expander	67.6°C / 163.5°F	0.0°C / 32.0°F	6.0°C/41.0°F	90.0°C / 194.0°F	95.0°C / 203.0°F	Good

Backplane

Туре	Item	Value	Low Critical	Low Warning	High Warning	High Critical	Status
Voltage	+5V	+6.03 V	+4.50 V	44.60 V	+5.40 V	+5.60 V	Good
Voltage	PSU +12V	+12.21 V	+10.80 V	+11.04 V	+12.96 V	+13.20 V	Good
Voltage	+3.37	+3.32 V	+2.97 V	+3.04 V	+3.56 V	+3.63 V	Good
Voltage	Standby +3.3V	+3.33 V	+2.97 V	+3.04 V	+3.66 V	+3.63 V	Good.
Temperature	Location Left	32.3°C/90.1°F	-20.0°C / -4.0°F	6.0°C/32.0°F	55.0°C / 131.0'F	78.0°C / 158.0°F	Good
Temperature	Location Middle	34.8°C/94.6'F	-20.0°C / -4.0°F	0.0°C / 32.0°F	55.0°C / 131.0°F	70.0°C / 158.0°F	Good
Temperature	Location Right	34,51C / 94,11F	-20.0°C / -4.0°F	0.0°C/32.0°F	55.0°C / 131.0'F	70.0°C / 158.0°F	Good

System Components

Туре	ltern	Value	Low Critical	Low Warning	High Warning	High Critical	Status
Power Supply	PSUI	NA					Good
Power Supply	PSU2	NA					Good
Fan Module	FAN1	7458 RPM					Good
Fan Module	FAN2	7377 RPM					Good
Fan Module	FAN3	7377 RPM					Good
Fan Module	FAN4	7417 RPM					Good

Figure 267: Hardware Monitoring



Monitoring Notifications

The status of the voltage and temperature are Good if their values are between **Low Warning** and **High Warning**. If the value is lower than **Low Warning** or higher than **High Warning**, the system will send a warning event log. If it is lower than **Low Critical** or higher than **High Critical**, an error event log will be sent.



TIP:

For better protection and avoiding a single short period of abnormal voltage or temperature, it is recommend enabling **Auto Shutdown** setting which could trigger an automatic shutdown. This is done using several sensors placed on key systems that the system checks every 30 seconds for present voltages or temperatures. The following items are trigger conditions.

- The value of voltage or temperature is lower than Low Critical or higher than High Critical.
- When one of these sensors reports above the threshold for three contiguous minutes, the system will be shutdown automatically.

For more information about auto shutdown, please refer to the chapter 6.3.1, Boot Management Settings section in the System Settings chapter.

Fan Module Mechanism

Fan speed will adjust automatically according to system thermal and the status of power and fan. For more information, please refer to the chapter 2.6, Fan Module and the chapter 6.3, Removing / Installing the Fan Module in the eterio SAN Hardware User's Manual.

13.2.2. Configuring SES

SES (SCSI Enclosure Services) is an enclosure management standard. The host can communicate with the enclosure using a LUN and a specialized set of SCSI commands to monitor hardware characteristics. Select SES function tab in Enclosure function submenu to enable or disable the management of SES. Enable SES will map an iSCSI LUN or a FC LUN.

Enable SES

Here's an example of enabling SES.

1. Select **SES** function tab in **Enclosure** function submenu, click the **Enable SES** button.



Enable SES			
Allowed Hosts:	*		
Target:	0	*	

Figure 268: Enable SES

- 2. Select the **Protocol** as iSCSI.
- 3. Enter the Allowed Hosts with semicolons (;) or fill-in wildcard (*) for access by all hosts.
- 4. Select a **Target** from the drop-down list.
- 5. Click the **OK** button to enable SES.

SCSI Enclosure Services

SES (SCSI Enclosure Services) is an enclosure management standard.

Allowed Hosts	Target	LUN
*	0	0

Disable SES

Figure 269: SES Status

Disable SES

Click the Disable button to disable SES.

SES Client Tool

The SES client software is available at the following web site:

SANtools: http://www.santools.com/



13.3. Performance Monitoring

The **Performance** function submenu provides **Disk**, **iSCSI**, and **Fibre Channel** tabs to monitor performance.

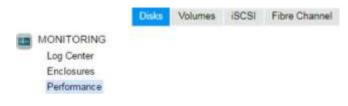


Figure 270: Performance Function Submenu

13.3.1. Disk Performance Monitoring

Select the **Disks** function tab in the **Performance** function submenu to display the throughput and latency of the disk drives. Check the slots which you want to monitor.



CAUTION:

Enabling performance monitoring will reduce I/O performance. Please use with caution.



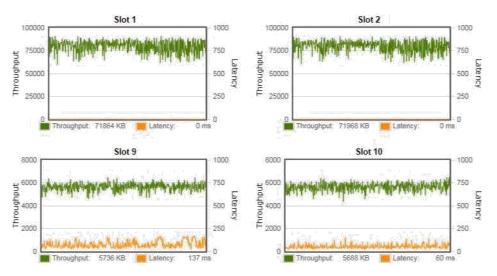


Figure 271: Performance Function Submenu



13.3.2. Volume Performance Monitoring

Select the **Volume** function tab in the **Performance** function submenu to display throughput and IOPS of volumes. Each time you can monitor 10 volumes. Note that enabling performance monitoring may impact I/O performance. Please click the **Select Volumes** button to select the volumes for performance monitoring.

	Name	Status	Health	Capacity	Pool
i.	Vol-1	Online	Optimal	100.00 GB	Pool-1
	V61-2	Online	Optimal	100 00 GB	Pool-1
6	V663	Online	Optimal	100.00 GB	Pool-2

Figure 272: Select Volumes to Monitor

Please check the volumes to enable performance monitoring.

	Throughput		IOPS
250		50000 F	
200	Manadala, Undersely were seen as a calcular la calcular were lived as the calculation of the	40000	Millional Indianamana an in the state and a self-the state of the stat
150	hiterallica (, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	30000	had welling a second with the shall be a second of the second sec
100	Media and Manufande manufan Andre	20000	
50		10000	
0	TX: 200.00 MBps	0	IOPS: 39122.00

Figure 273: Volume Performance Monitoring

13.3.3. iSCSI Port Performance Monitoring

Select the **iSCSI** function tab in the **Performance** function submenu to display TX (Transmission) and RX (Reception) of the iSCSI ports. Check the interfaces which you want to monitor.



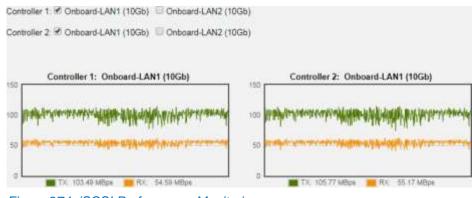


Figure 274: iSCSI Performance Monitoring

13.3.4. Fibre Channel Port Monitoring

Select the **Fibre Channel** function tab in the **Performance** function submenu display TX (Transmission) and RX (Reception) of the fibre channels. Check the interfaces which you want to monitor.



14. SED and ISE Support

With data security issues at the time, the company places a high priority on ensuring that sensitive data is protected from unauthorized access. Whether it is due to internal policies or external compliance, access to data remains a matter of high importance for all organizations. These organizations will seek out storage manufacturers that provide a stored data protection method, SED (Self-Encrypting Drive), that has both authentication and encryption features.

In addition, ISE (Instant Secure Erase) drive is designed to protect data on hard disk drives by instantly resetting the drive back to factory settings and changing the encryption key so that any data remaining on the drive is cryptographically erased. This means all data on the drive is permanently and instantly unreadable, as needed.

13.1. Overview

When disk drives are retired and moved outside from the data center into someone else's hands, the data on those drives is put at significant risk. IT administrators routinely retire drives for a variety of reasons, including:

- Returning drives for warranty, repair, maintenance, or expired lease agreements
- Removal and disposal of disk drives
- Repurposing drives to another storage

Through the study found that almost all drives eventually leave the enterprise or data center, but the corporate data resides on such drives, and when most leave the data center, the data they contain is still readable. Even data that has been striped across many drives in a RAID protection is vulnerable to data theft, because just a typical single stripe in today's high-capacity arrays is large enough to expose the sensitive and secured data.

Drive Control Challenges and Disposal Costs

To avoid data breaches, corporations have tried many ways to erase the data on retired drives before they leave the houses and potentially fall into the bad guy. Current retirement practices are all expensive and time-consuming, such as:

- Overwriting drive data
- Degaussing or physically shredding
- Hire professional disposal services

These designed to make data unreadable rely on significant human involvement in the process and are thus subject to both technical and human failure.



The Solution

Every day, thousands of disk drives leave data centers as old systems are retired. But what if all those disk drives had been automatically and transparently encrypting that data, enabling it to be instantly and securely erased? SED comprehensively resolve these issues, making encryption for drive retirement both easy and affordable.

SED has built-in an encryption controller and an encryption key on the disk drive itself. It can provide instant secure erase (cryptographic erase or making the data no longer readable), and to enable auto-locking to secure active data if a drive is misplaced or stolen from a system while in use.

While ISE provides instant secure erase only. When it's time to retire or repurpose the drive, the owner sends a command to the drive to perform a cryptographic erase. Cryptographic erase simply replaces the encryption key inside the encrypted drive, making it impossible to ever decrypt the data encrypted with the deleted key.

Benefits

SED & ISE reduce IT operating expenses by freeing IT from both drive control headaches and disposal costs. By using SED & ISE, they are without hindering IT efficiency. Furthermore, SED & ISE simplify decommissioning and preserve hardware value for returns and repurposing by:

- Securing warranty and expired lease returns
- Eliminating the need to overwrite or destroy the drive
- Enabling drives to be repurposed securely

In addition, the drive owner may choose to employ the SED in the auto-lock mode to help secure active data against theft. Utilizing the SED in auto-lock mode simply requires securing the drive during its normal use with an authentication key. When secured in this manner, the drive's data encryption key is locked whenever the drive is powered down. In other words, the moment the SED is switched off or unplugged, it automatically locks down the drive's data

When the SED is then powered back on, the SED requires authentication before being able to unlock its encryption key and read any data on the drive, thus protecting against misplacement and insider or external theft.



13.2. Theory of Operation

SED has two functions. There is authentication which is operated by AK (Authentication Key) and encryption data which is operated by DEK (Data Encryption Key). ISE drive has encryption data only by DEK but no authentication.

13.2.1. SED Operation Process

An AK is generated by a user entered password. After enabling authentication key successfully, recommend exporting the key file to an external media (e.g.: external disk drive, USB drive, etc.) and store it in a safe location. You must be able to use the authentication key file to recover in case of an unforeseen event.



TIP: Recommend backup the key, or you risk losing all data on the SEDs.

A new clean SED is not locked; it must be written an AK into the SED first. It's called initiate SED. The following describes the steps that occur during the authentication process of a secured drive.

Authentication

The storage system gets the AK from user entered and sends it to the correct locked drive. The drive hashes the AK and compares the result with the hash of the AK that's stored in a secure area of the disk. If the two hashed AK values do not match, the authentication process ends, and the drive will not permit reading data from the disk. The drive remains locked.

Decrypt the DEK

If the two hashes match, the drive is then unlocked, and the drive uses the AK it received from the storage system to decrypt the DEK (which was previously encrypted with the AK) that's stored in a secure area of the disk. Once the authentication process is successfully completed, the drive is unlocked until the next time it is powered down. Note that this authentication process only occurs when the drive is first powered on. It does not repeat with each I/O.



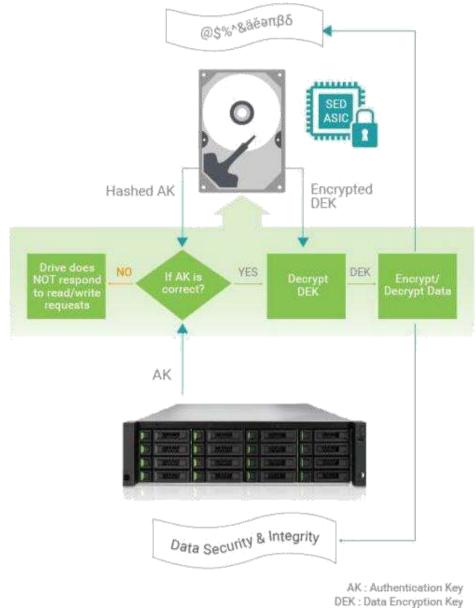


Figure 275: SED Operation Process

The DEK Encrypts and Decrypts the Data

The DEK is then used to encrypt data to be written to the disk and to decrypt data that's being read from the disk. The drive now works in standard fashion during data transfers, with encryption and decryption transparently occurring in the background.



13.2.2. ISE Technology

Each ISE drive (SED as well) randomly generates an encryption key in the factory that is embedded on the drive. The ISE automatically performs full disk encryption; when a write is performed; clear text enters the drive and is first encrypted (using the DEK embedded within the drive) before being written to the disk. When a read is performed, the encrypted data on the disk is decrypted before leaving the drive. During normal operation an ISE is completely transparent to the system, appearing to be the same as a non-encrypting drive. The selfencrypting is constantly encrypting, encryption cannot be accidentally turned off.

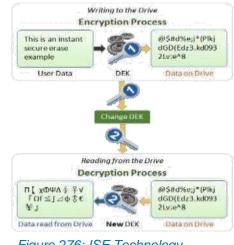


Figure 276: ISE Technology

ISE technology greatly simplifies repurposing of the drive and disposal. An owner wishing to repurpose a drive simply performs a key erase to replace the encryption key. The drive deletes the encryption key and replaces it with a new encryption key generated randomly within the drive. After key erase, any data that had been written to the disk is unreadable; data that was encrypted with the previous key is unintelligible when decrypted with the new encryption key. The drive is left as it was delivered from the factory.

Instant Erase Limitation

If ISEs are free and not be used as any pool member, they can be performed instant erase. The same limitation as SEDs, however SEDs can be erased by the AK is enabled. Another case is that the unknown SED is put in lock mode, the way to erase it is to perform erase SED by PSID which a unique number in each drive is, printed on the disk label, and visible to anyone with physical access to the SED. The owner would simply perform a secure erase to replace the encryption key.



TIP:

SEDs or ISE drives can be erased only if their usage status is free.



13.3. Configure Authentication Key

This section will describe the operations of configuring AK.



Figure 277: Disk Encryption Function Submenu

13.3.1. Operations on Authentication Key

The options available in this tab:

Enable Authentication Key

Before using SED, you must enable AK. Note that all SEDs in the system use this AK. Here is an example of enabling an AK.

1. Select the Authentication Key function tab in the Disk Encryption function submenu.

Disabled

2. Click the Enable Authentication Key button to enable.



nable Authentication K	ey	
Authentication Key		
The authentication key Drive) in the system.	will be generated based on the password. It will be used to secure each SED (Self-Er	rcrypting
Password :	•••••••	
Confirm Password :	******	
Password Hint :	eterio_SAN_MD4224S	
Auto Unlock		
Enable Auto Unlock		
	to unlock process of the installed SEDs when the system is powered on, or you will ha s SEDs each time when the system is powered on.	ive to
authentication key file I	cation key successfully, please click the Export Authentication Key button to export the o an external media (e.g.: external disk drive, USB drive, etc.) and store it in a safe loo e authentication key file to recover in case of an unforeseen event. Recommend to bar all data on the SEDs.	cation. Yo
And then click the Initia	te SEDs button in SEDs tab to set the authentication key to the SEDs in the system.	
	OK	New York Control of Co

Figure 279: Enable Authentication Key

- 3. Enter a **Password** for generating the AK. The length of the password is between 4 to 12 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#\$%^&*_-+=`|\(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/]. And enter it again at **Confirm Password**.
- 4. Enter a **Password Hint**. It is the AK hint for recognizing the system. The default value is system name and can be changed. The maximum length of the password hint is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | _-].
- 5. Check the **Enable Auto Unlock** option will enable auto unlock process of the installed SEDs when the system is powered on, or you will have to manually unlock the SEDs each time when the system is powered on. The default value is enabled.
- 6. Click the **OK** button to enable.

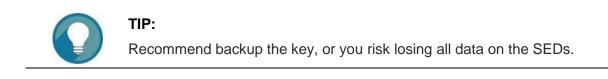
After the AK is enabled fully, there are SED summary displayed in the page. In addition, **Auto Unlock** option can also be changed here. You can uncheck the **Enable Auto Unlock** option and then click the **Apply** button to take effect.



Authentication Key SEDs	
Authentication Key	
Authentication Key Status :	Enabled
Total Quantity of SED :	0
Quantity of Enabled SED :	0
Quantity of Locked SED :	0
Quantity of Disabled SED :	0
Quantity of Password Locked SED :	0
Quantity of Unknown SED :	0
Quantity of SED Pool :	0
Export Authentication Key Change A	Authentication Key Disable Authentication Key
Auto Unlock	
Enable Auto Unlock	
	ess of the installed SEDs when the system is powered on, or you will have to me when the system is powered on.
Apply	
Figure 280: Authentication	Key is Enabled

Export Authentication Key

After enabling the AK successfully, please click the **Export Authentication Key** button to export the AK file to an external media (e.g.: external disk drive, USB drive, etc.) and store it in a safe location. You must be able to use the AK file to recover in case of an unforeseen event.





Export Authentication Key
Export File : Authentication_Key_eterioSAN_MD4224SE_20180608-011408
Export the authentication key file to an external media (e.g.: external disk drive, USB drive, etc.) and store it in a safe location.
You must be able to use the authentication key file to recover in case of an unforeseen event. Recommend to backup the key, or you risk losing all data on the SEDs.
OK Cancel

Figure 281: Export Authentication Key

- 1. Enter an **Export File** name to export the AK file. The default vale is the password hint plus date and time.
- 2. Click the **OK** button to export.

Change Authentication Key

Click the Change Authentication Key button to change the AK. Before changing the AK, please stop all I/O of the encryption pools within the SEDs. The new AK will be regenerated based on the new password and set the new authentication key to all enabled SEDs in the system. If the I/O are still running, it may risk losing data during changing the AK. Here is an example of changing the AK.

- 1. Click the **Change Authentication Key** button to change.
- Change the **Password** for generating the AK. The length of the password is between 4 to 12 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | ~!@#\$%^&*_-+=`|\(){}[]:;"'<>,.?/]. And enter it again at **Confirm Password**.
- 3. Change the **Password Hint** if necessary. The maximum length of the password hint is 32 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | _-].
- 4. Click the **OK** button to change. If there are enabled SEDs in the system, the system will change them one by one and display the results.



Change Authentication Key		
	w authentication key to all enab	he new authentication key will be regenerated based on the led SEDs in the system. If the I/O are still running, it may
New Password :	*****	
Confirm New Password :	•••••	
Password Hint :	eterio_SAN_MD4224S	0
authentication key file to an ex	xternal media (e.g.: external dis intication key file to recover in c	ne Export Authentication Key button to export the k drive, USB drive, etc.) and store it in a safe location. You ase of an unforeseen event. Recommend to backup the

Figure 282: Change Authentication Key

Disable Authentication Key

If you no longer use disk encryption and there are no encryption pools within the SEDs. The AK can be disabled. Click the **Disable Authentication Key** button to disable it.

Disable Authentication Key
Are you sure that you would like to disable the authentication key? After disalbing the authentication key, you will lose all data on the SEDs. Click the OK button to disable.
OK

Figure 283: Disable Authentication Key

Click the **OK** button to confirm.

TIP:

The **Disable Authentication Key** function can be operated when there are no encryption pools within the SEDs and the SED status of all SEDs is disabled or unknown.



13.4. Configure SEDs

The **SEDs** function tab in the **Disk Encryption** function submenu is only visible when the AK is enabled. Select the **SEDs** function tab to display the status of SEDs, initiate SEDs, unlock SEDs, or erase SEDs.



Figure 284: Disk Encryption Function Submenu

13.4.1. List SEDs

The drop-down lists at the top enable you to select the enclosure from head unit (SAN system) or expansion units (expansion enclosures). The disk properties can be configured by clicking the functions button $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to the left side of the specific disk drive.



TIP:

Enclosure format: Enclosure ID ([Head Unit | Expansion Unit]: Model Name). For example: 0 (Head Unit: 4224L), 1 (Expansion Unit: 4224 JBOD)

	Slot	Status	Health	SED Status	Capacity	Disk Type	Usage	Pool Name	Manufacturer	Model
۲	1	Online	Good	Diselled	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/e	From		HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
•	2	Online	Good	Emabliert	92.91 GB	SAS 85D 12.0Gb/s	Ente		HGST	HUSMH8010855205
۲	3	Online	Good	Disabled	92.91 GB	SAS 55D 12.0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUSMH6010BSS20
¥	4	Cavline	Good	Classified	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUSMH8010855205

Figure 285: List SEDs



This table shows the column descriptions. *Table 60: Disk Column Descriptions*

Column Name	Description
Slot	The position of the disk drive.
Status	 The status of the disk drive: Online: The disk drive is online. Rebuilding: The disk drive is being rebuilt. Transitioning: The disk drive is being migrated or is replaced by another disk when rebuilding occurs. Scrubbing: The disk drive is being scrubbed. Check Done: The disk drive has been checked the disk health. Copying Back: The disk drive is being copied back.
Health	 The health of the disk drive: Good: The disk drive is good. Failed: The disk drive fails. Error Alert: S.M.A.R.T. error alerts. Read Errors: The disk drive has unrecoverable read errors.
SED Status	 The health of the SED: Enabled: The SED is enabled. Locked: The SED is locked. It must be unlocked by the correct AK before it can be used. Disabled: The SED is disabled. It must be initiated before it can be used. Password Locked: The SED is locked by entering the incorrect password too many times. Unknown: The SED is unknown. Initiating: The SED is being initiated. Unlocking: The SED is being erased. Changing Key: The SED is being changed the key.
Capacity	The capacity of the disk drive.
Disk Type	The type of the disk drive: • [SAS HDD NL-SAS HDD SAS SSD SATA SSD] • [12.0Gb/s 6.0Gb/s 3.0Gb/s 1.5Gb/s].
Usage	 The usage of the disk drive: Free: This disk drive is free for use. RAID: This disk drive has been set to a pool. SSD Cache: This SSD has been set to an SSD cache pool. Dedicated Spare: This disk drive has been set as dedicated spare of a pool. Local Spare: This disk drive has been set as local spare of the enclosure. Global Spare: This disk drive has been set as global spare of whole system. SSD Spare: This SSD has been set as dedicated SSD spare of an SSD cache pool.
Pool Name	Which pool the disk drive belongs to.
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the disk drive.
Model	The model name of disk drive.



13.4.2. Operations on SEDs

The options available in this tab:

Initiate SEDs

Click the **Initiate SEDs** button to initiate the selected SEDs. And then click the **OK** button to proceed.

89e	select SEDs to	initiate					
6	Enclosure ID	Siot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
6	0	1	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
1	0	2	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
6	0	3	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
0	0	4	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205

Figure 286: Initiate SEDs

After proceeding, it will pop up a dialog to display the results.

Initiate SEDs	
Initiate SED Results	
Enclosure ID 0, 4	
Enclosure ID 0, 2	
Enclosure ID 0, 1	
Enclosure ID 0, 3	
3	OK
	biateriag

Figure 287: Initiate SED Results

If the results are successful, the SED status will become Enabled.

	Slot	Statua	Health	SED Statua	Capacity	Disk Type	Usage	Pool Name	Manufacturer	Model
۲	1	Online	Good	Enabled	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
•	2	Online	Good	Enabled	92.91 08	SAS SSD 12 0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
۲	3	Online	Good	Enabled	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12 0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
•	4	Online	Good	Enabled	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12 0Gb/a	From		HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205

Figure 288: List SEDs





TIP:

The **Initiate SEDs** function can be operated when the usage status of SEDs is free and the SED status is **Disabled**.

Unlock SEDs

Click the **Unlock SEDs** button to unlock the selected SEDs. Please select a method to unlock the SEDs. And then click the **OK** button to proceed.

rthentication Key							
ase select a method thentication keys, and					e roamed from other sy ment system.	stems, they will be	unlocked with their
Use the Authentic	tion Key of the Cu	rent Sys	tern				
linter an Authentic	ation Ray Password	peranseren Ø					
	head the should dealer						
. Trienory are Authorn							
Choose File] No 1							
Choose File] No 1	le chosen						
Choose File No f	le chosen	Slot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
Choose File No f elect SEDs ease select the SEDs Password Hint	te chosen to be unlocked	Slot 1	Health	Capacity 92.91 GB	Disk Type SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Manufacturer HQST	Model HUSMH8010B5S205
Choose Fig. No f elect SEDs ease select the SEDs Password Hint	le chosen to be unlocked Enclosure ID	Slot 1 2	in the state of the state of the	control destrution and summer	and a second s	New York Contract of the State	A second second second second second second second
Choose File 1 No 1 Rect SEDs ease select the SEDs Password Hint actiSAN_4224E	to be unlocked.	1	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS206

Figure 289: Unlock SEDs

You can select the **Use the Authentication Key of the Current System** to unlock the SEDs. Or if the SEDs are roamed from other systems, they will be unlocked with their AKs, and then being replaced by the AK of the current system. In this case, please select the **Enter an Authentication Key Password or Import and Authentication Key File** to unlock the SED.

TIP:

The **Unlock SEDs** function can be operated when the SED status of SEDs is Locked.

Erase SEDs

If there are no encryption pools within the SEDs, these SEDs can be erased. Click the **Erase SEDs** button to erase the selected SEDs. And then click the **OK** button to proceed.



	it SEDs e select SEDs to	instant	erase. Note	that this will de	elete all data on the SEI).	
2	Enclosure ID	Slot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
2	0	1	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
	0	2	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
2	0	3	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
100	0	4	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205

Figure 290: Erase SEDs

After proceeding, it will pop up a dialog to display the results. If the results are successful, the SED status will become Disabled.



TIP:

The **Erase SEDs** function can be operated when the usage status of SEDs is free.

1			
1	T		
6		1	

CAUTION:

Erasing the SEDs will change the DEK and delete all data on the SED. The data on SED can never be restored, please exercise caution.

Erase SED by PSID

If you don' know where the SED comes from, or the status of the SED is unknown, and you don't know its password. The last method is to erase the SED by PSID (Physical Secure ID) which is on the label of the disk drive. Click ▼ -> Erase SED by PSID to erase the SED by PSID.

Erase \$	SED by PSID		
승규는 지지 않는 것이 없다.	enter the PSID which is on the labe D and it will return to the initial state	l of the disk to erase the SED. Note that this will d	lelete all data on
PSID:	AZslxxxxyNNJxxxx4WG3		
id i			OK Cancel

Figure 291: Erase SED by PSID





TIP:

The **Erase SED by PSID** function can be operated when the usage status of the SED is free.



CAUTION:

Erasing the SED by PSID will delete all data on the SED and it will return to the initial state. The data on SED can never be restored, please exercise caution.

13.5. Configure SED Pools

This section will describe the operations of configuring an SED pool.



Figure 292: Pools Function Submenu

13.5.1. Create an SED Pool

Here is an example of creating an SED pool with 3 SEDs configured in RAID 5. At the first time of creating a pool, it contains a disk group and the maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64.

1. Select the **Pools** function submenu, click the **Create Pool** button. It will scan available disks first.



TIP:

It may take 20 ~ 30 seconds to scan disks if your system has more than 200 disk drives. Please wait patiently.



General Hool Type Disk Selection Please select a pool type. RAID Configuration * Thick Provisioning Disk Properties Thin Provisioning Summary Auto Tiering (Thin Provisioning Enabled) Pool Properties Please enter a pool name and select preferred controller setting. Pool Name Pool-4 Preferred Controller Controller 1 The I/O resources will be managed by the preferred controller which you specified. SED Pool
Enabling SED pool will use the secure SEDs to create a pool. Intermixing SEDs and non-SEDs are not supported in a pool.

Figure 293: Create an SED Pool Step 1

- 2. Select a **Pool Type**.
- 3. Enter a **Pool Name** for the pool. The maximum length of the pool name is 16 characters. Valid characters are [A~Z | a~z | 0~9 | -_<>].
- 4. Select a **Preferred Controller** from the drop-down list. The backend I/O resources in this pool will be processed by the preferred controller which you specified. This option is available when dual controllers are installed.
- 5. Check the **Enable SED Pool** checkbox. Enabling SED pool will use the secure SEDs to create a pool. Intermixing SEDs and non-SEDs are not supported in a pool.
- 6. Click the **Next** button to continue.

Seneral Disk Selection RAID Configuration	Select Disks Please select disks to add a disk group in a thick provisioning pool. The maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64										
Disk Properties	Encio	sure ID: 0	(Head Unit: 4	Health	Capacity	* Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model			
Summary		0	1	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205			
	1	0	2	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205			
		0	3	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205			
	6	0	4	Good	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205			
Back								Next Cancel			

Figure 294: Create an SED Pool Step 2



- 7. Please select disks for pool. The maximum quantity of disk in a disk group is 64. Select an **Enclosure ID** from the drop-down list to select disks from expansion enclosures.
- 8. Click the **Next** button to continue.

General Disk Selection RAID Configuration Disk Properties Summary	RAID Configuration Please select a RAID level RAID Level Quantity of NL-SAS Diaks :	FAID 0 SAID 0 KAID 1 RAID 1 FAID 5	
Back			Next

Figure 295: Create an SED Pool Step 3

- 9. Select a **RAID Level** from the drop-down list which lists available RAID level only according to the disk selection. And select a **Quantity of Subgroups** if the combination RAID level is selected.
- 10. Click the **Next** button to continue.

reate Pool						
General Disk Solectop RADC Configuration Disk Properties Sectorary	 Enable Dok Read-o System will precede sequential data retri Enable Dok Comm Send multiple comm Enable Dok Stanct The data will send the 	ok properties. Jache Jache will improve i need Jata to disk suffer rived ands to a disk at o y and sto a disk at o y	based on previously re nice to improve perform nic when they are idle f	neved data. This feature wil effici	e Setting	in it
Back					Next	ncei

Figure 296: Create an SED Pool Step 4

- 11. Disk properties can also be configured optionally in this step:
 - Enable Disk Write Cache: Check to enable the write cache option of disks. Enabling disk write cache will improve write I/O performance but have a risk of losing data when power failure.
 - Enable Disk Read-ahead: Check to enable the read-ahead function of disks. System will preload data to disk buffer based on previously retrieved data. This feature will efficiently improve the performance of sequential data retrieved.



- Enable Disk Command Queuing: Check to enable the command queue function of disks. Send multiple commands to a disk at once to improve performance.
- Enable Disk Standby: Check to enable the auto spin down function of disks. The disks will be spun down for power saving when they are idle for the period of time specified.
- 12. Click the **Next** button to continue.

Create Pool			
General	Pool Properties		
Disk Selection	Pool Type :	Thick Provisioning	
RAID Configuration	Pool Name:	Pool-4	
Disk Properties	Preferred Controller : RAID Configuration	Controller 1	
and the second second	RAID Level	RAID 5	
	Quantity of SSD Disks	3	
	Disk Properties		
	Disk Write Cache	Enabled	
	Disk Read-shead	Enabled	
	Disk Command Queuing	Enabled	
	Disk Standby	Disabled	
1			
Back			Finish Cancel

Figure 297: Create an SED Pool Step 5

13. After confirmation of info on the summary page, click the **Finish** button to create a pool.

ool Name	Status	Health	Total	Free	Available	Thin Provisioning	Auto Tiering	Encryption	Volumes	Current Controlle
ool-4	Online	Good	185.82 GB	105.02 GB	185.82 GB	Disabled	Disabled	Enabled	0	Controller 1
ool	-4	-4 Online	-4 Online Good	-4 Online Good 185.82 GB	-4 Online Good 185.82 GB 185.82 GB	-4 Online Good 185.82 GB 185.82 GB 185.82 GB	-4 Online Good 185.82 GB 185.82 GB Disabled	-4 Online Good 185.82 GB 185.82 GB Disabled Disabled	-4 Online Good 185.82 GB 185.82 GB 185.82 GB Disabled Disabled Enabled	-4 Online Good 185.02 GB 105.02 GB 105.82 GB Disabled Disabled Enabled 0

14. An SED pool has been created. If necessary, click the **Create Pool** button again to create others.

13.5.2. List SED Pools

Click a pool; it will display the related disk groups. Similarly, click a disk group; it will display the related disk drives. The pool properties can be configured by clicking the functions button ▼ to the left side of the specific pool.



	Pool	Varree	Status	Health	Total	Fran	Available	This Pravit	lioning	Auto Tiering	Encryption	Valumen	Current Controlle
٠	Pool-	1	Offine.	Good	MIS 82 CM	1/15-62-06	165.82 Ci	0 Dinationd		Disabled	Enabled	0	Controllor 1
ink di	nips.												
	No	Status	Health	Total	Free	RAID	Diska	Used RAID	2.0 Spate				
		Createre	Good	135.00	CIII 185.00	I GHI RAID S							
Enclose	ire iD	Slot	Status	Health	Capacity	Disk Type		Manufacturer	Model		1		
Enclose ()	ire iD	Slot			Capacity 92.91 GB	Disk Type SAS SBD 12		Manufacturer HGST		90108189205			
Enclose	ire iD	Slot 1 2	Status	Health	and the second second		0Gib/n		HUSMH	9010869205 9010865205			

Figure 299: List SED Pools

This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 61: Pool Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Pool Name	The pool names.
Status	 The status of the pool: On-line: The pool is online. Offline: The pool is offline. Rebuilding: The pool is being rebuilt. Migrating: The pool is being migrated. Relocating: The pool is being relocated. EE Rebuilding: The pool is being RAID EE rebuilt.
Health	 The health of the pool: Good: The pool is good. Failed: The pool is failed. Degraded: The pool is not healthy and not complete. The reason could be missing or failed disks.
Total	Total capacity of the pool.
Free	Free capacity of the pool.
Available	Available capacity of the pool.
Thin Provisioning	 The status of Thin provisioning: Disabled: The pool is thick provisioned. Enabled: The pool is thin provisioned.
Auto Tiering	 The status of Auto Tiering: Disabled: The pool is auto tiering disabled. Enabled: The pool is auto tiering enabled. Not Supported: The pool contains the disk groups with mixed disk type.
Encryption	The Data Secure Mode:Disabled: The pool is not encrypted.Enabled: The pool is encrypted.
Volumes	The quantity of volumes in the pool.
Current Controller (<i>This option is</i> only visible when dual controllers are installed.)	The current running controller of the pool.



Table 62: Disk Group Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
No.	The number of the disk group.
	The status of the disk group:
	On-line: The disk group is online.
	Offline: The disk group is offline.
Status	Rebuilding: The disk group is being rebuilt.
	 Migrating: The disk group is being migrated.
	Relocating: The disk group is being relocated.
	EE Rebuilding: The disk group is being RAID EE rebuilt.
	The health of the disk group:
	Good: The disk group is good.
Health	Failed: The disk group is failed.
	Degraded: The disk group is not healthy and not complete. The
	reason could be lack of disk(s) or failed disk.
Total	Total capacity of the disk group.
Free	Free capacity of the disk group.
RAID	The RAID level of the disk group.
Disks Used	The quantity of disk drives in the disk group.
RAID 2.0 Spare	The quantity of RAID 2.0 spare disk drives in the disk group. Display
INTID 2.0 Spare	N/A is the RAID level is traditional.

Table 63: Disk Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Enclosure ID	The enclosure ID.
Slot	The position of the disk drive.
	The status of the disk drive:On-line: The disk drive is online.
	Missing: The disk drive is missing in the pool.
	Rebuilding: The disk drive is being rebuilt.
Status	 Transitioning: The disk drive is being migrated or is replaced by another disk when rebuilding occurs.
	Scrubbing: The disk drive is being scrubbed.
	Check Done: The disk drive has been checked the disk health.
	 Copying Back: The disk drive is being copied back.
	The health of the disk drive:
	Good: The disk drive is good.
Health	Failed: The disk drive is failed.
	Error Alert: S.M.A.R.T. error alerts.
	Read Errors: The disk drive has unrecoverable read errors.
Capacity	The capacity of the disk drive.
	The type of the disk drive:
Disk Type	 [SAS HDD NL-SAS HDD SAS SSD SATA SSD]
	• [12.0Gb/s 6.0Gb/s 3.0Gb/s 1.5Gb/s]
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the disk drive.
Model	The model name of disk drive.



13.5.3. Operations on SED Pools

Most operations are described in the Configuring Storage Pools section in the eterio SAN ESOS 4.0 User's Manual. We describe the restrictions about SED pool in the following.

Add a Disk Group into the Pool

Click ▼ -> Add Disk Group to add a disk group. Disks can only choose SEDs. Select SEDs and then click the OK button.

Move Disk Group Member Disks

Click ▼ -> **Move Disk Group** in disk group to move the member SEDs of the disk group to other SEDs. They cannot move to non-SED. Select SEDs and then click the **OK** button.

Rebuild on SED Pools

Rebuilding an SED pool will use SED as spare disk, whether it is from global, local, or dedicated spare.

Create an SSD Cache Pool on SED Pools

Most operations are described in the SSD Cache chapter in the eterio SAN ESOS 4.0 User's Manual. We describe the restrictions about creating an SSD cache pool on an SED pool in the following.

Create an SSD Cache Pool

Select the **SSD Cache** function submenu; click the **Create SSD Cache Pool** button. It will scan available SSDs with SED only.

Data Backup on Encrypted Volumes

Most operations are described in the Data Backup chapter in the eterio SAN ESOS 4.0 User's Manual. We describe the tips about data backup on encrypted volumes in the following.

Local Clone on Encrypted Volume

If executing local clone from an encrypted volume to a non-encrypted volume, it will pop up a warning message.

Remote Replication on Encrypted Volume

If executing remote replication from an encrypted volume, It will pop up a warning message.



13.6. Configure ISE Drives

Select the **Disks** function submenu to display the status of the SED and ISE drives.



This section will describe the operations of configuring ISE drives. They can only be operated by instant erased.

13.6.1. List ISE Drives

The drop-down lists at the top enable you to select the enclosure from head unit (SAN system) or expansion units (expansion enclosures). The disk properties can be configured by clicking the functions button $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to the left side of the specific disk drive.



TIP:

Enclosure format: Enclosure ID ([Head Unit | Expansion Unit]: Model Name). For example: 0 (Head Unit: 4224L), 1 (Expansion Unit: 4224 JBOD).

	Slot	Status	Health	Encryption	SED / ISE Status	Capacity	Disk Type	Usage	Pool Name	Manufacturer	Model
¥.	1	Online	Good	SED	Enabled	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
•	2	Online	Good	SED	Enabled	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUSMH8010BSS208
*	3	Online	Good	SED	Enabled	92.91 GB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUSMH8010BSS205
T	4	Online	Good	SED	Enabled	92.91 OB	SAS SSD 12.0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUSMH8010BSS208
¥.	5	Online	Good	ISE	Normal	10.91 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUH721212AL5200
•	6	Online	Good	ISE	Normal	10.91 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUH721212AL6200
T	7	Online	Good	ISE	Normal	10.91 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12 0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUH721212AL5200
Y	8	Online	Good	ISE	Normal	10.91 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	Free		HGST	HUH721212AL5200

Disk Health Check Muw Disk Check Report Instant Erasa

Figure 301: List SEDs and ISE Drives



This table shows the column descriptions.

Column Name	Description
Slot	The position of the disk drive.
	The status of the disk drive:
	Online: The disk drive is online.
	Rebuilding: The disk drive is being rebuilt.
Status	Transitioning: The disk drive is being migrated or is replaced by
Olalus	another disk when rebuilding occurs.
	Scrubbing: The disk drive is being scrubbed.
	• Check Done: The disk drive has been checked the disk health.
	Copying Back: The disk drive is being copied back.
	The health of the disk drive:
	Good: The disk drive is good.
Health	Failed: The disk drive fails.
	Error Alert: S.M.A.R.T. error alerts.
	Read Errors: The disk drive has unrecoverable read errors.
	The data security mode of the disk drive:
Encryption	 SED: The disk drive is a Self-Encrypting Drive.
Enoryption	 ISE: The disk drive is an Instant Secure Erase drive.
	None: The disk drive does not have encryption function.
	The status of the SED:
	Enabled: The SED is enabled.
	Locked: The SED is locked. It must be unlocked by the correct
	AK before it can be used.
	Disabled: The SED is disabled. It must be initiated before it can
	be used.
	 Password Locked: The SED is locked by entering the incorrect password too many times
	password too many times.Unknown: The SED is unknown.
SED / ISE Status	 Initiating: The SED is being initiated.
SED / ISE Status	 Unlocking: The SED is being initiated. Unlocking: The SED is being unlocked.
	 Erasing: The SED is being erased.
	 Changing Key: The SED is being changed the key.
	The status of the ISE:
	Normal: The ISE is normal.
	Erasing: The ISE is being erased.
	Unknow: The ISE is unknow.
	The status of the Non SED/ISE:
	 N/A: The field is not applicable.
Capacity	The capacity of the disk drive.
	The type of the disk drive:
Disk Type	• [SAS HDD NL-SAS HDD SAS SSD SATA SSD]
	• [12.0Gb/s 6.0Gb/s 3.0Gb/s 1.5Gb/s].

Table 64: Disk Column Descriptions



Column Name	Description
Usage	 The usage of the disk drive: Free: This disk drive is free for use. RAID: This disk drive has been set to a pool. SSD Cache: This SSD has been set to an SSD cache pool. Dedicated Spare: This disk drive has been set as dedicated spare of a pool. Local Spare: This disk drive has been set as local spare of the enclosure. Global Spare: This disk drive has been set as global spare of whole system. SSD Spare: This SSD has been set as dedicated SSD spare of an SSD cache pool.
Pool Name	Which pool the disk drive belongs to.
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the disk drive.
Model	The model name of disk drive.

13.6.2. Operations on ISE Drives

Most operations are described in the Working with Disk Drives section in the eterio SAN ESOS 4.0 User's Manual. We describe the operations about an ISE drive in the following.

Instant Erase

If there are no pools within the ISE drives, these ISE drives can be erased. Click **the Instant Erase** button to erase the selected ISEs. And then click **OK** button to proceed

eas	e select ISE disk	drives	to instant	erase. Note th	at this will delete all data on	the ISE disk drive	S.
•	Enclosure ID	Slot	Health	Capacity	Disk Type	Manufacturer	Model
1	0	5	Good	10.91 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUH721212AL5200
	0	6	Good	10.91 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUH721212AL5200
2	0	7	Good	10.91 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUH721212AL5200
1	0	8	Good	10.91 TB	NL-SAS HDD 12.0Gb/s	HGST	HUH721212AL5200

Figure 302: Instant Erase ISE drives

After proceeding, it will pop up a dialog to display the results.



Instant Erase		
Instant Erase Results		
Enclosure ID 0, Slot 8	Success	
Enclosure ID 0, Slot 6	Success	
Enclosure ID 0, Slot 5	Success	
Enclosure ID 0, Slot 7	Success	
		ОК

Figure 303: Instant Erase Results



TIP:

The **Instant Erase** function can be operated when the usage status of ISE drives is free.



CAUTION:

Erasing the ISE drives will change the DEK and delete all data on the ISE drive. The data on ISE drive can never be restored, please exercise caution.



15. Troubleshooting

This chapter describes how to perform troubleshooting of software. Hardware troubleshooting is described in the chapter 6, Quick Maintenance in the eterio SAN Hardware User's Manual.

15.1. Fault Isolation Methodology

This section presents the basic methodology used to quickly locate faults within the storage system.

15.1.1. Basic Steps

The basic fault isolation steps are listed below:

- Gather fault information, including using system LEDs. Please refer to the chapter 5, Description of LEDs and Buttons in the eterio SAN Hardware User's Manual for detail.
- Review event logs. Please refer to the chapter 13.1, Log Center section in the Monitoring chapter.
- Determine where the fault is occurring in the system. If the fault is occurring from hardware, please refer to the chapter 6, Quick Maintenance in the eterio SAN Hardware User's Manual for detail.
- If required, isolate the fault to a disk drive, configuration, or system. Please refer to the chapter 15.1.3, Diagnostic Steps section.
- If all troubleshooting steps are inconclusive, please contact support for help.

15.1.2. Stopping I/O

When troubleshooting disk drive and connectivity faults, it's necessary to stop I/O to the affected volume data from all hosts and remote systems as a data protection precaution. As an additional data protection precaution, it is helpful to conduct regularly scheduled backups of your data.



15.1.3. Diagnostic Steps

The diagnostic steps are listed below:

- If disk drive errors in the event logs are occurring, we suggest replacing a healthy one. For more information, please refer to the chapter 15.2, Rebuild section.
- If the fault is occurring from volume configuration. For example, the pool or volume configuration is deleted by accident. Please refer to the chapter 15.3, Volume Restoration section for disaster recovery.
- If the fault is occurring from other hardware components of the system, the faulty component will need to be replaced.

15.2. Rebuild

If any single disk drive of the storage pool in protection RAID level (e.g., RAID 1, 3, 5, 6, 0+1, 10, 30, 50, and 60) fails or has been removed, then the status of pool will be changed to degraded mode. At the same time, the system will search the spare disk to execute volume rebuild the degraded pool into complete one.

There are three types of spare disk drive which can be set in function menu **Disks**:

- **Dedicated Spare**: Set a spare disk drive to a dedicated pool.
- **Local Spare**: Set a spare disk drive to the pools which located in the same enclosure. The enclosure is either in head unit or in one of expansion units.
- **Global Spare**: Set a spare disk drive to all pools which located whether in head unit and expansion unit.

The detection sequence is the dedicated spare disk as the rebuild disk first, then local spare disk and global spare disk.

The following examples are scenarios for a RAID 6 rebuild.

- 1. When there is no global spare disk or dedicated spare disk in the system, the pool will be in degraded mode and wait until there is one disk assigned as spare disk, or the failed disk is removed and replaced with new clean disk, and then the Auto-Rebuild starts.
- 2. When there are spare disks for the degraded array, system starts Auto-Rebuild immediately. In RAID 6, if there is another disk failure occurs during rebuilding, system will start the above Auto-Rebuild process as well. Auto-Rebuild feature only works at that the status of pool is **Online**. Thus, it will not conflict with the online roaming feature.



3. In degraded mode, the health of the pool is **Degraded**. When rebuilding, the status of pool and volume disk will display **Rebuilding**, the column **R%** in volume will display the ratio in percentage. After complete rebuilding, the status will become **Online**.



TIP:

The dedicated spare cannot be set if there is no pool or the pool is set to RAID level 0.

Sometimes, rebuild is called recover, they have the same meaning. This table describes the relationship between RAID levels and recovery.

Table 65: RAID Rebuild

Operation	Description
RAID 0	Disk striping. No protection for data. Pool fails if any disk drive fails or unplugs.
RAID 1	Disk mirroring over 2 disks. RAID 1 allows one disk drive fails or unplugging. Need one new disk drive to insert to the system and rebuild to be completed.
N-way mirror	Extension to RAID 1 level. It has N copies of the disk. N-way mirror allows N-1 disk drives failure or unplugging.
RAID 3	Striping with parity on the dedicated disk. RAID 3 allows one disk drive failure or unplugging.
RAID 5	Striping with interspersed parity over the member disks. RAID 5 allows one disk drive failure or unplugging.
RAID 6	2-dimensional parity protection over the member disks. RAID 6 allows two disks drives failure or unplugging. If it needs to rebuild two disks drives at the same time, it will rebuild the first one, then the other in sequence.
RAID 0+1	Mirroring of RAID 0 volumes. RAID 0+1 allows two disks drive failures or unplugging, but at the same array.
RAID 10	Striping over the member of RAID 1 volumes. RAID 10 allows two disks drive failure or unplugging, but in different arrays.
RAID 30	Striping over the member of RAID 3 volumes. RAID 30 allows two disks drive failure or unplugging, but in different arrays.
RAID 50	Striping over the member of RAID 5 volumes. RAID 50 allows two disks drive failures or unplugging, but in different arrays.
RAID 60	Striping over the member of RAID 6 volumes. RAID 60 allows four disks drive failures or unplugging, every two in different arrays.



15.3. Volume Restoration

The **Volume Restoration** can restore the volume configuration from the volume creation history. It is used for pool corruption and tries to recreate the volume. When trying to do data recovery, the same volume configurations as original must be set and all member disks must be installed by the same sequence as original. Otherwise, data recovery will fail. The volume restoration does not guarantee that the lost data can be restored. Please get help from an expert before executing this function.

osur	e ID: 0 (Head L	Init: XS52.1	6) *						
	<pre>x prex 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 mext2 fast >></pre>								
	Pool Name	RAID	Volume Name	Volume Capacity	Disks Used	Disk Slot	Time	Event Logs	
•	Pool-1	RAID 5	Source-Vol-1	10 GB	4.	0:1. 0:2, 0:3, 0:4	2017/07/12 13:48:50 CST	The snapshot space has initialized	
V	Pool-1	RAID 5	Target-Vol-2	11 GB	4	0:1, 0:2, 0:3, 0:4	2017/07/12 13:46:20 CST	The volume is created.	
•	Pool-1	RAID 5	Target-Vol-2	11 GB	4	0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4	2017/07/12 13:44.06 CST	The volume is created	
V	Pool-1	RAID 5	Source-Vol-1	10 GB	4	0:1, 0:2, 0:3, 0:4	2017/07/12 13:43:13 CST	The volume is created.	
¥	Pool-1	RAID 5	Vol-1	100 GB	3	0.9, 0.10, 0.11	2017/07/12 13:23:53 CST	The snapshot space has initialize	
•	Pool-1	RAID 5	Target-Vol-2	110 GB	3	0.9, 0.10, 0.11	2017/07/12 10:11:59 CST	The volume is created	
V	Pool-1	RAID 5	Vol-2	100 GB	5	0:9. 0:10, 0:11, 0:1, 0:2	2017/07/11 17:55:13 CST	The volume is created.	
Y	Pool-1	RAID 5	Vol-1	100 GB	5	0.9, 0.10, 0.11, 0.1, 0.2	2017/07/11 17:55:02 CST	The volume is created.	
•	Pool-1	RAID 5	Val-1	150 GB	3	0.9, 0.10, 0.11	2017/07/11 17 12:07 CST	The volume is created.	
•	Pool-1	RAID 5	Vol-1	150 GB	5	0:9, 0:10, 0:11, 0:1, 0:2	2017/07/11 11:01:53 CST	The volume is expanded.	
V	Pool-1	RAID 5	Target-Vol-2	110 GB	5	0:9. 0:10, 0:11, 0:1, 0:2	2017/07/11 10:58:28 CST	The volume is created.	
•	Pool-1	RAID 5	Val-1	100 GB	5	0.9, 0.10, 0.11, 0.1, 0.2	2017/07/11 10 28:02 CST	The volume is created	

Figure 304: Volume Restoration

This table shows the column descriptions.

Table 66: Volume Restoration Column Descriptions

Column Name	Description
Pool Name	The original pool name.
RAID	The original RAID level.
Volume	The original volume name.
Volume capacity	The original capacity of the volume.
Disk Used	The original quantity of physical disk in the pool.
Disk Slot	The original physical disk locations.
Time	The last action time of the volume.
Event Logs	The last event of the volume.





TIP:

When attempting data recovery, the same volume configurations as the original must be set and all member disks must be installed by the same sequence as original. Otherwise, data recovery will fail.



CAUTION:

Performing data recovery does not guarantee that the lost data can be restored 100%. It depends on the real operation and the degree of physical damages on disks. Users assume all risk when attempting data recovery procedures.

15.3.1. Configure Volume Restoration

The options available in this tab:

Restore the Volume

Click ▼ -> **Restore** to restore the deleted volume in the pool. And then click the **OK** button to proceed.



16. Support and Other Resources

16.1. Getting Technical Support

After installing your device, locate the serial number on the sticker located on the side of the chassis or from the ESOS UI -> MAINTINANCE > System Information

To contact eterio Support, please use the following information:

- Via the Web: <u>https://eterio.eu/serwis</u>
- Via Telephone: +48 18 4436509
- Via Email: <u>support@eterio.eu</u>

Information to Collect

- Product name, model or version, and serial number
- Operating system name and version
- Firmware version
- Error messages or capture screenshots
- Product-specific reports and logs
- Add-on products or components installed
- Third-party products or components installed

Information for Technical Support

The following system information is necessary for technical support. Please refer to following for what and where to get the information of your eterio SAN Series model.

If the technical support requests you to download the Service Package, please navigate in the ESOS GUI -> **SYSTEM SETTING** -> **Maintenance** -> **System Information**, and then click the **Download Service Package** button to download. Then the system will automatically generate a zip file the default download location of your web browser.



System

ltem	Information
System Name	eterio SAN
Model Name	MD4224S
System Serial Number	MD18112100001700605
System Controller Status	Dual Controller, Active-Active
Master Controller	Controller 1

Controller 1

Item	Information
Controller Serial Number	50013780080A0440
CPU	Intel(R) Xeon(R) Processor D-1500 4 Cores
Memory	8 GB
Host Card Slot 1	Empty
Host Card Slot 2	Empty
Firmware Version	1.2.0
SAS IOC Firmware Version	07.00.01.00
SAS Expander Firmware Version	1000

Controller 2

Item	Information
Controller Serial Number	50013780080A0380
CPU	Intel(R) Xeon(R) Processor D-1500 4 Cores
Memory	8 GB
Host Card Slot 1	Empty
Host Card Slot 2	Empty
Firmware Version	1.2.0
SAS IOC Firmware Version	07.00.01.00
SAS Expander Firmware Version	1000

Backplane

Item	Information	
Backplane Serial Number	001378D40000	
Backplane 1D	QW316	
MCU Version	1.2.0	

Licenses

Item	Information
SSD Cache	Enabled
Auto Tiering	Enabled

Download Service Package

Figure 305: Download Service Package in the ESOS UI



16.2. Online Customer Support

For better customer support, every eterio SAN series models include the console cable (two for dual controller models), one for single controller models) for online support. Please follow the procedures below to setup the online help environment for eterio support team.

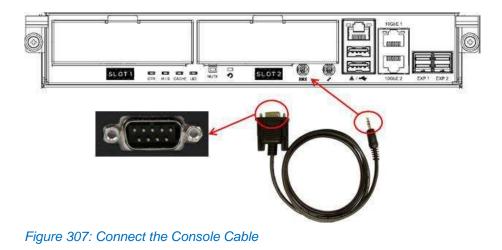
The following procedure will help you to setup the serial console via the console cable that is enclosed in the shipping carton. The following image is the appearance of the console cable.



Figure 306: Appearance of a Console Cable

Procedures to Setup the Serial Console

1. Setup the serial cable between the controller and one server/host like in the below image.



2. You must use terminal software such as HyperTerminal or Putty to open the console after the connection is made.



INFORMATION:

For more information about terminal software, please refer to: HyperTerminal: <u>http://www.hilgraeve.com/hyperterminal/</u> PuTTY: <u>http://www.putty.org/</u>



3. Here we first demonstrate HyperTerminal. The console settings are on the following. Baud rate: 115200, 8 data bit, no parity, 1 stop bit, and no flow control Terminal type: vt100

Connect In 71×1 COM3 Properties: 71×1	
Port Settings	
Ritz per second. 115200	
Bata bite 8	
Pailty None	
≨top bitr 1	
Elow control Mone	
Hestore Defaults	

Figure 308: The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by HyperTerminal_ 1

- HyperTerminal		
File Edit View Call		
New Connection Open		
Save		12
Save As	Qsan Technology	
Page Setup Print	llation	
Properties	iguration	
Exit Alt+F4	guration	
+E#nclosu	ire management	
∥¤M≉aintenan	nce	
aL≉ogout		
a+- <mark>¢Path:</mark> ∞/∞		
+lume con	* figuration	
1		
1		
1		1
le		

Figure 309: The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by HyperTerminal_2



	C Windows keys
Backspace key sends -	
Ctrl+H C Del	C Ctrl+H, Space, Ctrl+H
Sulation:	<u>\</u>
uto detect	🔨 Terminal Setup
NSI	1
NSIW ato detect	
initel	
FY ewdata	
T100	g or disconnecting
[100J [52	
UL.	ASCII Setup

Figure 310: The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by HyperTerminal_ 3

4. If you are using PuTTY instead, please refer to below

egory:		
Session	Basic options for your Pu	TTY session
- Logging Ferminal - Keyboard	 Specify the destination you want to Serial line 	Speed
- Bell	COM1	115200
- Features Window	Connection type: C Raw C Telnet C Rlogin	C SSN @ Se
- Appearance - Behaviour - Translation	Load, save or delete a stored sessi Saved Sessions	on
- Selection - Colours - Connection	Default Settings	Load
- Data - Proxv		Save
- Telnet - Rlogin		Delete
B SSH Serial	Close window on exit. C Always C Never 📀 Di	nly on clean exit

Figure 311: The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by PuTTY_1



ategory:		
Session	Options controlling	g local serial lines
Logging Terminal Keyboard Bell Features Window Appearance Behaviour Translation Selection Colours Connection Data Proxy Telnet Rlogin Soll	Select a serial line Serial line to connect to Configure the serial line Speed (baud) Data bits Stop bits Parity Flow control	COM1

Figure 312: The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by PuTTY_2

🗇 Session	Options controlling the effects of keys
Logging Terminal Bell Features Window Appearance Behaviour Translation Selection Colours Connection Data	Change the sequences sent by: The Backspace key Control-H Control-? (127) The Home and End keys Standard rxvt The Function keys and keypad ESC[n Linux Xterm R6 VT400 VT100+ SCD Application keypad settings: Initial state of cursor keys: Normal C Application
Proxy Telnet Riogin ⊞ SSH Serial	Initial state of numeric keypad: Normal C Application C NetHack Enable extra keyboard features: AltGr acts as Compose key Control-Alt is different from AltGr

Figure 313: The Procedures of Setup Serial Console by PuTTY_3



5. Users should be able to login the controller system via console cable by following the procedures above.

Setup the Connection for Online Support

Following is the procedure to setup the connection for online support via TeamViewer:

- Please download the TeamViewer from following hyper link: <u>https://www.teamviewer.com/en/download/</u>
- Install TeamViewer.
- Please provide the ID/password showed on the application to eterio support team member to join the online support session.

16.3. Accessing Product Updates

To download product updates, please visit eterio website:

http://eterio.eu/sterowniki-i-oprogramowanie/

16.4. Documentation Feedback

Epsylon is committed to providing documentation that meets and exceeds your expectations. To help us improve the documentation, email any errors, suggestions, or comments to <u>storage@eterio.eu</u>.

When submitting your feedback, include the document title, part number, revision, and publication date located on the front cover of the document.



Appendix

Glossary and Acronym List

Table 67: Common Terminology

Item	Description
RAID	Redundant Array of Independent Disks. There are different RAID levels with different degree of data protection, data availability, and performance to host environment.
Disk	The Physical Disk belongs to the member disk of one specific RAID group.
Pool	A collection of removable media. One pool consists of a set of volumes and owns one RAID level attribute.
Volume	Each pool could be divided into several volumes. The volumes from one pool have the same RAID level but may have different volume capacity.
LUN	Logical Unit Number. A logical unit number (LUN) is a unique identifier which enables it to differentiate among separate devices (each one is a logical unit).
Web GUI	Web Graphic User Interface.
WT	Write-Through cache-write policy. A cache technique in which the completion of a write request is not signaled until data is safely stored in non-volatile media. Each data is synchronized in both data cache and accessed physical disks.
WB	Write-Back cache-write policy. A cache technique in which the completion of a write request is signaled as soon as the data is in cache and actual writing to non-volatile media occurs later. It speeds up system write performance but needs to bear the risk where data may be inconsistent between data cache and the physical disks in one short time interval.
RO	Set the volume to be Read-Only.
DS	Dedicated Spare disks. The spare disks are only used by one specific RAID group. Others could not use these dedicated spare disks for any rebuilding purpose.
LS	Local Spare disks. The spare disks are only used by the RAID groups of the local enclosure. Other enclosure could not use these local spare disks for any rebuilding purpose.
BBM	Battery Backup Module
SCM	Super Capacitor Module



ltem	Description
GS	Global Spare disks. It is shared for rebuilding purpose. If some RAID groups need to use the global spare disks for rebuilding, they could get the spare disks out from the common spare disks pool for such requirement.
DG	DeGraded mode. Not all of the array's member disks are functioning, but the array is able to respond to application read and write requests to its virtual disks.
SCSI	Small Computer System Interface
SAS	Serial Attached SCSI
S.M.A.R.T.	Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology
WWN	World Wide Name
HBA	Host Bus Adapter
SES	SCSI Enclosure Services
NIC	Network Interface Card

Table 68: FC / iSCSI Terminology

ltem	Description
FC	Fibre Channel
FC-P2P	Point-to-Point
FC-AL	Arbitrated Loop
FC-SW	Switched Fabric
iSCSI	Internet Small Computer Systems Interface
LACP	Link Aggregation Control Protocol
MPIO	Multipath Input/Output
MC/S	Multiple Connections per Session
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
СНАР	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol. An optional security mechanism to control access to an iSCSI storage system over the iSCSI data ports.
iSNS	Internet Storage Name Service

Table 69: Dual Controller Terminology

ltem	Description
SBB	Storage Bridge Bay. The objective of the Storage Bridge Bay Working Group (SBB) is to create a specification that defines mechanical, electrical and low-level enclosure management requirements for an enclosure controller slot that will support a variety of storage controllers from a variety of independent hardware vendors ("IHVs") and system vendors.
6G-MUX	Bridge board is for SATA II disk to support dual controller mode.



End-User License Agreement (EULA)

Please read this document carefully before you use our product or open the package containing our product.

YOU AGREE TO ACCEPT TERMS OF THIS EULA BY USING OUR PRODUCT, OPENING THE PACKAGE CONTAINING OUR PRODUCT OR INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE INTO OUR PRODUCT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO TERMS OF THIS EULA, YOU MAY RETURN THE PRODUCT TO THE RESELLER WHERE YOU PURCHASED IT FOR A REFUND IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE RESELLER'S APPLICABLE RETURN POLICY.

General

Epsylon Sp. z o.o. Sp.K. ("Epsylon") is willing to grant you ("User") a license of software, firmware and/or other product sold, manufactured or offered by Epsylon ("the Product") pursuant to this EULA.

License Grant

Epsylon grants to User a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable, non-distributable, nonassignable, non-sub-licensable license to install and use the Product pursuant to the terms of this EULA. Any right beyond this EULA will not be granted.

Intellectual Property Right

Intellectual property rights relative to the Product are the property of Epsylon or its licensor(s). User will not acquire any intellectual property by this EULA.

License Limitations

User may not, and may not authorize or permit any third party to: (a) use the Product for any purpose other than in connection with the Product or in a manner inconsistent with the design or documentations of the Product; (b) license, distribute, lease, rent, lend, transfer, assign or otherwise dispose of the Product or use the Product in any commercial hosted or service bureau environment; (c) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble or attempt to discover the source code for or any trade secrets related to the Product, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation; (d) adapt, modify, alter, translate or create any derivative works of the Licensed Software; (e) remove, alter or obscure any copyright notice or other proprietary rights notice on the Product; or (f) circumvent or attempt to circumvent any methods employed by Epsylon to control access to the components, features or functions of the Product.



Disclaimer

EPSYLON DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES OF PRODUCT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WORKMANLIKE EFFORT, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. ALL PRODUCTS ARE PROVIDE "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND. ACTIDATA MAKES NO WARRANTY THAT THE PRODUCT WILL BE FREE OF BUGS, ERRORS, VIRUSES OR OTHER DEFECTS.

IN NO EVENT WILL EPSYLON BE LIABLE FOR THE COST OF COVER OR FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR SIMILAR DAMAGES OR LIABILITIES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA, INFORMATION, REVENUE, PROFIT OR BUSINESS) ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT OR OTHERWISE UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS EULA OR THE PRODUCT, WHETHER BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), STRICT LIABILITY OR OTHER THEORY EVEN IF EPSYLON HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Limitation of Liability

IN ANY CASE, EPSYLON'S LIABILITY ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS EULA OR THE PRODUCT WILL BE LIMITED TO THE TOTAL AMOUNT ACTUALLY AND ORIGINALLY PAID BY CUSTOMER FOR THE PRODUCT. The foregoing Disclaimer and Limitation of Liability will apply to the maximum extent permitted by applicable law. Some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the exclusions and limitations set forth above may not apply.

Termination

If User breaches any of its obligations under this EULA, Epsylon may terminate this EULA and take remedies available to Epsylon immediately.

Miscellaneous

- Epsylon reserves the right to modify this EULA.
- Epsylon reserves the right to renew the software or firmware anytime.
- Epsylon may assign its rights and obligations under this EULA to any third party without condition.
- This EULA will be binding upon and will inure to User's successors and permitted assigns.
- This EULA shall be governed by and constructed according to the laws of Republic of Poland. Any disputes arising from or in connection with this EULA, User agree to submit to the jurisdiction of Poland, Warsaw district court as first instance trial.